













PRINCIPIA LATINA. — Pars I.

---



A

# FIRST LATIN COURSE.

COMPREHENDING

GRAMMAR, DELECTUS, AND EXERCISE-BOOK,  
WITH VOCABULARIES.

For the Use of the Lower Forms in Public and Private Schools.

By WILLIAM SMITH, D.C.L., LL.D.,

EDITOR OF THE CLASSICAL AND LATIN DICTIONARIES.

TWENTY-ETH EDITION, THOROUGHLY REVISED,

WITH THE CASES ARRANGED BOTH AS IN THE ORDINARY GRAMMARS  
AND AS IN THE PUBLIC SCHOOL PRIMER.

LONDON:

JOHN MURRAY, ALBEMARLE STREET

1876.

## NOTICE TO THE EIGHTEENTH EDITION.



To meet the requirements of all Schools, the Cases of the Nouns, Adjectives, and Pronouns, are arranged in this Edition both as in the ordinary Grammars and as in the Public School Latin Primer, together with the corresponding Exercises. The first thirty-six pages at the beginning of the book are therefore repeated, the only difference between them being the arrangement of the Cases. In this way the work can be used with equal advantage by those who prefer either the old or the modern arrangement.

The 'Smaller Latin Grammar' retains the ordinary arrangement of the Cases.

W. S.

## PREFACE.

---

THE following work is the first of a short series which I have undertaken with the view of facilitating the study of the Latin language. It is the result of many years' practical teaching, and seeks to combine the advantages of the older and more modern methods of instruction. While boys are sometimes compelled to commit to memory all the grammatical forms and syntactical rules without having their knowledge tested by any practical application in the construction of sentences, so that they frequently forget the former part of the Grammar by the time they have finished the latter, they are in other cases burdened by a large number of explanations and cautions, and by complicated rules for the formation of cases and other inflectional forms. The latter error is almost as grave as the former in the case of young boys, as they are thus taught analytically what ought to be first learned synthetically.

The main object of this work is to enable a beginner to fix the Declensions and Conjugations thoroughly in his memory, to learn their usage by constructing simple sentences as soon as he commences the study of the language, and to accumulate gradually a stock of useful words. It is divided into two parts:—

I. The first part contains the Grammatical forms, with exercises upon all the inflections, in which the simple rules of syntax are introduced, as they are required for the formation of sentences.

II. The second part contains an explanation of some of the more important idioms of the language, such as the construction of the Accusative Case and the Infinitive Mood, of the Ablative Absolute, of the Gerund and Gerundive, &c., exemplified by Exercises upon each construction. The Vocabularies to both parts are printed at the end of the second, and Alphabetical Indices of the Latin and English words in the Vocabularies are appended to them.

The work thus contains Grammar, Delectus, and Exercise-book, with Vocabularies, and consequently presents in one book all that the pupil will require for some time in his study of the language. It is confidently believed that a boy who has gone carefully through the work will have acquired a sound knowledge of the chief grammatical forms, and of the most important syntactical rules, and will thus be prepared to enter upon the systematic study of a larger Grammar with advantage and profit.

The last edition was thoroughly revised, and various improvements were introduced. The rules for the Pronunciation of Latin were drawn up by the Rev. Dr. Abbott, Head Master of the City of London School. In the revision I was indebted for much valuable assistance to Mr. T. D. Hall, the joint-author with me of the 'Student's Latin Grammar,' and of the 'English-Latin Dictionary.'

W. S.

# CONTENTS.

## PART I.

### GRAMMATICAL FORMS.

#### NOUNS, ADJECTIVES, NUMERALS, AND PRONOUNS.

	PAGE
The Cases as arranged in the ordinary Grammars, with the corresponding Exercises .. .. .	1-36
The Cases as arranged in the Public School Primer, with the corresponding Exercises .. .. .	1-36
I. THE ALPHABET—PARTS OF SPEECH .. .. .	1
II. PRONUNCIATION .. .. .	2
III. SUBSTANTIVES OR NOUNS .. .. .	3
IV. THE FIRST OR A DECLENSION .. .. .	3
V. THE SECOND OR O DECLENSION .. .. .	5
VI. ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS .. .. .	7
VII. THE THIRD OR CONSONANT AND I DECLENSION .. .. .	11
VIII. ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION .. .. .	18
IX. THE FOURTH OR U DECLENSION .. .. .	20
X. THE FIFTH OR E DECLENSION .. .. .	21, 22
XI. SOME IRREGULAR NOUNS .. .. .	22
XII. SOME IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES .. .. .	23, 24
XIII. COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES .. .. .	24
XIV. THE NUMERALS .. .. .	26, 27
XV. THE VERB SUM .. .. .	29
XVI. COMPOUNDS OF SUM .. .. .	31
XVII. THE PRONOUNS .. .. .	32

#### VERBS.

XVIII. THE VERB .. .. .	37
XIX. FIRST OR A CONJUGATION—ACTIVE VOICE .. .. .	38
XX. SECOND OR E .. .. .	40
XXI. THIRD OR CONSONANT AND U .. .. .	42
XXII. FOURTH OR I .. .. .	44
EXERCISES ON THE ACTIVE VOICE .. .. .	46
XXIII. FIRST OR A CONJUGATION—PASSIVE VOICE .. .. .	54
XXIV. SECOND OR E .. .. .	56
XXV. THIRD OR CONSONANT AND U .. .. .	58

	PAGE
XXVI. FOURTH OR I .. .. .	60
EXERCISES ON THE PASSIVE VOICE .. .. .	62
XXVII. THIRD CONJUGATION (WITH I IN CERTAIN TENSES)	66
XXVIII. DEPONENT VERBS .. .. .	68
XXIX. PREPOSITIONS .. .. .	72
XXX. ADVERBS .. .. .	74
XXXI. IRREGULAR VERBS :	
1. POSSUM .. .. .	76
2. VOLO .. .. .	77
3. NOLO .. .. .	77
4. MALO .. .. .	77
5. FERO .. .. .	80
6. EO .. .. .	82
7. FIO .. .. .	84
8. NEUTER PASSIVE VERBS .. .. .	85
XXXII. IMPERSONAL VERBS .. .. .	86

## PART II.

## SOME SYNTACTICAL RULES.

XXXIII. THE ABLATIVE AFTER THE COMPARATIVE .. ..	88
XXXIV. ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE .. .. .	89
XXXV. THE ACCUSATIVE EXPRESSING DURATION OR EX- TENT OF TIME, DISTANCE, AND DIMENSION .. ..	90
XXXVI. CONSTRUCTION OF THE NAMES OF TOWNS .. ..	91
XXXVII. THE ACCUSATIVE CASE AND THE INFINITIVE .. ..	92
XXXVIII. DIRECT QUESTIONS .. .. .	94
XXXIX. INDIRECT QUESTIONS .. .. .	95
XL. ADDITIONAL EXERCISES ON THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD	97
XLI. USE OF THE SUPINES .. .. .	100
XLII. USE OF THE GERUND .. .. .	100
XLIII. USE OF THE GERUNDIVE .. .. .	101
A. SHORT SYNTAX .. .. .	104
Appendix—A. GREEK NOUNS .. .. .	104
B. THE GENDERS OF NOUNS .. .. .	110
C. PERFECTS AND SUPINES .. .. .	112
D. DEFECTIVE VERBS .. .. .	123
Vocabularies .. .. .	125
INDEX I.—LATIN WORDS .. .. .	144
INDEX II.—ENGLISH WORDS .. .. .	156

# PART I.

## GRAMMATICAL FORMS.

### THE CASES ARRANGED AS IN THE ORDINARY GRAMMARS.

#### I.—THE ALPHABET. PARTS OF SPEECH.

1. *Alphabet*.—The Latin Alphabet consists of 25 letters, the same as the English without *W*.

A, B, C, D, E, F, G, H, I, J, K, L, M, N, O, P,  
a, b, c, d, e, f, g, h, i, j, k, l, m, n, o, p,

Q, R, S, T, U, V, X, Y, Z.

q, r, s, t, u, v, x, y, z.

The letters are divided into Vowels and Consonants.

The Vowels are *a, e, i, o, u, y*. The remaining letters are Consonants.

The Diphthongs are *ae, oe, au*, which are in common use, and *eu, ei, ui*, which occur in only a few words.

The diphthongs *ae, oe*, are pronounced as *ē*.

A Long Syllable has the mark (ˉ) over the vowel. A Short Syllable has the mark (˘) over the vowel.

2. *Parts of Speech*.—There are eight parts of speech in the Latin language.

1. Substantive, or  
Noun.

2. Adjective.

3. Pronoun.

4. Verb.

5. Adverb.

6. Preposition.

7. Conjunction.

8. Interjection.

There is no article in the Latin language: hence the Latin *mensā* means not only *table*, but also *a table* and *the table*.



## II.—PRONUNCIATION.

The letters in Latin were probably pronounced as follows:—

## VOWELS AND DIPHTHONGS.

Latin	ā	=	English	a in father.
„	ā	=	„	first a in away, or a in villa.
„	ē	=	„	ai in pain.
„	ae	=	„	ai in pain.
„	oe	=	„	ai in pain.
„	ē	=	„	e in men.
„	ī	=	„	i in machine.
„	ī	=	„	i in pity.
„	ō	=	„	o in glory.
„	ō	=	„	o in top.
„	ū	=	„	u in rule.
„	ū	=	„	u in full.
„	au	=	„	ow in power.
„	eu	=	„	{ Latin ē followed quickly by Latin ū (differs little from present pronunciation).
„	ei	=	„	{ Latin ē followed quickly by Latin i (differs little from ai in plain).

## CONSONANTS.

Latin	c, ch	=	English	k.
„	g	=	„	g in get.
„	s	=	„	s in sin.
„	t (ratio)	=	{	t in cat, not tsh, as in nation.
„	j	=	„	y in yard.
„	v	=	„	v.
„	z, ph, th	=	„	z, ph, th.

Latin s between two vowels = (sometimes) English s in rose, e.g. 'rosa.'

### III.—SUBSTANTIVES OR NOUNS.

Nouns are declined by *Number* and *Case*.

There are two Numbers: *Singular* and *Plural*.

There are six Cases: *Nominative*, *Genitive*, *Dative*, *Accusative*, *Vocative*, *Ablative*.

There are three Genders: *Masculine*, *Feminine*, and *Neuter*.

Nouns which may be either Masculine or Feminine are called *Common*.

There are five Declensions, distinguished by the endings of the Genitive Case.

	I.	II.	III.	IV.	V.
Gen. Sing.	ae	I	is	ūs	ēi
Gen. Plur.	A-rum	Ō-rum	{ -um I-um }	Ū-um	E-rum

The *Stem* is that part of the word which remains after the changeable endings are taken away.

The *Stems* of Nouns can be ascertained by taking away the terminations *um* or *rum* of the Genitive Plural. Hence the final letter of the Stem is in—

I.	II.	III.	IV.	V.
A	O	consonant or I	U	E

### IV.—THE FIRST OR A DECLENSION.

The Nominative Singular of Nouns of the First Declension ends in *ā*.

	Sing.	Plur.
Nom.	Mens-ā (fem.) a table	Mens-ae, tables
Gen.	Mens-ae, of a table	Mens-ārum, of tables
Dat.	Mens-ae, to or for a table	Mens-is, to or for tables
Acc.	Mens-am, a table	Mens-as, tables
Voc.	Mens-ā, O table	Mens-ae, O tables
Abl.	Mens-ā, by, with, or from a table.	Mens-is, by, with, or from tables.

NOTE.—*Filiā*, a daughter; *dēā*, a goddess; *equā*, a mare; *asinā*, a she-ass; and a few others, make the Dative and Ablative Plural in *ābūs*: *filīabūs*, *dēabūs*, *equābūs*, *asinābūs*, etc.

GENDER.—All Nouns of the First Declension are Feminine, unless they designate males: *as*, nautā, a sailor.

The Vocabularies begin on p. 125.

**RULE 1.**—The Nominative Case denotes the SUBJECT. A Verb agrees with its Noninative case in number and person : as, *puellā currit, the girl runs* ; *puellae currunt, the girls run*.

**RULE 2.**—The Accusative Case denotes the OBJECT. Transitive verbs govern an Accusative case : as, *āquilā alās habēt, the eagle has wings*. NOTE.—In Latin the verb is put last and the Accusative case before it.

Singular, 3 pers.

**Currit,** (*he, she, it*) runs.

**Habēt,** (*he, she, it*) has.

Plural, 3 pers

**Currunt,** (*they*) run.

**Habēt,** (*they*) have.

### EXERCISE I.

1. *Filia currit.* 2. *Filiae currunt.* 3. *Regina coronam habet.*  
4. *Puella coronam habet.* 5. *Filia pecuniam habet.* 6. *Femina pecuniam habet.* 7. *Roma portas habet.* 8. *Coloniae portas habent.*  
9. *Puellae rosas habent.* 10. *Feminae rosas habent.* 11. *Columbae alas habent.* 12. *Insulae oras habent.*

1. The woman runs. 2. The women run. 3. The dove has wings. 4. The eagles have wings. 5. The colony has gates. 6. The island has coasts. 7. The girls have money. 8. The women have money. 9. The colony has women. 10. The island has colonies. 11. The woman has a crown. 12. The islands have roses.

**RULE 3.**—When two Nouns in Latin are connected by the verb “To be,” they are put in the same case : as, *Britanniā est insulā, Britain is an island*. Use the Nominative case after the verb “To be.”

**RULE 4.**—The latter of two Nouns is put in the Genitive case when the one is dependent upon the other : as, *Britanniā est insulā Europae, Britain is an island of Europe*.

**Est,** (*he*) is.

**Sunt,** (*they*) are.

### EXERCISE II.

1. *Sicilia est insula.* 2. *Sicilia est insula Europae.* 3. *Roma est regina Italiae.* 4. *Incolae Italiae sunt poetae.* 5. *Incolae insularum sunt nautae.* 6. *Incolae Britanniae sunt agricolae.* 7. *Insula est patria nautarum.* 8. *Graecia est patria poetarum.* 9. *Amicitia est gloria vitae.* 10. *Inimicitia incolarum est causa pugnae.*

1. Britain is the queen of islands. 2. Britain is the native-land of sailors. 3. Italy is the native-land of poets. 4. The inhabitants of Britain are sailors. 5. The inhabitants of Sicily are sailors. 6. The inhabitants of Gaul are husbandmen. 7. Britain is the native-land of glory. 8. Friendship is the crown of life. 9. The battle is the cause of glory. 10. The enmity of the sailors is the cause of the battle.

# V.—THE SECOND OR O DECLENSION.

The Nominative Singular of Masculine Nouns of the Second Declension ends in *ūs* and *ēr*, and of Neuter Nouns in *um*.

## A. Masculine.

Sing.		1.	Plur.
Nom.	<b>Dōmīn-ūs,</b>	<i>a lord</i>	<b>Dōmīn-I,</b> <i>lords</i>
Gen.	<b>Dōmīn-I,</b>	<i>of a lord</i>	<b>Dōmīn-ōrum,</b> <i>of lords</i>
Dat.	<b>Dōmīn-ō,</b>	<i>to or for a lord</i>	<b>Dōmīn-is,</b> <i>to or for lords</i>
Acc.	<b>Dōmīn-um,</b>	<i>a lord.</i>	<b>Dōmīn-ōs,</b> <i>lords</i>
Voc.	<b>Dōmīn-ē,</b>	<i>O lord</i>	<b>Dōmīn-I,</b> <i>O lords</i>
Abl.	<b>Dōmīn-ō,</b>	<i>by, with, or from a lord.</i>	<b>Dōmīn-is,</b> <i>by, with, or from lords.</i>
2.			
Nom.	<b>Māgistr-</b>	<i>a master</i>	<b>Māgistr-I,</b> <i>masters</i>
Gen.	<b>Māgistr-I,</b>	<i>of a master</i>	<b>Māgistr-ōrum,</b> <i>of masters</i>
Dat.	<b>Māgistr-ō,</b>	<i>to or for a master</i>	<b>Māgistr-is,</b> <i>to or for masters</i>
Acc.	<b>Māgistr-um,</b>	<i>a master</i>	<b>Māgistr-ōs,</b> <i>masters</i>
Voc.	<b>Māgistr-</b>	<i>O master</i>	<b>Māgistr-I,</b> <i>O masters</i>
Abl.	<b>Māgistr-ō,</b>	<i>by, with, or from a master.</i>	<b>Māgistr-is,</b> <i>by, with, or from masters.</i>
3.			
Nom.	<b>Puēr-</b>	<i>a boy</i>	<b>Puēr-I,</b> <i>boys</i>
Gen.	<b>Puēr-I,</b>	<i>of a boy</i>	<b>Puēr-ōrum,</b> <i>of boys</i>
Dat.	<b>Puēr-ō,</b>	<i>to or for a boy</i>	<b>Puēr-is,</b> <i>to or for boys</i>
Acc.	<b>Puēr-um,</b>	<i>a boy</i>	<b>Puēr-ōs,</b> <i>boys</i>
Voc.	<b>Puēr-</b>	<i>O boy</i>	<b>Puēr-I,</b> <i>O boys</i>
Abl.	<b>Puēr-ō,</b>	<i>by, with, or from a boy.</i>	<b>Puēr-is,</b> <i>by, with, or from boys.</i>

NOTE.—Proper Names in *ūs* make *i* in the Vocative, as, *Mercūriūs*, *Mercury*, Voc. *Mercūri*. Also the Vocative Singular of *filiūs*, a son, is *fili*, and of *gēnītūs*, a guardian deity, is *gēnī*.

There is one Noun of the Second Declension ending in *īr*, namely, *vir*, a man (as distinguished from a woman). It is declined like *puēr* :

Sing.		4.	Plur.
Nom.	<b>Vir-</b>	<i>a man,</i>	<b>Vir-I,</b> <i>men</i>
Gen.	<b>Vir-I,</b>	<i>of a man</i>	<b>Vir-ōrum,</b> <i>of men</i>
Dat.	<b>Vir-ō,</b>	<i>to or for a man</i>	<b>Vir-is,</b> <i>to or for men</i>
Acc.	<b>Vir-um,</b>	<i>a man</i>	<b>Vir-ōs,</b> <i>men</i>
Voc.	<b>Vir-</b>	<i>O man</i>	<b>Vir-I,</b> <i>O men</i>
Abl.	<b>Vir-ō,</b>	<i>by, with, or from a man.</i>	<b>Vir-is,</b> <i>by, with, or from men.</i>

## B. Neuter.

	Sing.	Plur.
Nom.	<b>Regn-um</b> , a kingdom	<b>Regn-ā</b> , kingdoms
Gen.	<b>Regn-i</b> , of a kingdom	<b>Regn-ōrum</b> , of kingdoms
Dat.	<b>Regn-ō</b> , to or for a kingdom	<b>Regn-is</b> , to or for kingdoms
Acc.	<b>Regn-um</b> , a kingdom	<b>Regn-ā</b> , kingdoms
Voc.	<b>Regn-ur</b> , O kingdom	<b>Regn-ā</b> , O kingdoms
Abl.	<b>Regn-ō</b> , by, with, or from a kingdom.	<b>Regn-is</b> , by, with, or from kingdoms.

NOTE.—The Nominative, Accusative, and Vocative of all Neuter Nouns are the same.

GENDER.—Most Nouns in *ūs* are Masculine, but names of trees are Feminine; as, *mālus*, an apple-tree.

Three Nouns of the Second Declension ending in *ūs* are Neuter: *virtus*, poison; *vulgus*, the multitude; *p̄lagus*, the (open) sea. They are used only in the Singular. (*N.B.* *Vulgus* is sometimes Masculine.)

et, and.

## EXERCISE III.

Masculine Nouns in *ūs*.

1. *Filius currit.* 2. *Servi currunt.* 3. *Dominus servos habet.* 4. *Filius domini servos habet.* 5. *Dominus servos et equos habet.* 6. *Filii dominorum equos et tauros habent.* 7. *Avus servos et equos habet.* 8. *Filius amici hortum habet.* 9. *Filii inimicorum gladios habent.* 10. *Rhodanus est fluvius Galliae.* 11. *Rhodanus et Rhenus sunt fluvji Galliae.* 12. *Hortus rosas habet.*

1. The slave runs. 2. The sons run. 3. The grandfather has a slave. 4. The son of the grandfather has slaves. 5. The sons of the grandfather have slaves. 6. The sons of the lords are sailors. 7. The sons of the slaves are husbandmen. 8. The lord has slaves and horses. 9. The Rhone and the Rhine are rivers of Europe. 10. The friends of the grandfather are poets. 11. The enemies of the lord have swords. 12. The rivers of the island have banks.

RULE 5.—The Dative Case indicates the person who gains or receives anything: as, *māgistēr cōlumbam pūcō dāt*, the master gives a dove to the boy.

. . . *Dāt*, (he, she, it) gives.

*Dant*, (they) give.

## EXERCISE IV.

Masculine Nouns in *ēr*.

1. *Puer librum habet.* 2. *Magister librum puero dat.* 3. *Filius libros habet.* 4. *Dominus servos et ministros habet.* 5. *Dominus agrum ministro dat.* 6. *Socer agros et ministros habet.* 7. *Socer agrum genero dat.* 8. *Magistri libros pūcīs dant.* 9. *Gener servum puero dat.* 10. *Puer librum ministro dat.*

1. The boys have books. 2. The lord gives a field to the boys.

3. The fathers-in-law and the sons-in-law have fields. 4. The father-in-law gives servants to the son-in-law. 5. The friends have books. 6. The enemies have servants and fields. 7. The masters give gardens to the boys. 8. The master gives doves to the boys. 9. The grandfather gives fields to the master. 10. The fathers-in-law give fields and bulls to the sons-in-law.

EXERCISE V.

Neuter Nouns.

1. Amicitia sunt donum coeli. 2. Amicitia est donum Dei. 3. Dona avi sunt praemia diligentiae. 4. Aurum et argentum sunt metalla. 5. Magister argentum puero dat. 6. Discipuli sunt gaudium magistrorum. 7. Bellum est causa morborum. 8. Oppidum muros et portas habet. 9. Templa sunt gloria Graeciae. 10. Romani gladios et scuta habent.

1. Friends are the gift of God. 2. The boys and girls are the joy of the grandfather. 3. The grandfather gives gold and silver to the boys. 4. Greece and Sicily have temples. 5. The temples of Greece have gifts. 6. The father-in-law gives gold and silver to the temples. 7. The metals are the cause of war. 8. The queen has lands and towns. 9. The queen gives rewards to the inhabitants. 10. The lord gives shields and swords to the servants.

VI.—ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS.

Adjectives in ūs, ā, um, or ěr, (ē)řā, (ē)rum, are declined in the Masculine and Neuter like Nouns of the Second Declension, and in the Feminine like Nouns of the First Declension: as, bōnūs, bōnā, bōnum, *good*; nigrĕr, nigrā, nigrum, *black*; tēnēr, tēnērā, tēnĕrum, *tender*.

	Sing.			Plur.		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	Bōn-ūs	bōn-ā	bōn-um	Bōn-i	bōn-ae	bōn-ā
Gen.	Bōn-i	bōn-ae	bōn-i	Bōn-ōrum	bōn-ārum	bōn-ōrum
Dat.	Bōn-ō	bōn-ae	bōn-ō	Bōn-is	bōn-is	bōn-is
Acc.	Bōn-um	bōn-am	bōn-um	Bōn-ōs	bōn-ās	bōn-ā
Voc.	Bōn-ē	bōn-ā	bōn-um	Bōn-i	bōn-ae	bōn-ā
Abl.	Bōn-ō	bōn-ā	bōn-ō	Bōn-is	bōn-is	bōn-is

2.

	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	Nigr-ĕr	nigr-ā	nigr-um	Nigr-i	nigr-ae	nigr-ā
Gen.	Nigr-i	nigr-ae	nigr-i	Nigr-ōrum	nigr-ārum	nigr-ōrum
Dat.	Nigr-ō	nigr-ae	nigr-ō	Nigr-is	nigr-is	nigr-is
Acc.	Nigr-um	nigr-am	nigr-um	Nigr-ōs	nigr-ās	nigr-ā
Voc.	Nigr-ĕr	nigr-ā	nigr-um	Nigr-i	nigr-ae	nigr-ā
Abl.	Nigr-ō	nigr-ā	nigr-ō	Nigr-is	nigr-is	nigr-is

	3.			4.		
	Sing.			3.	Plur.	
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	Tēnēr	tēnēr-ā	tēnēr-um	Tēhēr-I	tēnēr-ae	tēnēr-ā
Gen.	Tēnēr-I	tēnēr-ae	tēnēr-I	Tēnēr-ōrum	tēnēr-ārum	tēnēr-ōrum
Dat.	Tēnēr-ō	tēnēr-ae	tēnēr-ō	Tēnēr-is	tēnēr-is	tēnēr-is
Acc.	Tēnēr-um	tēnēr-am	tēnēr-um	Tēnēr-ōs	tēnēr-ās	tēnēr-ā
Voc.	Tēnēr	tēnēr-ā	tēnēr-um	Tēnēr-I	tēnēr-ae	tēnēr-ā
Abl.	Tēnēr-ō	tēnēr-ā	tēnēr-ō	Tēnēr-is	tēnēr-is	tēnēr-is

FEMININE ADJECTIVE DECLINED ALONG WITH FEMININE NOUN, BOTH OF FIRST DECLENSION.

	Sing.	
Nom.	Parvā mensā,	a small table
Gen.	Parvae mensae,	of a small table
Dat.	Parvae mensae,	to or for a small table
Acc.	Parvam mensam,	a small table
Voc.	Parvā mensā,	O small table
Abl.	Parvā mensā,	by, with, or from a small table.
	Plur.	
Nom.	Parvae mensae,	small tables
Gen.	Parvarum mensarum,	of small tables
Dat.	Parvis mensis,	to or for small tables
Acc.	Parvas mensas,	small tables
Voc.	Parvae mensae,	O small tables
Abl.	Parvis mensis,	by, with, or from small tables.

## 5.

MASCULINE ADJECTIVES DECLINED ALONG WITH MASCULINE NOUNS, BOTH OF SECOND DECLENSION.

	(A.)	
	Sing.	
Nom.	Bōnūs dōmīnūs,	a good lord
Gen.	Bōnī dōmīnī,	of a good lord
Dat.	Bōnō dōmīnō,	to or for a good lord
Acc.	Bōnum dōmīnum,	a good lord
Voc.	Bōnē dōmīnē,	O good lord
Abl.	Bōnō dōmīnō,	by, with, or from a good lord.
	Plur.	
Nom.	Bōnī dōmīnī,	good lords
Gen.	Bōnōrum dōmīnōrum,	of good lords
Dat.	Bōnīs dōmīnīs,	to or for good lords
Acc.	Bōnōs dōmīnōs,	good lords
Voc.	Bōnī dōmīnī,	O good lords
Abl.	Bōnīs dōmīnīs,	by, with, or from good lords.
	(B.)	
	Sing.	
Nom.	Bōnūs pūēr,	a good boy
Gen.	Bōnī pūēri,	of a good boy
Dat.	Bōnō pūērō,	to or for a good boy
Acc.	Bōnum pūērum,	a good boy
Voc.	Bōnē pūēr,	O good boy
Abl.	Bōnō pūērō,	by, with, or from a good boy.

		Plur.
Nom.	Bōnī pūērī,	• good boys
Gen.	Bōnōrum pūērōrum,	of good boys
Dat.	Bōnīs pūērīs,	to or for good boys
Acc.	Bōnōs pūērōs,	good boys
Voc.	Bōnī pūērī,	O good boys
Abl.	Bōnīs pūērīs,	by, with, or from good boys.

6.

NEUTER ADJECTIVE DECLINED ALONG WITH NEUTER NOUN,  
BOTH OF SECOND DECLENSION.

(A.)

		Sing.
Nom.	Magnum regnum,	a great kingdom
Gen.	Magnī regnī,	of a great kingdom
Dat.	Magnō regnō,	to or for a great kingdom
Acc.	Magnum regnum,	a great kingdom
Voc.	Magnum regnum,	O great kingdom
Abl.	Magnō regnō,	by, with, or from a great kingdom.

Plur.

Nom.	Magnā regnā,	great kingdoms
Gen.	Magnōrum regnōrum,	of great kingdoms
Dat.	Magnīs regnīs,	to or for great kingdoms
Acc.	Magnā regnā,	great kingdoms
Voc.	Magnā regnā,	O great kingdoms
Abl.	Magnīs regnīs,	by, with, or from great kingdoms.

(B.)

Sing. only.

Nom.	Magnum pēlāgūs,	the great sea
Gen.	Magnī pēlāgī,	of the great sea
Dat.	Magnō pēlāgō,	to or for the great sea
Acc.	Magnum pēlāgūs,	the great sea
Voc.	Magnum pēlāgūs,	the great sea
Abl.	Magnō pēlāgō,	by, with, or from the great sea.

7.

MASCULINE ADJECTIVE OF SECOND DECLENSION DECLINED WITH  
MASCULINE NOUN OF FIRST DECLENSION.

		Sing.
Nom.	Clārūs nautā,	a famous sailor
Gen.	Clārī nautae,	of a famous sailor
Dat.	Clārō nautae,	to or for a famous sailor
Acc.	Clārum nautam,	a famous sailor
Voc.	Clārō nautā,	O famous sailor
Abl.	Clārō nautā,	by, with, or from a famous sailor.

Plur.

Nom.	Clārī nautae,	famous sailors
Gen.	Clārōrum nautārum,	of famous sailors
Dat.	Clārīs nautīs,	to or for famous sailors
Acc.	Clārōs nautās,	famous sailors
Voc.	Clārī nautae,	O famous sailors
Abl.	Clārīs nautīs,	by, with, or from famous sailors.



RULE 6.—Adjectives agree with their Nouns in gender, number, and case.

Note that the Adjective in Latin is sometimes placed after the Noun.

### EXERCISE VI.

**A.**—1. Servus est timidus. 2. Columba est timida. 3. Gaudium est magnum. 4. Servi sunt mali. 5. Insulae sunt magnae. 6. Oppida sunt parva. 7. Muri sunt alti. 8. Puellae sunt bonae. 9. Horti sunt lati. 10. Alae sunt albae.

1. The sword is long. 2. The island is long. 3. The shields are long. 4. The slaves are timid. 5. The doves are timid. 6. The towns are great. 7. The temples are small. 8. The shields are wide. 9. The kingdom is great. 10. The friends are good.

**R.**—1. Columba albae alas habet. 2. Multae columbae albae alas habent. 3. Graecia multa templa habet. 4. Splendida templa sunt gloria Graeciae. 5. Bellicosa regina multas terras habet. 6. Oppidum magnum multas portas habet. 7. Magister librum bono puero dat. 8. Avus praemium bonae puellae dat. 9. Pericula nautarum sunt magna. 10. Dominus acutos gladios habet.

1. The queen has many islands. 2. The queen gives swords to the inhabitants. 3. Gaul has many towns. 4. The temples are great and splendid. 5. The daughters of the women are good. 6. The son of the warlike queen has a sharp sword. 7. The high banks have many roses. 8. The Rhone is a great and broad river. 9. The roses of the high banks are white. 10. The Rhine is a rapid river.

**C.**—1. Puer est aeger. 2. Puella est aegra. 3. Aurum templi est sacrum. 4. Regina est pulchra. 5. Filiae sunt tenerae. 6. Filii sunt miseri. 7. Morbus molestus est tenero filio. 8. Exemplum servi noxium puero est. 9. Praemia diligentiae sunt grata discipulis. 10. Magnus est numerus puerorum.

1. The pupils of the master are sick. 2. The master gives a book to the sick boy. 3. The black slaves are troublesome to the lord. 4. Great is the number of black slaves. 5. The splendid gifts of the temple are sacred. 6. Great is the diligence of the beautiful girl. 7. The diligence of the girl is pleasing to the grandfather. 8. The example of the slaves is injurious to the pupils. 9. The disease is troublesome to the wretched girl. 10. The master gives rewards to the beautiful girl.

## VII.—THE THIRD OR CONSONANT AND I DECLENSION.

The Nominative Singular of Nouns of the Third Declension ends in various letters. Their stems end in some consonant or *i*.

### A. Masculine and Feminine Nouns.

#### I. STEMS ENDING IN A CONSONANT.

1. Nouns the stems of which end in the labial (lip) letters *p, b, m*.

	Sing.	1.	Plur.
Nom.	Trāb-s (f.), a beam	Trāb-ēs,	beams
Gen.	Trāb-is, of a beam	Trāb-um,	of beams
Dat.	Trāb-i, to or for a beam	Trāb-ibūs,	to or for beams
Acc.	Trāb-em, a beam	Trāb-ēs,	beams
Voc.	Trāb-s, O beam	Trāb-ēs,	O beams
Abl.	Trāb-ē, by, with, or from a beam.	Trāb-ibūs,	by, with, or from beams.

Nom.	Prīncēp-s (c.), a chief	Prīncēp-ēs,	chiefs
Gen.	Prīncēp-is, of a chief	Prīncēp-um,	of chiefs
Dat.	Prīncēp-i, to or for a chief	Prīncēp-ibūs,	to or for chiefs
Acc.	Prīncēp-em, a chief	Prīncēp-ēs,	chiefs
Voc.	Prīncēp-s, O chief	Prīncēp-ēs,	O chiefs
Abl.	Prīncēp-ē, by, with, or from a chief.	Prīncēp-ibūs,	by, with, or from chiefs.

#### 3.

Nom.	Hlēm-s (f.), winter	Hlēm-ēs,	winters
Gen.	Hlēm-is, of winter	Hlēm-um,	of winters
Dat.	Hlēm-i, to or for winter	Hlēm-ibūs,	to or for winters
Acc.	Hlēm-em, winter	Hlēm-ēs,	winters
Voc.	Hlēm-s, O winter	Hlēm-ēs,	O winters
Abl.	Hlēm-ē, by, with, or from winter.	Hlēm-ibūs,	by, with, or from winters.

2. Nouns the stems of which end in the guttural (throat) letters *c, g*. NOTE.—In the Nominative and Vocative Singular *cs, gs* are contracted into *x*.

	Sing.	1.	Plur.
Nom.	Dux (c.), a leader	Dūc-ēs,	leaders
Gen.	Dūc-is, of a leader	Dūc-um,	of leaders
Dat.	Dūc-i, to or for a leader	Dūc-ibūs,	to or for leaders
Acc.	Dūc-em, a leader	Dūc-ēs,	leaders
Voc.	Dux, O leader	Dūc-ēs,	O leaders
Abl.	Dūc-ē, by, with, or from a leader.	Dūc-ibūs,	by, with, or from leaders.

	Sing.		2.	Plur.
Nom.	Lex (f.), a law		Lēg-ēs,	laws
Gen.	Lēg-is, of a law		Lēg-um,	of laws
Dat.	Lēg-i, to or for a law		Lēg-ibūs,	to or for laws
Acc.	Lēg-em,	a law	Lēg-ēs,	laws
Voc.	Lex,	O law	Lēg-ēs,	O laws
Abl.	Lēg-e,	by, with, or from a law.	Lēg-ibūs,	by, with, or from laws.

			3.	
Nom.	Jūdex (c.), a judge		Jūdio-ēs,	judges
Gen.	Jūdio-is, of a judge		Jūdio-um,	of judges
Dat.	Jūdio-i, to or for a judge		Jūdio-ibūs,	to or for judges
Acc.	Jūdio-em,	a judge	Jūdio-ēs,	judges
Voc.	Jūdex,	O judge	Jūdio-ēs,	O judges
Abl.	Jūdio-e,	by, with, or from a judge.	Jūdio-ibūs,	by, with, or from judges.

Ērāt, (he, she, it) was.

Ērant, (they) were.

## EXERCISE VII.

1. Trabes sunt longae. 2. Romulus Romanorum rex erat. 3. Pax regi jucunda erat. 4. Judices erant justī. 5. Duces erant benigni. 6. Leģes Romanorum severae erant. 7. Reges arces firmas habent. 8. Arx urbis est firma. 9. Hiems agricolis molesta erat. 10. Oppida regis firma erant.

1. The beams were long. 2. Rome is a city of Italy. 3. The leader of the Romans was warlike. 4. Peace was pleasant to the leaders. 5. The king gives the city to the leader. 6. The judges were kind and just. 7. The king gives a book to the severe judge. 8. The disease is troublesome to the king. 9. The example is injurious to the judges. 10. The sons of the judges are severe.

3. Nouns the stems of which end in the dental (teeth) letters *t, d*.

	Sing.		1.	Plur.
Nom.	Aetā-s (f.), an age		Aetāt-ēs,	ages
Gen.	Aetāt-is, of an age		Aetāt-um,	of ages
Dat.	Aetāt-i, to or for an age		Aetāt-ibūs,	to or for ages
Acc.	Aetāt-em,	an age	Aetāt-ēs,	ages
Voc.	Aetā-s,	O age	Aetāt-ēs,	O ages
Abl.	Aetāt-e,	by, with, or from an age.	Aetāt-ibūs,	by, with, or from ages.

			2.	
Nom.	Lāpis (m.), a stone		Lāpid-ēs,	stones
Gen.	Lāpid-is, of a stone		Lāpid-um,	of stones
Dat.	Lāpid-i, to or for a stone		Lāpid-ibūs,	to or for stones
Acc.	Lāpid-em,	a stone	Lāpid-ēs,	stones
Voc.	Lāpis,	O stone	Lāpid-ēs,	O stones
Abl.	Lāpid-e,	by, with, or from a stone.	Lāpid-ibūs,	by, with, or from stones.

3.

Nom.	Milē-s (c.), a soldier	Milit-ēs, soldiers
Gen.	Milit-is, of a soldier	Milit-um, of soldiers
Dat.	Milit-i, to or for a soldier	Milit-ibūs, to or for soldiers
Acc.	Milit-em, a soldier	Milit-ēs, soldiers
Voc.	Milē-s, O soldier	Milit-ēs, O soldiers
Abl.	Milit-ē, by, with, or from a soldier.	Milit-ibūs, by, with, or from soldiers.

RULE 7.—The Ablative case indicates—(1) The instrument or means by which something is done: *as, dōminūs hastā servum occidit, the lord kills the slave with a spear.*

(2) The time when something is done or takes place: *as, noctēs hiēm longae sunt, the nights are long in winter.*

*Occidit, (he, she, it) kills.*

*Occidunt, (they) kill.*

EXERCISE VIII.

1. Miles gladio obsidem occidit. 2. Miles lapide comitem occidit. 3. Pedites custodes gladiis occidunt. 4. Tempestates auctumno magnae sunt. 5. Equites et pedites timidi erant. 6. Custodes auri erant timidi. 7. Mors est lex naturae. 8. Civitas Romanorum clara erat. 9. Voluntas iudicis justa est. 10. Milites iudices hastis occidunt.

1. Tempests in the winter are great. 2. A tempest in the summer is troublesome. 3. A long night in the winter is pleasant. 4. The inhabitants kill the soldiers with stones. 5. The hostages kill the foot-soldiers with spears. 6. The wish of the companion is just. 7. The horse-soldiers and foot-soldiers have swords. 8. The guardian of the silver was timid. 9. The boy has many stones. 10. The king has many soldiers and companions.

4. Nouns the stems of which end in the liquids *l, r,* and the sibilant *s.*

	Sing.	1.	Plur.
Nom.	Consul (m.), a consul	Consul-ēs,	consuls
Gen.	Consul-is, of a consul	Consul-um,	of consuls
Dat.	Consul-i, to or for a consul	Consul-ibūs,	to or for consuls
Acc.	Consul-em, a consul	Consul-ēs,	consuls
Voc.	Consul, O consul	Consul-ēs,	O consuls
Abl.	Consul-ē, by, with, or from a consul.	Consul-ibūs,	by, with, or from consuls.

2.

Nom.	Clāmōr (m.), a shout	Clāmōr-ēs,	shouts
Gen.	Clāmōr-is, of a shout	Clāmōr-um,	of shouts
Dat.	Clāmōr-i, to or for a shout	Clāmōr-ibūs,	to or for shouts
Acc.	Clāmōr-em, a shout	Clāmōr-ēs,	shouts
Voc.	Clāmōr, O shout	Clāmōr-ēs,	O shouts
Abl.	Clāmōr-ē, by, with, or from a shout.	Clāmōr-ibūs,	by, with, or from shouts.

	Sing.	3.	Plur.
Nom.	Ansēr (m.), a goose	Ansēr-ēs,	geese
Gen.	Ansēr-is,	Ansēr-um,	of geese
Dat.	Ansēr-i,	Ansēr-ibūs,	to or for geese
Acc.	Ansēr-em,	Ansēr-ēs,	geese
Voc.	Ansēr,	Ansēr-ēs,	O geese
Abl.	Ansēr-ē,	Ansēr-ibūs,	by, with, or from a goose.

		4.	
Nom.	Pātēr,	Patr-ēs,	fathers
Gen.	Patr-is,	Patr-um,	of fathers
Dat.	Patr-i,	Patr-ibūs,	to or for fathers
Acc.	Patr-em,	Patr-ēs,	fathers
Voc.	Pātēr,	Patr-ēs,	O fathers
Abl.	Patr-ē,	Patr-ibūs,	by, with, or from a father.

		5.	
Nom.	Flōs (m.), a flower	Flōr-ēs,	flowers
Gen.	Flōr-is,	Flōr-um,	of flowers
Dat.	Flōr-i,	Flōr-ibūs,	to or for flowers
Acc.	Flōr-em,	Flōr-ēs,	flowers
Voc.	Flōs,	Flōr-ēs,	O flowers
Abl.	Flōr-ē,	Flōr-ibūs,	by, with, or from a flower.

## EXERCISE IX.

1. Puer patrem et matrem habet. 2. Puellae fratres et sorores habent. 3. Odores florum sunt varii. 4. Color floris est jucundus. 5. Labor aestate molestus est. 6. Calor solis molestus est. 7. Tota urbs est praeda victoris. 8. Aggeres et fossae sunt munimenta castrorum. 9. Clamor militum molestus est.

1. The father of the judge is just. 2. The mother of the soldier is sick. 3. The hostage has a brother and a sister. 4. The colours of the flowers are various. 5. The brother gives a flower to (his) sister. 6. The shout of the soldiers was great. 7. The heat of the sun is great. 8. The heat is troublesome in the summer. 9. The mounds of the camp are high. 10. The cities are the booty of the soldiers.

## 5. Nouns the stems of which end in ōn or ōn (in).

	Sing.	1.	Plur.
Nom.	Lēo (m.), a lion	Lēōn-ēs,	lions
Gen.	Lēōn-is,	Lēōn-um,	of lions
Dat.	Lēōn-i,	Lēōn-ibūs,	to or for lions
Acc.	Lēōn-em,	Lēōn-ēs,	lions
Voc.	Lēo,	Lēōn-ēs,	O lions
Abl.	Lēōn-ē,	Lēōn-ibūs,	by, with, or from a lion.

	Sing.	2.	Plur.
Nom.	<b>Virgō</b> ( <i>f.</i> ), a maiden	<b>Virgīn-ēs</b> , maidens	
Gen.	<b>Virgīn-is</b> , of a maiden	<b>Virgīn-um</b> , of maidens	
Dat.	<b>Virgīn-i</b> , to or for a maiden	<b>Virgīn-ibūs</b> , to or for maidens	
Acc.	<b>Virgīn-em</b> , a maiden	<b>Virgīn-ēs</b> , maidens	
Voc.	<b>Virgō</b> , O maiden	<b>Virgīn-ēs</b> , O maidens	
Abl.	<b>Virgīn-ē</b> , by, with, or from a maiden.	<b>Virgīn-ibūs</b> , by, with, or from maidens.	

### EXERCISE X.

1. Leones sunt validi. 2. Virgo est timida. 3. Calor molestus est multis hominibus. 4. Consuetudo altera natura est. 5. Sermo oratoris est doctus. 6. Pavones agricolae sunt pulchri. 7. Mors hominibus certa est. 8. Multitudo morborum est infinita. 9. Juno erat dea Romanorum. 10. Vita hominibus grata est.

1. The lion is strong. 2. The maidens are timid. 3. The multitude of men is infinite. 4. The soldier kills the lion with a sword. 5. The father gives a peacock to the maiden. 6. The heat is troublesome. 7. The heat in autumn is injurious to men. 8. The discourses of the orators were learned. 9. Juno and Minerva were goddesses of the Romans. 10. The peacock was sacred to Juno.

### II. STEMS ENDING IN I.

	Sing.	1.	Plur.
Nom.	<b>Host-is</b> ( <i>c.</i> ), an enemy	<b>Host-ēs</b> , enemies	
Gen.	<b>Host-is</b> , of an enemy	<b>Host-ium</b> , of enemies	
Dat.	<b>Host-i</b> , to or for an enemy	<b>Host-ibūs</b> , to or for enemies	
Acc.	<b>Host-em</b> , an enemy	<b>Host-ēs</b> , enemies	
Voc.	<b>Host-is</b> , O enemy	<b>Host-ēs</b> , O enemies	
Abl.	<b>Host-ē</b> , by, with, or from an enemy.	<b>Host-ibūs</b> , by, with, or from enemies.	

Some stems in *i* have the Nominative in *e* and are thus declined:—

Nom.	<b>Nūb-ēs</b> ( <i>f.</i> ), a cloud	<b>Nūb-ēs</b> , clouds
Gen.	<b>Nūb-is</b> , of a cloud	<b>Nūb-ium</b> , of clouds
Dat.	<b>Nūb-i</b> , to or for a cloud	<b>Nūb-ibūs</b> , to or for clouds
Acc.	<b>Nūb-em</b> , a cloud	<b>Nūb-ēs</b> , clouds
Voc.	<b>Nūb-ēs</b> , O cloud	<b>Nūb-ēs</b> , O clouds
Abl.	<b>Nūb-ē</b> , by, with, or from a cloud.	<b>Nūb-ibūs</b> , by, with, or from clouds.

### EXERCISE XI.

1. Cives agros et hortos habent. 2. Rex civibus praemia dat. 3. Nubes atrae sunt causa tempestatum. 4. Rupes sunt durae. 5. Urbs turres altas habet. 6. Clades hostium magna erat. 7. Classis Romana duces peritos habet. 8. Valles hostibus notae erant. 9. Graecia valles angustas habet. 10. Virgo pulchram vestem habet.

1. The citizens were timid. 2. The valleys are known to the citizens. 3. The mother gives a garment to the maiden. 4. The citizens kill the enemies with swords. 5. The rocks are known to the citizens. 6. The valleys of Greece are narrow. 7. The Roman fleet has a skilful leader. 8. The maidens have beautiful garments. 9. The slaughter of the soldiers was great. 10. The leaders of the enemies were skilful.

## B. Neuter Nouns.

## I. STEMS ENDING IN A CONSONANT.

Nouns, the stems of which end in *n*, *r*, *s*, *t*.

	Sing.		1.		Plur.
Nom.	Nōmēn, a name		Nōmīn-ā,		names
Gen.	Nōmīn-is, of a name		Nōmīn-um,		of names
Dat.	Nōmīn-i, to or for a name		Nōmīn-ibūs,		to or for names
Acc.	Nōmēn, a name		Nōmīn-ā,		names
Voc.	Nōmēn, O name		Nōmīn-ā,		O names
Abl.	Nōmīn-ē, by, with, or from a name.		Nōmīn-ibūs,		by, with, or from names.
2.					
Nom.	Fulgūr, lightning		Fulgūr-ā,		lightnings
Gen.	Fulgūr-is, of lightning		Fulgūr-um,		of lightnings
Dat.	Fulgūr-i, to or for lightning		Fulgūr-ibūs,		to or for lightnings
Acc.	Fulgūr, lightning		Fulgūr-ā,		lightnings
Voc.	Fulgūr, O lightning		Fulgūr-ā,		O lightnings
Abl.	Fulgūr-ē, by, with, or from lightning.		Fulgūr-ibūs,		by, with, or from lightnings.
3.					
Nom.	Crūs, a leg		Crūr-ā,		legs
Gen.	Crūr-is, of a leg		Crūr-um,		of legs
Dat.	Crūr-i, to or for a leg		Crūr-ibūs,		to or for legs
Acc.	Crūs, a leg		Crūr-ā,		legs
Voc.	Crūs, O leg		Crūr-ā,		O legs
Abl.	Crūr-ē, by, with, or from a leg.		Crūr-ibūs,		by, with, or from legs.
4.					
Nom.	Ōpūs, a work		Ōpēr-ā,		works
Gen.	Ōpēr-is, of a work		Ōpēr-um,		of works
Dat.	Ōpēr-i, to or for a work		Ōpēr-ibūs,		to or for works
Acc.	Ōpūs, a work		Ōpēr-ā,		works
Voc.	Ōpūs, O work		Ōpēr-ā,		O works
Abl.	Ōpēr-ē, by, with, or from a work.		Ōpēr-ibūs,		by, with, or from works.
5.					
Nom.	Corpūs, a body		Corpōr-ā,		bodies
Gen.	Corpōr-is, of a body		Corpōr-um,		of bodies
Dat.	Corpōr-i, to or for a body		Corpōr-ibūs,		to or for bodies
Acc.	Corpūs, a body		Corpōr-ā,		bodies
Voc.	Corpūs, O body		Corpōr-ā,		O bodies
Abl.	Corpōr-ē, by, with, or from a body.		Corpōr-ibūs,		by, with, or from bodies.

	Sing.	6.	Plur.
Nom.	Căpăt, a head	Căpăt-ă, heads	
Gen.	Căpăt-îs, of a head	Căpăt-um, of heads	
Dat.	Căpăt-I, to or for a head	Căpăt-ibūs, to or for heads	
Acc.	Căpăt, a head	Căpăt-ă, heads	
Voc.	Căpăt, O head	Căpăt-ă, O heads	
Abl.	Căpăt-ě, by, with, or from a head.	Căpăt-ibūs, by, with, or from heads.	

## II. STEMS ENDING IN I.

The Nominative in *ě, ăl, ăr*.

	Sing.	1.	Plur.
Nom.	Măr-ě, the sea	Măr-Iă, seas	
Gen.	Măr-îs, of the sea	Măr-Ium, of seas	
Dat.	Măr-I, to or for the sea	Măr-Ibūs, to or for seas	
Acc.	Măr-ě, the sea	Măr-Iă, seas	
Voc.	Măr-ě, O sea	Măr-Iă, O seas	
Abl.	Măr-I, by, with, or from the sea.	Măr-Ibūs, by, with, or from seas.	
		2.	
Nom.	Ănimăl, an animal	Ănimăl-Iă, animals	
Gen.	Ănimăl-îs, of an animal	Ănimăl-Ium, of animals	
Dat.	Ănimăl-I, to or for an animal	Ănimăl-Ibūs, to or for animals	
Acc.	Ănimăl, an animal	Ănimăl-Iă, animals	
Voc.	Ănimăl, O animal	Ănimăl-Iă, O animals	
Abl.	Ănimăl-I, by, with, or from an animal.	Ănimăl-Ibūs, by, with, or from animals.	
		3.	
Nom.	Calcăr, a spur	Calcăr-Iă, spurs	
Gen.	Calcăr-îs, of a spur	Calcăr-Ium, of spurs	
Dat.	Calcăr-I, to or for a spur	Calcăr-Ibūs, to or for spurs	
Acc.	Calcăr, a spur	Calcăr-Iă, spurs	
Voc.	Calcăr, O spur	Calcăr-Iă, O spurs	
Abl.	Calcăr-I, by, with, or from a spur.	Calcăr-Ibūs, by, with, or from spurs.	

## EXERCISE XII.

**A.**—1. Nomen Carthaginis clarum erat. 2. Litora erant angusta. 3. Elephanti magna capita et parva crura habent. 4. Balaenae parva ora habent. 5. Fulgur est rapidum. 6. Opus est durum et molestum. 7. Ira causa multorum scelerum est. 8. Juno antiquis temporibus erat dea. 9. Sidera nautis grata sunt. 10. Frigus hieme est molestum.

1. The name of Cicero is renowned. 2. The works of Cicero are renowned. 3. Elephants have a strong body. 4. The legs of elephants are small. 5. The mouths of whales are small. 6. Elephants have great heads and small eyes. 7. The crimes are known to the judge. 8. The cold is troublesome to the maiden. 9. The time of the year is pleasant. 10. The shore is wide.

**B.**—1. Maria sunt domicilia piscium. 2. Calcaria sunt decus equitis. 3. Litora maris sunt magna. 4. Nautae retia habent.



5. Vectigalia sunt magna. 6. Græm animalibus gratum erat. 7. Calcaria equitis sunt nova. 8. Maria sunt profunda. 9. Genera animalium sunt varia. 10. Equites aurea calcaria habent.

1. The sea is deep. 2. The shores of the seas are high. 3. The deep sea is the abode of fishes. 4. The nets of the sailors are golden. 5. The king gives golden nets to the sailors. 6. The spurs of the horse-soldier are golden. 7. The king gives a golden spur to the horse-soldier. 8. The animal is strong. 9. Many animals are strong. 10. The tax is troublesome.

NOUNS OF THIRD DECLENSION, AND ADJECTIVES OF FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS, DECLINED TOGETHER.

1. **Magnus Dux**,—*a great leader.*

Sing.	Plur.
Nom. <b>Magnus dux</b>	<b>Magni ducēs</b>
Gen. <b>Magni ducis</b>	<b>Magnorum ducum</b>
Dat. <b>Magnō duci</b>	<b>Magnis ducibus</b>
Acc. <b>Magnum ducem</b>	<b>Magnos ducēs</b>
Voc. <b>Magnē dux</b>	<b>Magni ducēs</b>
Abl. <b>Magnō ducē</b>	<b>Magnis ducibus.</b>

2. **Bonā Māter**,—*a good mother.*

Nom. <b>Bonā māter</b>	<b>Bonae mātres</b>
Gen. <b>Bonae mātris</b>	<b>Bonarum matrum</b>
Dat. <b>Bonae matri</b>	<b>Bonis matribus</b>
Acc. <b>Bonam matrem</b>	<b>Bonas mātres</b>
Voc. <b>Bonā mātēr</b>	<b>Bonae mātres</b>
Abl. <b>Bonā matrē</b>	<b>Bonis matribus.</b>

3. **Rapidum Flūmēn**,—*a rapid river.*

Nom. <b>Rapidum flūmēn</b>	<b>Rapidā flūminā</b>
Gen. <b>Rapidī flūminis</b>	<b>Rapidorum flūminum</b>
Dat. <b>Rapidō flūmini</b>	<b>Rapidis flūminibus</b>
Acc. <b>Rapidum flūmēn</b>	<b>Rapidā flūminā</b>
Voc. <b>Rapidū flūmēn</b>	<b>Rapidā flūminā</b>
Abl. <b>Rapidō flūminē</b>	<b>Rapidis flūminibus.</b>

VIII.—ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

I. ADJECTIVES OF THREE TERMINATIONS end in *ēr, rīs, rē*, and are declined like Nouns of the Third Declension. They have three terminations in the Nominative and Vocative Singular only: as, *acēr, acēris, acērē, sharp*; *cēlēr, cēlērīs, cēlērē, swift*.

	Sing.	N.		Plur.	N.
Nom.	<b>Acēr</b>	<b>acēris</b>	<b>acērē</b>	<b>Acērēs</b>	<b>acērī</b>
Gen.	<b>Acēris</b>	<b>acēris</b>	<b>acēris</b>	<b>Acērūm</b>	<b>acērūm</b>
Dat.	<b>Acēri</b>	<b>acēri</b>	<b>acēri</b>	<b>Acēribus</b>	<b>acēribus</b>
Acc.	<b>Acērem</b>	<b>acērem</b>	<b>acērē</b>	<b>Acērēs</b>	<b>acērī</b>
Voc.	<b>Acēr</b>	<b>acēris</b>	<b>acērē</b>	<b>Acērēs</b>	<b>acērī</b>
Abl.	<b>Acēri</b>	<b>acēri</b>	<b>acēri</b>	<b>Acēribus</b>	<b>acēribus</b>

II. ADJECTIVES OF TWO TERMINATIONS are declined like Nouns of the Third Declension. They have two termina-

tions in the Nominative, Vocative, and Accusative only. They include—

1. Adjectives ending in *is*: *as*, *tristis* (*masc.* and *fem.*), *tristē* (*neut.*), *sad*.
2. Comparatives, ending in *ior*, *iūs*: *as*, *mélior* (*masc.* and *fem.*), *méliūs* (*neut.*), *better*.

	Sing.	1.	Plur.	
	M. and F.	N.	M. and F.	N.
Nom.	Trist-is	trist-ē	Trist-ēs	trist-iā
Gen.	Trist-is	trist-is	Trist-ium	trist-ium
Dat.	Trist-i	trist-i	Trist-ibūs	trist-ibūs
Acc.	Trist-em	trist-ē	Trist-ēs	trist-iā
Voc.	Trist-is	trist-ē	Trist-ēs	trist-iā
Abl.	Trist-i	trist-i	Trist-ibūs	trist-ibūs

  

	Sing.	2.	Plur.	
	M. and F.	N.	M. and F.	N.
Nom.	Mēliōr	mēliūs	Mēliōr-ēs	mēliōr-iā
Gen.	Mēliōr-is	mēliōr-is	Mēliōr-um	mēliōr-um
Dat.	Mēliōr-i	mēliōr-i	Mēliōr-ibūs	mēliōr-ibūs
Acc.	Mēliōr-em	mēliūs	Mēliōr-ēs	mēliōr-iā
Voc.	Mēliōr	mēliūs	Mēliōr-ēs	mēliōr-iā
Abl.	Mēliōr-ē or i	mēliōr-ē or i	Mēliōr-ibūs	mēliōr-ibūs

III. ADJECTIVES OF ONE TERMINATION are of various endings and declined like Nouns of the Third Declension: *as*, *fēlix*, *fortunate*; *prūdens*, *prudent*.

	Sing.	1.	Plur.	
	M. and F.	N.	M. and F.	N.
Nom.	Fēlix	fēlix	Fēlio-ēs	fēlio-iā
Gen.	Fēlio-is	fēlio-is	Fēlio-um	fēlio-um
Dat.	Fēlio-i	fēlio-i	Fēlio-ibūs	fēlio-ibūs
Acc.	Fēlio-em	fēlix	Fēlio-ēs	fēlio-iā
Voc.	Fēlix	fēlix	Fēlio-ēs	fēlio-iā
Abl.	Fēlio-I or ē	fēlio-I or ē	Fēlio-ibūs	fēlio-ibūs

  

	Sing.	2.	Plur.	
	M. and F.	N.	M. and F.	N.
Nom.	Prūdēns	prūdēns	Prudent-ēs	prudent-iā
Gen.	Prudent-is	prudent-is	Prudent-um	prudent-um
Dat.	Prudent-i	prudent-i	Prudent-ibūs	prudent-ibūs
Acc.	Prudent-em	prūdēns	Prudent-ēs	prudent-iā
Voc.	Prūdēns	prūdēns	Prudent-ēs	prudent-iā
Abl.	Prudent-I or ē	prudent-I or ē	Prudent-ibūs	prudent-ibūs

ADJECTIVES OF THIRD DECLENSION, DECLINED WITH NOUNS OF FIRST, SECOND, AND THIRD DECLENSIONS.

1. *Cēlērīs sāgittā*,—a swift arrow.

	Sing.	Plur.
Nom.	Cēlērīs sāgittā	Cēlērēs sāgittae
Gen.	Cēlērīs sāgittae	Cēlērū sāgittārum
Dat.	Cēlērī sāgittae	Cēlērībūs sāgittis
Acc.	Cēlērem sāgittam	Cēlērēs sāgittas
Voc.	Cēlērīs sāgittā	Cēlērēs sāgittae
Abl.	Cēlērī sāgittā	Cēlērībūs sāgittis

2. *Tristē Proellum*,—*a sad battle.*

Sing.	Plur.
<i>Nom.</i> <i>Tristē proellum</i>	<i>Tristia proellia</i>
<i>Gen.</i> <i>Tristis proelli</i>	<i>Tristium proellorum</i>
<i>Dat.</i> <i>Tristi proellō</i>	<i>Tristibus proellis</i>
<i>Acc.</i> <i>Tristē proellum</i>	<i>Tristia proellia</i>
<i>Voc.</i> <i>Tristē proellum</i>	<i>Tristia proellia</i>
<i>Abl.</i> <i>Tristi proellō</i>	<i>Tristibus proellis</i>

3. *Felix Hōmo*,—*a happy man.*

Sing.	Plur.
<i>Nom.</i> <i>Felix hōmo</i>	<i>Felices hōminēs</i>
<i>Gen.</i> <i>Felici hōminis</i>	<i>Feliciū hōminū</i>
<i>Dat.</i> <i>Felici hōminī</i>	<i>Felicibus hōminibus</i>
<i>Acc.</i> <i>Felice hōminem</i>	<i>Felices hōminēs</i>
<i>Voc.</i> <i>Felix hōmo</i>	<i>Felices hōminēs</i>
<i>Abl.</i> <i>Felici or ē hōminē</i>	<i>Felicibus hōminibus</i>

## EXERCISE XIII.

**A.**—1. *Ira furor brevis est.* 2. *Ira militum erat acris.* 3. *Via est facilis.* 4. *Omne initium est difficile.* 5. *Leges hominibus utiles sunt.* 6. *Vulnus militis est leve.* 7. *Carmen est dulce.* 8. *Naves hostium sunt celeres.* 9. *Tempus humanae vitae breve est.* 10. *Rex cives fideles habet.*

1. The soldiers have sharp arms. 2. The arrow is swift. 3. Labour is easy in the winter. 4. Labour is difficult in the summer. 5. Arms are useful to soldiers. 6. The soldiers have short swords. 7. The beginning of the song is difficult. 8. The songs are easy. 9. The wounds of the soldier are light. 10. The arrows are sharp and swift.

**B.**—1. *Consilium ducis audax est.* 2. *Consilia ducis Romani audacia sunt.* 3. *Tempus praesens felix est.* 4. *Regnum Persarum erat potens.* 5. *Animalia rapacia sunt velocia.* 6. *Vetus vinum est bonum.* 7. *Rex ingentem numerum militum habet.* 8. *Leges Romanorum erant praestantes.* 9. *Praemia equitum ingentia erant.* 10. *Agricolae vinum vetus habent.*

1. The plans of the leader were prudent. 2. Elephants are prudent animals. 3. The booty of the Romans was immense. 4. The beginning was fortunate. 5. The Romans have excellent laws. 6. The king gives immense rewards to the soldiers. 7. Lions are rapacious animals. 8. The father gives old wine to the boy. 9. The present times are fortunate. 10. The Romans are powerful.

## IX.—THE FOURTH OR U DECLENSION.

The Nominative Singular of Masculine and Feminine Nouns of the Fourth Declension ends in *ūs*, and of Neuter Nouns in *u*.

Sing.		1.	Plur.
Nom.	Grād-ūs ( <i>m.</i> ), a step	Grād-ūs,	steps.
Gen.	Grād-ūs, of a step	Grād-ūum,	of steps
Dat.	Grād-ūi, to or for a step	Grād-ībūs,	to or for steps
Acc.	Grād-um, a step	Grād-ūs,	steps
Voc.	Grād-ūs, O step	Grād-ūs,	O steps
Abl.	Grād-ū, by, with, or from a step.	Grād-ībūs,	by, with, or from steps.
		2.	
Nom.	Gēn-u ( <i>n.</i> ), a knee	Gēn-ūs,	knees
Gen.	Gēn-ūs, of a knee	Gēn-ūum,	of knees
Dat.	Gēn-ūi, to or for a knee	Gēn-ībūs,	to or for knees
Acc.	Gēn-u, a knee	Gēn-ūs,	knees
Voc.	Gēn-u, O knee	Gēn-ūs,	O knees
Abl.	Gēn-ū, by, with, or from a knee.	Gēn-ībūs,	by, with, or from knees.

NOTE.—Some nouns of the Fourth Declension make the Dative and Ablative plural in -ībūs: as, acībūs, arcībūs, portībūs, vēribūs, with a few others. Also, the Dative Singular ūi is sometimes contracted into ū: as, grādūi, grādū.

#### EXERCISE XIV.

**A.**—1. Quercus sunt altæ. 2. Manus hominibus utiles sunt. 3. Visus et auditus sunt utiles hominibus.\* 4. Acus est acuta. 5. Portus est tutus. 6. Cursus militis erat celer. 7. Arcus Scytharum leves erant. 8. Arcus coelestis variorum colores habet. 9. Fructus ficus erat dulcis. 10. Caput est sedes omnium sensuum.

1. The oak is useful to man. 2. The city has beautiful harbours. 3. The Scythians have arrows and bows. 4. The needles are sharp. 5. The girl has a sharp needle. 6. The harbours of the city are safe. 7. The number of the harbours is great. 8. Hearing and seeing are useful (*pl.*) to animals. 9. The fruit of fig-trees is sweet. 10. The soldier kills the lion with (his) hand.

**B.**—1. Cornua tauri acuta sunt. 2. Magister cornu puero dat. 3. Genua hominibus utilia sunt. 4. Magistratus sunt legum ministri. 5. Exercitus arma magnifica habet. 6. Duces exercitus audaces erant. 7. Rex equitatum peditatumque\* habet. 8. Voluptas sensibus grata est. 9. Oculi sunt instrumenta visus. 10. Aures sunt instrumenta auditus.

1. The knees of elephants are hard. 2. The horns of the stag are hard. 3. The king gives a beautiful horn to the soldier. 4. The magistrates are the guardians of the laws. 5. The leader of the cavalry is bold. 6. Greece has many harbours. 7. Every (omne) animal has senses. 8. Eyes and ears are the instruments of the senses. 9. Sharp needles are useful to women. 10. The leaders of the infantry are powerful.

\* Quē, and (placed after the word which it unites to the preceding).

## X.—THE FIFTH OR E DECLENSION.

The Nominative Singular of Nouns of the Fifth Declension ends in *ēs*.

	Sing.		Plur.
Nom.	<i>Dī-ēs, a day</i>	<i>Dī-ēs, days</i>	
Gen.	<i>Dī-ēi, of a day</i>	<i>Dī-ērum, of days</i>	
Dat.	<i>Dī-ēi, to or for a day</i>	<i>Dī-ēbūs, to or for days</i>	
Acc.	<i>Dī-em, a day</i>	<i>Dī-ēs, days</i>	
Voc.	<i>Dī-ēs, O day</i>	<i>Dī-ēs, O days</i>	
Abl.	<i>Dī-ē, by, with, or from a day.</i>	<i>Dī-ēbūs, by, with, or from days.</i>	

NOTE.—In Nouns like *rēs*, where *ēs* is preceded by a Consonant, the *e* becomes short in Gen. and Dat. Singular: as, *rēi, spēi*.

GENDER.—All Nouns of the Fifth Declension are Feminine except *dīēs*, which is either Masculine or Feminine in the Singular, and always Masculine in the Plural; and *mēridiēs*, *midday*, which is always Masculine.

RULE 8.—When the Ablative Case indicates the place *where*, it is used with the Preposition *in, in*: as, *hostēs in planitiē erant*, *the enemies were in the plain*. See Rule 7, p. 13.

### EXERCISE XV.

1. Dies sunt sereni. 2. Numerus dierum serenorum parvus est. 3. Deus est dominus omnium rerum. 4. Dux magnam victoriae spem habet. 5. Fides servorum rara erat. 6. Exercitus in magna planitie erat. 7. In acie multi pedites erant. 8. Fortuna est domina rerum humanarum. 9. Facies filii pulchra erat. 10. Magna est pueri segnitias.

1. The number of days is infinite. 2. God is the creator of all things. 3. Many things are hurtful to man. 4. The mother gives many things to the girl. 5. In the line-of-battle were many horse-soldiers. 6. The cavalry was in the plain. 7. The reward was the beginning of hope. 8. The-leaders have great hope of victory. 9. The fidelity of sons was rare. 10. The slothfulness of the girl is troublesome to the mother.

## XI.—SOME IRREGULAR NOUNS.

The following words are thus declined:—

	<i>Dēūs, m., God. (2 Decl.)</i>			<i>Dōmūs, f., a house. (2 and 4 Decl.)</i>	
	Sing.	Plur.		Sing.	Plur.
Nom.	<i>Dēūs</i>	<i>Dēi, Dī, or Dī</i>		<i>Dōmūs</i>	<i>Dōmūs</i>
Gen.	<i>Dēi</i>	<i>Dēōrum, or Dēūm</i>		<i>Dōmūs</i>	<i>Dōmūm, or dōmōrum</i>
Dat.	<i>Dēō</i>	<i>Dēis, Dīis, or Dīs</i>		<i>Dōmūi</i>	<i>Dōmībūs</i>
Acc.	<i>Dēum</i>	<i>Dēis</i>		<i>Dōmum</i>	<i>Dōmōs (rarely dōmūs)</i>
Voc.	<i>Dēūs</i>	<i>Dēi, Dī, or Dī</i>		<i>Dōmūs</i>	<i>Dōmūs</i>
Abl.	<i>Dēō</i>	<i>Dēis, Dīis, or Dīs</i>		<i>Dōmō</i>	<i>Dōmībūs</i>

N.B.—The form *dōmī* is used only in the sense of *at home*.

Bōs, c., an ox or cow. (3 Decl.)			Sēnex, m., an old man. (3 Decl.)		
	Sing.	Plur.		Sing.	Plur.
Nom.	Bōs	Bōvēs	Sēnex	Sēnēs	
Gen.	Bōvis	Bōvūm, or bōum	Sēnis	Sēnum	
Dat.	Bōvi	Bōbūs, or bābūs	Sēni	Sēnibūs	
Acc.	Bōvem	Bōvēs	Sēnem	Sēnēs	
Voc.	Bōs	Bōvēs	Sēnex	Sēnēs	
Abl.	Bōvē	Bōbūs, or bābūs	Sēnē	Sēnibūs	
Vis, f., strength. (3 Decl.)			Jūpītēr (= Jōv-pītēr, i. e. pītēr, (3 Decl.) the god.		
	Sing.	Plur.		Sing.	Plur.
Nom.	Vis	Virēs	Jūpītēr		No plural.
Gen.	wanting	Virium	Jōvis		
Dat.	wanting	Viribūs	Jōvi		
Acc.	Vim	Virēs	Jōvem		
Voc.	wanting	Virēs	Jūpītēr		
Abl.	Vi	Viribūs	Jōvē		
Jusjūrandum, n., an oath (properly two words, Jūs, 3 Decl., and jūrandum, 2 Decl.)			Respublica, f., a commonwealth, a republic (properly two words, Rēs, 5 Decl., and publicā, 1 Decl.)		
	Sing.			Sing.	
Nom.	Jusjūrandum	No plural.	Nom.	Respublicā	No plural.
Gen.	Jūrisjūrandi		Gen.	Rēipublicae	
Dat.	Jūrijūrandō		Dat.	Rēipublicae	
Acc.	Jusjūrandum		Acc.	Rempublicam	
Voc.	Jusjūrandum		Voc.	Respublicā	
Abl.	Jūrējūrandō		Abl.	Rēipublicā	

# EXERCISE XVI.

A.—1. Di sunt immortales. 2. Jupiter et Neptunus sunt dii Romanorum. 3. Quercus Jovi sacrae erant. 4. Domus urbis sunt pulchrae. 5. Divitiae magnae in domo patris sunt. 6. Divitiae ingentes in domibus incolarum sunt. 7. Canes domuum custodes sunt. 8. Homines in domibus sunt, bestiae in silvis. 9. Dis sacrum est monumentum. 10. Vis fluminis ingens est.

1. Men are mortal, the gods immortal. 2. The oak is sacred to Jupiter. 3. Thunderbolts are the arms of Jupiter. 4. Many trees are sacred to the gods. 5. The number of the gods is immense. 6. The number of the houses is immense. 7. (There) were immense riches in the houses of the citizens. 8. The monuments are sacred to the gods. 9. Jupiter has many temples in Italy. 10. Oxen have great strength (*pl.*).

B.—1. Senex est debilis et aeger. 2. Funera senum et juvenum sunt multa. 3. Nomen Ciceronis senibus notum est. 4. Boves magnas vires habent. 5. Magna est vis conscientiae. 6. Civis jusjurandum judici dat.\* 7. In republica Romana sunt multi servi. 8. Respublica Romanorum potens erat. 9. Cornua bovis dura sunt. 10. Boves et equi in agro sunt.

1. The strength (*pl.*) of oxen is immense. 2. The king gives many oxen to the soldiers. 3. The old-men are feeble and sick. 4. The old-man gives gold and silver to the young-man. 5. The

\* Jusjurandum dat, in English, takes the oath.

house of the old-man is full of riches. 6. Gold and silver are in the houses of the citizens. 7. In the Roman commonwealth were many brave citizens. 8. The friends of the commonwealth were few. 9. The grass is pleasing to the oxen. 10. The fields are sacred to Jupiter.

### XII.—SOME IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES.

The following words have in the Genitive Sing. *iūs* (rarely *iūs*) and in the Dative *i*—

<i>ūnūs, ā, um,</i>	<i>one, alone.</i>	<i>altēr, altērā, altērum, one of two ;</i>
<i>sōlūs, ā, um,</i>	<i>alone.</i>	<i>altēr . . . altēr, the one . . .</i>
<i>tōtūs, ā, um,</i>	<i>whole.</i>	<i>the other.</i>
<i>ullūs, ā, um,</i>	<i>any.</i>	<i>āliūs, āliā, āliūd, one of any</i>
<i>nullūs, ā, um,</i>	<i>no, none.</i>	<i>number ; āliū . . . āliūs,</i>
<i>utēr, utrā, utrum,</i>	<i>which of two.</i>	<i>one . . . another ; in pl. some,</i>
<i>neutēr, neutrā, neutrum,</i>	<i>neither.</i>	<i>others.</i>

For example—

	M.	Sing. F.	N.	M.	Plur. F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>Ūn-ūs</i>	<i>ūn-ā</i>	<i>ūn-um</i>	<i>Ūn-i</i>	<i>ūn-ae</i>	<i>ūn-ā</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>Ūn-iūs</i>			<i>Ūn-ōrum</i>	<i>ūn-ārum</i>	<i>ūn-ōrum</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>Ūn-i</i>			<i>Ūn-is</i>		
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>Ūn-um</i>	<i>ūn-am</i>	<i>ūn-um</i>	<i>Ūn-ōs</i>	<i>ūn-ās</i>	<i>ūn-ā</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>Ūn-ō</i>	<i>ūn-ā,</i>	<i>ūn-ō</i>	<i>Ūn-is</i>		

*Obs.* As to the use of the Plural of *ūnūs*, see p. 27.

The Genitive Singular of *altēr* is *altēriūs*, and of *āliūs* is *āliūs*.

### EXERCISE XVII.

1. Virtus sola dat vērā voluptatē. 2. Cives Ciceroni uni dant honorem. 3. Utri dat (*does he give*) laudem? Neutri. 4. Alii sunt docti, alii indocti. 5. Alius (*gen.*) vires, alius (*gen.*) divitiae sunt magnae. 6. Alter est Graecus, alter Romanus. 7. Tota vita hominis memorabilis erat. 8. Alteri (*dat.*) laudem, alteri (*dat.*) culpam dant. 9. Neutri dat totā laudem. 10. Neutra civitas habet laudem ullam.

1. He gives the whole booty to the soldiers. 2. Cicero alone was pleasing to the citizens. 3. He was troublesome to neither. 4. To which-of-the-two does he give the praise? 5. Neither of the men has any abode. 6. Virtue alone gives true honours. 7. Life is troublesome to no good man. 8. Rome alone was head of (all) cities. 9. He was unfriendly to neither. 10. The one was pleasing to the citizens, the other was troublesome.

### XIII.—COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

Adjectives have three Degrees of Comparison: Positive, Comparative, and Superlative: as,

Positive..	Comparative.	Superlative.
<i>Altūs, high.</i>	<i>Altīor, higher.</i>	<i>Altissimūs, { highest, most high, or very high.</i>

The Comparative is formed by adding *iör* and the Superlative by adding *issimüs* to the Positive, after taking away the termination of the Genitive Singular: as,

Nom.	Posit.	Gen.	Comp.	Sup.
Altüs,		Alt-i,	Alt-iör,	Alt-issimüs.
Lévis,		Lév-is,	Lév-iör,	Lév-issimüs.
Félix,		Félic-is,	Félic-iör,	Félic-issimüs.
Prüdens,		Prüdent-is,	Prüdent-iör,	Prüdent-issimüs.

The Comparative is declined on p. 19 (*mäl-iör*).

The Superlative is declined like *bönus*, *böna*, *bönüm*.

EXCEPTIONS.—I. Adjectives ending in *ër* form the Superlative in *rümüs*: as,

Nom.	Posit.	Gen.	Comp.	Sup.
pulchër,		pulchr-i,	pulchr-iör,	pulcher-rümüs,
libër,		libër-i,	libër-iör,	liber-rümüs.
äcër,		äcr-is,	äcr-iör,	äcer-rümüs.
cëlër,		cëlër-is,	cëlër-iör,	cëler-rümüs.

Also *vëtüs* (*Gen. vëtër-is*), *old*, has a Superlative, *vëter-rümüs*.

II. The following six Adjectives ending in *ilis* form their Superlative in *limüs*: as,

Posit.	Comp.	Sup.
fäcilis,	fäcil-iör,	fäcil-limüs.
difficilis,	difficil-iör,	difficil-limüs.
sämilis,	sämil-iör,	sämil-limüs.
dissimilis,	dissimil-iör,	dissimil-limüs.
gräcilis,	gräcil-iör,	gräcil-limüs.
hümilis,	hümil-iör,	hümil-limüs.

III. Adjectives ending in *dicüs*, *ficüs*, and *völüs*, form their Comparative in *entiör*, and their Superlative in *entissimüs*: as,

Posit.	Comp.	Sup.
mälëdicüs,	mälëdicentiör,	mälëdicentissimüs.
bënëficüs,	bënëficentiör,	bënëficentissimüs.
bënëvölüs,	bënëvölentiör,	bënëvölentissimüs.

IV. Adjectives which have a vowel before the termination *us*, usually form the Comparative by prefixing the Adverb *mägis*, *more*, and the Superlative by prefixing the Adverb *maximë*, *most*: as, *noxius*, *hurtful*, *mägis noxiüs*, *more hurtful*, *maximë noxiüs*, *most hurtful*.

#### IRREGULAR COMPARISON.

Posit.	Comp.	Sup.
bönus,	mëliör,	optimüs.
mälus,	pëjör,	pessimüs.
magnus,	mäjör,	maximüs.
pavus,	mänor,	minimüs.
multus,	plüs ( <i>see below</i> ),	plürimüs.
nëquam ( <i>not declined</i> ),	nëquior,	nëquissimüs.



Posit.		Comp.	Sup.
dives,	rich,	dītor,	dītissimū.
sēnex,	old,	sēnior [nātū mājōr],	[nātū maxīmū].
jūvēnis,	young,	jūnior [nātū minōr],	[nātū minīmū].
sup̄erus,	upper,	sup̄erior,	suprēmū, summū.
inf̄erus,	lower,	inf̄erior,	inf̄imū, imū.
ext̄erus,	outside,	ext̄erior,	extrēmū, extīmū.
int̄erus,	inside,	int̄erior,	intīmū.
post̄erus,	behind,	post̄erior,	postrēmū, postīmū.
—	—	prior ( <i>former</i> ),	primū ( <i>first</i> ). [ <i>next</i> ].
—	—	pr̄op̄ior ( <i>earer</i> ),	proxīmū ( <i>nearest</i> ,
—	—	ult̄erior ( <i>further</i> ),	ultīmū ( <i>furthest</i> , last).
Singular.			
Neut. only.			
Nom.	Plūs	Masc. and Fem. Plūrēs	Neut. Plūrē
Gen.	Plūris	Plūrium	Plūrium
Dat.	Plūri	Plūribūs	Plūribūs
Acc.	Plūs	Plūrēs	Plūrē
Abl.	Plūrē	Plūribūs	Plūribūs

**'RULE 9.**—The English word *than* after the Comparative is translated by the Latin *quam* (indeclinable).

#### EXERCISE XXVIII.

**A.**—1. Aestate dies longiores sunt quam noctes. 2. Tempore hiberno dies sunt breviores. 3. Lepores timidiores sunt quam canes. 4. Noctes brevissimae sunt aestate. 5. Roma clarissima urbs Italiae erat. 6. Ferrum utilissimum est metallorum. 7. Radices arborum longissimae sunt. 8. Nihil est amabilius quam virtus. 9. Lux est velocior quam sonitus. 10. Nihil in amicitia perniciosius est quam adulatio.

1. Men are stronger than women. 2. Iron is more useful than gold. 3. The hare is a very timid animal. 4. Nothing is more excellent than virtue. 5. The roots of oak-trees are very strong and very long. 6. The Rhine is a very rapid river. 7. The eyes of the eagle are very keen. 8. The days are calmer in summer than in winter. 9. In winter time the light is feebler than in summer. 10. Nothing is more destructive to friendship than flattery.

**B.**—1. In bello miserrimi sunt agricolae. 2. Filiae matri sunt simillimae. 3. Itinera antiquis temporibus difficillima erant. 4. Pulcherrima est imago regis. 5. Facillimi erant labores militum. 6. Pulcherrima animalia non semper sunt utilissima. 7. Verrima vina non semper sunt dulcissima. 8. Vultures acerrimos habent oculos. 9. Pulcherrimi sunt colores florum. 10. In Helvetia sunt asperissimi montes.

1. The scent of flowers is very sweet. 2. The work is very difficult. 3. The journey was very long and very rough. 4. The eyes of the vulture are very keen. 5. Helvetia is a very rugged land. 6. The swiftest animals are not always the strongest. 7. The legs of the stag are very slender. 8. The son was very like (his) father (*dat.*). 9. War is the cause of many crimes. 10. In summer the sun is more powerful than in winter.

C.—1. Nihil est, melius quam sapientia. 2. Sol major est quam terra. 3. Luna minor est quam terra. 4. Plurima, et maxima animalia sunt in mari. 5. Optimae erant leges Romanae. 6. Pessimae sunt consuetudines discipulorum. 7. Melior est certa pax quam sperata victoria. 8. Simulatio amoris est pejor quam odium. 9. Cato optimus erat suae aetatis orator. 10. Aquilae vis maxima est.

1. Hatred is better than flattery. 2. Very many men give the greatest praise to Cato. 3. The best orator is not always the best citizen. 4. The most wicked men slay the most excellent (men). 5. No state was ever more renowned than Rome. 6. The best men are not always the most powerful. 7. They give the honour to the most excellent citizens. 8. Very many islands are larger than Sicily. 9. Sicily is a smaller island than Britain. 10. The Greeks were more learned than the Romans.

#### XIV.—THE NUMERALS.

*Cardinal Numerals* denote number simply or absolutely: as, ūnūs, *one*; dūō, *two*; trēs, *three*. They are given on the next page.

The declension of ūnūs is given on p. 24.

Obs. Ūnūs is used in the Plural with Plural Nouns which have a singular meaning: as, ūnā castrā, *one camp*; ūnae aedēs, *one house*; ūnae littērae, *one letter*.

Dūō, *two*, trēs, *three*, and millīā, *thousands*, are declined as follows:—

	M.	F.	N.	M. and F.	N.	N.
Nom.	Dū-ō	dū-ae	dū-ō	Trēs	triā	Millē
Gen.	Dū-ōrum	dū-ārum	dū-ōrum	Trium	trium	Millium
Dat.	Dū-ōbūs	dū-ābūs	dū-ōbūs	Tribūs	tribūs	Millibūs
Acc.	Dū-ōs or dū-ō	dū-ās	dū-ō	Trēs or trīs	triā	Millē
Abl.	Dū-ōbūs	dū-ābūs	dū-ōbūs	Tribūs	tribūs	Millibūs

Obs. Ambō, *both*, is declined like duo.

Millē, *a thousand*, in the singular, is an indeclinable adjective; but millīā, *thousands*, in the plural, is a Substantive: as, millē hōmīnēs, *a thousand men*; but, dūō millīā hōmīnum, *two thousand men*, literally, *two thousands of men*.

The Cardinal Numerals from quattuōr, *four*, to centum, *a hundred*, are indeclinable. They are given on the next page.

Dūcentī, *ae, ā, two hundred*, and the following hundreds, are declined regularly.

*Ordinal Numerals* denote numbers regarded as forming parts of a series: as, primūs, *first*; secundūs, or altēr, *second*. They are declined regularly as adjectives.

ARABIC SYMBOLS.	ROMAN SYMBOLS.	CARDINALS.	ORDINALS.
1	I	ūpus	prīmus.
2	II	dūō	sēcundus <i>or</i> altēr.
3	III	trēs	tertīus.
4	IV	quattuōr (quātūōr)	quartus.
5	V	quinquē	quintus.
6	VI	sex	sextus.
7	VII	septem	septīmus.
8	VIII	octō	octāvus.
9	IX	nōvem	nōnus.
10	X	dēcem	dēcīmus.
11	XI	undēcim	undēcīmus.
12	XII	duōdēcim	duōdēcīmus.
13	XIII	tredecim	tertīus dēcīmus.
14	XIV	quattuordēcim	quartus dēcīmus.
15	XV	quindēcim	quintus dēcīmus.
16	XVI	sēdēcim	sextus dēcīmus.
17	XVII	septemdēcim	septīmus dēcīmus.
18	XVIII	duōdēvigintī	duōdēvicēsīmus.
19	XIX	undēvigintī	undēvicēsīmus.
20	XX	vigintī	vicēsīmus.
21	XXI	ūnus et vīgintī <i>or</i> vīgintī ūnus	prīmus et vicēsīmus, <i>or</i> vicēsīmus prīmus.
22	XXII	duō et vīgintī <i>or</i> vīgintī duō	altēr et vicēsīmus, <i>or</i> vicēsīmus altēr.
23	XXIII	trēs et vīgintī <i>or</i> vīgintī trēs	tertīus et vicēsīmus, <i>or</i> vicēsīmus tertīus.
28	XXVIII	duōdētrīgintā	duōdētrīgēsīmus.
29	XXIX	undētrīgintā	undētrīgēsīmus.
30	XXX	trīgintā	trīgēsīmus.
40	XL	quadrāgintā	quadrāgēsīmus.
50	L	quinqūāgintā	quinqūāgēsīmus.
60	LX	sexāgintā	sexāgēsīmus.
70	LXX	septuāgintā	septuāgēsīmus.
80	LXXX	octōgintā	octōgēsīmus.
90	XC	hōnāgintā	nōnāgēsīmus.
100	C	centum	centēsīmus.
200	CC	ducentī, ae, ā	ducentēsīmus.
300	CCC	trecentī, ae, ā	trecentēsīmus.
400	CCCC	quadringentī, ae, ā	quadringentēsīmus.
500	D <i>or</i> IↃ	quingentī, ae, ā	quingentēsīmus.
600	DC	sexcentī, ae, ā	sexcentēsīmus.
700	DCC	septingentī, ae, ā	septingentēsīmus.
800	DCCC	octingentī, ae, ā	octingentēsīmus.
900	DCCCC	nongentī, ae, ā	nongentēsīmus.
1,000	M <i>or</i> CↃ	millē	millēsīmus.
2,000	MM	duō millia	bia, millēsīmus.
100,000	CCCIↃↃↃ	centum millia	centies millēsīmus.

EXERCISE XIX.

1. Homo habet unum os, duas aures, duos oculos. 2. Magister puero tres libros dat. 3. Sunt (*there are*) sedecim mala, viginti pruna, undeviginti pira, duodeviginti cerasa. 4. In capite hominis sexaginta tria sunt ossa. 5. In exercitu Alexandri Magni duodecim millia Macedonum erant. 6. Xerxes habet classem mille ducentarum navium. 7. In legione Romana erant cohortes decem, manipuli triginta, centuriae sexaginta. 8. Septem erant reges Romani; primus erat Romulus, secundus Numa, Pompilius, tertius Tullus Hostilius, quartus Ancus Martius, quintus Tarquinius Priscus, sextus Servius Tullus, septimus Tarquinius Superbus. 9. Augustus octavus est anni mensis. 10. Manipulus erat trigesima pars legionis Romanae.

1. The wise (men) of Greece were seven. 2. The first king of Rome was warlike. 3. They slay the tenth part of the men. 4. In a Roman legion (*there*) were ten cohorts, thirty maniples, sixty centuries. 5. They slay ten thousand men (*gen.*) in the war. 6. The second king of Rome was just and mild. 7. The seventh king of Rome was unjust and wicked. 8. In the first month of the year (*there*) are thirty-one days. 9. Rome has two consuls. 10. A Roman legion has five thousand foot-soldiers (*gen.*), three hundred horse-soldiers.\*

\* The number of soldiers in a legion varied considerably at different periods.

XV.—THE VERB SUM, I am.

Sum, fui, futurus, esse, — to be. Stem: es-, fu-.

VERB FINITE.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. PRESENT TENSE.

<i>Sing.</i>	Sum,	<i>I am</i>	<i>Plur.</i>	Sumus,	<i>We are</i>
	Es,	<i>thou art</i>		Estis,	<i>ye are</i>
	Est,	<i>he is.</i>		Sunt,	<i>they are.</i>

2. IMPERFECT TENSE.

<i>Sing.</i>	Ēram,	<i>I was</i>	<i>Plur.</i>	Ēramus,	<i>We were</i>
	Ērās,	<i>thou wast</i>		Ērātis,	<i>ye were</i>
	Ērāt,	<i>he was.</i>		Ērant,	<i>they were.</i>

3. FUTURE-SIMPLE TENSE.

<i>Sing.</i>	Ēro,	<i>I shall be</i>	<i>Plur.</i>	Ērimus,	<i>We shall be</i>
	Ēris,	<i>thou wilt be</i>		Ēritis,	<i>ye will be</i>
	Ērit,	<i>he will be.</i>		Ērunt,	<i>they will be.</i>

4. PERFECT TENSE.

<i>Sing.</i>	Fui,	<i>I have been, or</i> <i>I was</i>	<i>Plur.</i>	Fuimus,	<i>We have been, or</i> <i>we were</i>
	Fuisti,	<i>thou hast been, or</i> <i>thou wast</i>		Fuistis,	<i>ye have been, or</i> <i>ye were</i>
	Fuit,	<i>he has been, or</i> <i>he was.</i>		Fuerunt, or fuerē	<i>they have been, or</i> <i>they were.</i>

## 5. PLUPERFECT TENSE.

<i>Sing.</i> <b>Fuërān,</b> <i>I had been</i>	<i>Plur.</i> <b>Fuērāmūs,</b> <i>We had been</i>
<b>Fuērās,</b> <i>thou hadst been</i>	<b>Fuērātīs,</b> <i>ye had been</i>
<b>Fuērāt,</b> <i>he had been.</i>	<b>Fuērānt,</b> <i>they had been.</i>

## 6. FUTURE-PERFECT TENSE.

<i>Sing.</i> <b>Fuēro,</b> <i>I shall have been</i>	<i>Plur.</i> <b>Fuērimūs,</b> <i>We shall have been</i>
<b>Fuēris,</b> <i>thou wilt have been</i>	<b>Fuēritīs,</b> <i>ye will have been</i>
<b>Fuērit,</b> <i>he will have been.</i>	<b>Fuērint,</b> <i>they will have been.</i>

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

## 1. PRESENT TENSE.

<i>Sing.</i> <b>Ēs,</b> <i>Be thou.</i>	<i>Plur.</i> <b>Estē,</b> <i>Be ye.</i>
---	---

## 2. FUTURE TENSE.

<i>Sing.</i> <b>Estō,</b> <i>Thou shalt or must</i>	<i>Plur.</i> <b>Estētē,</b> <i>Ye shall or must</i>
<b>Estō,</b> <i>be</i>	<b>Suntō,</b> <i>be</i>
<b>Estō,</b> <i>he shall or must be.</i>	<b>Suntō,</b> <i>they shall or must be.</i>

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## 1. PRESENT TENSE.

<i>Sing.</i> <b>Sis,</b> <i>I may be</i>	<i>Plur.</i> <b>Simūs,</b> <i>We may be</i>
<b>Sis,</b> <i>thou mayst be</i>	<b>Sitīs,</b> <i>ye may be</i>
<b>Sit,</b> <i>he may be.</i>	<b>Sint,</b> <i>they may be.</i>

*Obs.* The first and third Persons singular and plural of the Present Subjunctive are often used as Imperatives: as, *sint cives justī,* let the citizens be just.

## 2. IMPERFECT TENSE.

<i>Sing.</i> <b>Essem</b> or <b>fōrem,</b> <i>I might be</i>	<i>Plur.</i> <b>Essemūs</b> or <b>fōremūs,</b> <i>We might be</i>
<b>Esēs</b> or <b>fōrēs,</b> <i>thou mightst be</i>	<b>Esētīs</b> or <b>fōrētīs,</b> <i>ye might be</i>
<b>Esēt</b> or <b>fōrēt,</b> <i>he might be.</i>	<b>Esēnt</b> or <b>fōrēnt,</b> <i>they might be.</i>

## 3. PERFECT TENSE.

<i>Sing.</i> <b>Fuērim,</b> <i>I may have been</i>	<i>Plur.</i> <b>Fuērimūs,</b> <i>We may have been</i>
<b>Fuēris,</b> <i>thou mayst have been</i>	<b>Fuēritīs,</b> <i>ye may have been</i>
<b>Fuērit,</b> <i>he may have been.</i>	<b>Fuērint,</b> <i>they may have been</i>

## 4. PLUPERFECT TENSE.

<i>Sing.</i> <b>Fuissem,</b> <i>I should</i>	<i>Plur.</i> <b>Fuissemūs,</b> <i>We should</i>
<b>Fuisēs,</b> <i>thou wouldst</i>	<b>Fuisētīs,</b> <i>ye would</i>
<b>Fuisēt,</b> <i>he would</i>	<b>Fuisēnt,</b> <i>they would</i>

## VERB INFINITE.

INFINITIVE PRESENT, and IMPERFECT,	<b>Esē,</b>	<i>to be.</i>
INFINITIVE PERFECT, and PLUPERFECT,	<b>Fuisē,</b>	<i>to have been.</i>

INFINITIVE FUTURE, *Futūrus essē, or forē, to be about to be.*  
 PARTICIPLE FUTURE, *Futūrus, -a, -um, about to be.*

NOTE.—A vowel before another vowel is usually short, and will therefore in future not always be marked.

Obs. *Futūrus* may be conjugated with all the tenses of *sum*: *as, futūrus sum, I am about to be; fūtūrus eram, I was about to be, &c.*

## EXERCISE XX.

### *The Verb Sum.—Indicative Mood.*

**A.**—1. *Sum laetus.* 2. *Es tristis.* 3. *Non diligens fuisti, Tite.* 4. *Probi filii gaudium patris erunt.* 5. *Opera tua multis hominibus erunt utilia.* 6. *Dux vester ero: victores erimus.* 7. *Si contenti eritis, pauperes non eritis.* 8. *Multi erunt pauperes, qui (who) divites fuerant.* 9. *Cives urbis liberae sumus.* 10. *Custodes miserae puellae fuistis.*

1. *We are joyful.* 2. *Ye are sad.* 3. *I am a Roman citizen.* 4. *The contented (pl.) are always joyful; the rich (pl.) are often sad.* 5. *If ye are good, ye are rich.* 6. *If thou wilt be diligent, thou wilt be learned.* 7. *The wicked man is not free.* 8. *They had been unlearned, now they are learned.* 9. *Ye will be rich and free.* 10. *The Roman state was renowned.*

### *Imperative Mood.*

**B.**—1. *Judex custos severus juris esto.* 2. *Probi este, pueri, et felices eritis.* 3. *Discipuli suntō attenti.* 4. *Judices justī suntō.* 5. *Reipublicae salus civibus cara esto.* 6. *Amici fideles suntō.* 7. *Reges patres patriae suntō.* 8. *Attenti este, discipuli.* 9. *Contenti estote sorte vestra.* 10. *Præceptorum memores este.*

1. *Be diligent, scholars.* 2. *Praise shall be the reward of diligence.* 3. *Be faithful, friends!* 4. *The judge must be just.* 5. *They are contented; they shall be rich.* 6. *There must be no cause of enmity; we are faithful friends.* 7. *Be just, be upright; thou wilt be successful.* 8. *Be brave, soldiers!* 9. *Let the citizens be (sint) free, let them be happy!* 10. *The city shall be the booty of the soldiers.*

## XVI.—COMPOUNDS OF SUM.

**Absum,** *I am absent.*  
**Adsum,** *I am present, stand by, side with.*  
**Dēsum,** *I am wanting.*  
**Insum,** *I am in.*  
**Intersum,** *I am among.*  
**Obsum,** *I am in the way, am hurtful to, injure.*

**Præsum,** *I am before, am at the head of.*  
**Prōsum,** *I am serviceable, do good to.*  
**Subsum,** *I am under, or amongst.*  
**Sūpersum,** *I remain over, survive.*

All these compounds of *Sum* are followed by the Dative Case. They are conjugated like *Sum*, but *Prōsum* takes *d* before *e*: as,

INDICATIVE.			
<i>Present.</i>		<i>Imperfect.</i>	<i>Future.</i>
<i>Sing.</i> <i>Prō-sum</i>	<i>Plur.</i> <i>Prō-sūmūs</i>	<i>Prō-eram,</i>	<i>Prō-ēro,</i>
<i>Prō-ēs</i>	<i>Prō-estis</i>	&c.	&c.
<i>Prō-est.</i>	<i>Prō-sunt.</i>		

INFINITIVE—*Present.*—*Prōd-esse.*

### EXERCISE XXI.

1. Bonis hominibus non deerunt amici. 2. Cicero reipublicae profuit. 3. Legionibus Romanis duces praefuerunt fortes. 4. Alexander Magnus multis proeliis interfuit. 5. Equitum multitudo exercitui nostro proderit. 6. Miles fortis omnibus aderit periculis. 7. Variæ cupiditates animo insunt. 8. Frigus multis plantis non prodest. 9. Militibus deerat animus. 10. Auxilium meum reipublicæ non profuit.

1. To good men friends are not wanting. 2. He was not serviceable to the commonwealth. 3. A good citizen sides-with his native country in the time of danger. 4. Indolence is hurtful to all men. 5. Alexander the Great survived many battles. 6. The general was amongst his soldiers in the battle. 7. Light is serviceable to all animals. 8. The general is-at-the-head-of the army. 9. Anger has been hurtful to many. 10. The soul survives the body.

## XVII.—THE PRONOUNS.

### 1. PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

#### 1. Pronoun of the First Person.

Sing.		Plur.	
Nom. <i>Egō,</i>	<i>I</i>	<i>Nōs,</i>	<i>we</i>
Gen. <i>Mēi,</i>	<i>of me</i>	<i>Nostri or nostrum,</i>	<i>of us</i>
Dat. <i>Mihī,</i>	<i>to or for me</i>	<i>Nōbīs,</i>	<i>to or for us</i>
Acc. <i>Mē,</i>	<i>me</i>	<i>Nōs,</i>	<i>us</i>
Abl. <i>Mē,</i>	<i>by, with, or from me.</i>	<i>Nōbīs,</i>	<i>by, with, or from us.</i>

#### 2. Pronoun of the Second Person.

Sing.		Plur.	
Nom. <i>Tū,</i>	<i>thou</i>	<i>Vōs,</i>	<i>ye</i>
Gen. <i>Tuī,</i>	<i>of thee</i>	<i>Vestri or vestrum,</i>	<i>of you</i>
Dat. <i>Tibi,</i>	<i>to or for thee</i>	<i>Vōbīs,</i>	<i>to or for you</i>
Acc. <i>Tē,</i>	<i>thee</i>	<i>Vōs,</i>	<i>you</i>
Voc. <i>Tū,</i>	<i>O thou</i>	<i>Vōs,</i>	<i>O ye</i>
Abl. <i>Tē,</i>	<i>by, with, or from thee.</i>	<i>Vōbīs,</i>	<i>by, with, or from you.</i>

### 3. Pronoun of the Third Person.

For the Pronoun of the Third Person, *he, she, it, is, ăă, id* is usually employed. (See p. 35.).

## II. REFLECTIVE PRONOUN OF THE THIRD PERSON. :

The Reflective Pronoun refers to the Subject of the sentence, and cannot therefore have a Nominative case.

		Sing. and Plur.
Gen. <b>Sui,</b>		<i>of himself, herself, itself, or themselves.</i>
Dat. <b>Sibi,</b>		<i>to or for himself, herself, itself, or themselves.</i>
Acc. <b>Sē or sēsē,</b>		<i>himself, herself, itself, or themselves.</i>
Abl. <b>Sē or sēsē,</b>		<i>by or from himself, herself, itself, or themselves.</i>

There are no distinct reflective forms in the 1st and 2nd persons; the different cases of *ego* and *tu* being used reflectively: *as, mēi, of myself; tibi, to thyself*, etc.

## III. POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

These are formed from the First and Second Personal and the Third Reflective Pronouns, and are declined as adjectives:

M.	F.	N.	
<b>Mēus,</b>	<b>mēa,</b>	<b>mēum,</b>	<i>my or mine.</i>
<b>Tuus,</b>	<b>tua,</b>	<b>tuum,</b>	<i>thy or thine.</i>
<b>Noster,</b>	<b>nostra,</b>	<b>nostrum,</b>	<i>our, ours.</i>
<b>Vester,</b>	<b>vestra,</b>	<b>vestrum,</b>	<i>your, yours.</i>
<b>Suus,</b>	<b>sua,</b>	<b>suum,</b>	<i>his, her, its, their.</i>

### EXERCISE XXII.

1. Ego sum laetus, tu es tristis. 2. Pater mihi librum dat utilem. 3. In me et in te et in nobis omnibus est animus immortalis. 4. Patria mihi carior est quam vita. 5. Omnia tua consilia nobis nota sunt. 6. Parentes vobis cari sunt. 7. Memores sumus tui. 8. Amicus memor est vestri. 9. Memoria vestri nobis grata est. 10. Mihi mea vita, tibi tua (vita) cara est.

1. Thy father is dear to thee; mine to me. 2. Wisdom and counsel are wanting to you, citizens! 3. In this is all our hope and safety. 4. Thy native-land must be ever most dear to thee. 5. Thine indolence is-in-the-way, Titus! 6. A true friend will be with thee in the time of danger. 7. The memory of our works survives us. 8. In neither battle was the general amongst his soldiers. 9. He was serviceable to his friends; he was hurtful to his enemies. 10. To us the victory is joyful, to you it is most-sad.



## IV. DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

1. Hic, haec, hoc, *this (near me)*; pl. *these*.

	M.	Sing. F.	N.		M.	Plur. F.	N.
Nom.	Hic	haec	hoc		Hi	hae	haec
Gen.	Huius				Horum	harum	horum
Dat.	Huius				His		
Acc.	Hunc	hanc	hoc		Hos	has	haec
Abi.	Hoc	hac	hoc		His		

2. Istē, istā, istud, *that (near you), that of yours*; pl. *those*.

	M.	F.	N.		M.	F.	N.
Nom.	Istē	istā	istud		Isti	istae	istā
Gen.	Istius				Istorum	istarum	istorum
Dat.	Isti				Istis		
Acc.	Istum	istam	istud		Istos	istas	istā
Abi.	Istō	istā	istō		Istis		

3. Illē, illā, illud, *that, that yonder*; pl. *those*.

	M.	F.	N.		M.	F.	N.
Nom.	Illē	illā	illud		Illi	illae	illā
Gen.	Illius				Illorum	illarum	illorum
Dat.	Illi				Illis		
Acc.	Illum	illam	illud		Illōs	illas	illā
Abi.	Illō	illā	illō		Illis		

## EXERCISE XXIII.

1. Haec carmina suavissima sunt. 2. Hi montes altissimi sunt.  
 3. Liberi agricolarum illorum diligentes fuerunt. 4. Dat tibi illud carmen pulcherrimum. 5. Hic puer industrius est, ille iners. 6. Demosthenes et Cicero clarissimi oratores fuerunt; ille erat Graecus, hic autem Romanus. 7. Iste amicus vir est optimus. 8. Ista auctoritas est maxima. 9. Memoria harum rerum nobis jucundissima est. 10. Nomen illius poetae clarissimum est.

1. These mountains are very high and very rugged. 2. That indolence (of yours) is hurtful to you (*sing.*), Titus. 3. The immortal soul will survive this mortal body. 4. That one man has always been hurtful to the commonwealth. 5. The memory of that one day was to Cicero most delightful. 6. That song (of yours) is to me most pleasant. 7. This my son is careful and industrious. 8. This life (of ours) is short; but that-one (illa) is immortal. 9. Those hands (of yours) are always busy. 10. These citizens are serviceable to the commonwealth; those are hurtful.

V. DETERMINATE, RELATIVE, AND INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS.

1. *Īs, eā, id, he, she, it, that*, referring to the former part of a sentence.

	M.	Sing. F.	N.		M.	Plur. F.	N.
Nom.	Īs	eā	id		II	eae	eā
Gen.	Ējus				Eōrum	eārum	eōrum
Dat.	Eī				Iis or eis		
Acc.	Eum	eam	id		Eōs	eās	eā
Abl.	Eō	eā	eō		Iis or eis		

2. *Īdem, eādem, idem, the same.*

Nom.	Īdem	eādem	idem		Iidem	eaedem	eādem
Gen.	Ējusdem				Eōrundem	eārundem	eōrundem
Dat.	Eīdem				Iidem or eīdem		
Acc.	Eundem	eandem	idem		Eōdem	eādem	eādem
Abl.	Eōdem	eādem	eōdem		Iidem or eīdem		

3. *Ipsē, ipsā, ipsum, self, himself, herself, itself.*

Nom.	Ipsē	ipsā	ipsum		Ipsī	ipsae	ipsā
Gen.	Ipsius				Ipsōrum	ipsarum	ipsōrum
Dat.	Ipsī				Ipsīs		
Acc.	Ipsum	ipsam	ipsum		Ipsōs	ipsās	ipsā
Abl.	Ipsō	ipsā	ipsō		Ipsīs		

4. Relative—*Qui, quae, quōd, who or which.*

Nom.	Qui	quae	quōd		Qui	quae	quae
Gen.	Cūjus				Quōrum	quārum	quōrum
Dat.	Cui				Quibus or quīs		
Acc.	Quem	quam	quōd		Quōs	quās	quae
Abl.	Quō	quā	quō		Quibus or quīs		

5. Interrogative—*Quīs or qui, quae, quīd or quōd, who? which? what?*

Nom.	Quīs or qui	quae	quīd or quōd		Qui	quae	quae
Gen.	Cūjus				Quōrum	quārum	quōrum
Dat.	Cui				Quibus or quīs		
Acc.	Quem	quam	quīd or quōd		Quōs	quās	quae
Abl.	Quō	quā	quō		Quibus or quīs		

The forms *quīs* and *quīd* are used by themselves, without a Noun: as, *Quīs es? who art thou? Quīd est? what is it?* The forms *qui* and *quōd* are used interrogatively with a Noun: as, *Qui hōmo es? what man art thou? Quōd mārē, what sea?*

RULE 10.—The Relative Pronoun agrees with the Antecedent in Gender, Number, and Person, but not in Case: as, *Felix est rex quem omnēs civēs laudant, Fortunate is the king whom all citizens praise.*

*Lēgit, (he, she, it) reads.*

*Lēgunt, (they) read.*

### EXERCISE XXIV.

A.—1. Amicum fidum habet; ei addictus est. 2. Sallustius est elegantissimus scriptor; ille ejus libros legit. 3. Qui amico in periculis adest, is verus amicus est.\* 4. Ii sunt cives boni, qui reipublicae prosunt. 5. Ipse labor nobis jucundus est. 6. Fons omnium voluptatum in nobis ipsis est. 7. Melior pars tui ipsius immortalis est. 8. Non minor pugna erat cum mulieribus Cimbrorum quam cum Cimbris ipsis. 9. Idem dies erit initium vitae aeternae. 10. Non omnibus hominibus eadem prosunt.

\* In translating this sentence, begin with *is verus amicus est*.

1. He has a faithful friend; he will never injure him. 2. My brother-himself is a most elegant writer. 3. (He) who gives honours to the bad is hurtful to the state.\* 4. The wives of the Cimbrians were themselves brave. 5. The same (things) injure some, do good to others. 6. (He) who is hurtful to the commonwealth is hurtful to himself.\* 7. The same (things) are not pleasing to all (men). 8. Demosthenes himself was not always pleasing to his (fellow) citizens. 9. Cicero is a faithful friend; I am devoted to him. 10. Cicero is a most elegant writer; they read his books.

\* In sentences 3 and 6 begin with *qui*, and afterwards use *is*: see Latin sentences No. 3.

B.—1. Quis habet exercitum? Quis est dux? 2. Cujus est equus? Cujus sunt arma? 3. Quae civitas habet optimas leges? 4. Quod animal est maximum et validissimum? 5. Quorum animalium sunt vires maximae? 6. Qui color pulcherrimus est? 7. Qui orator optimus et dulcissimus est? 8. Quorum arma sunt optima? 9. Cui dat (*does he give*) coronam? 10. Quod tempus felicius est quam praesens?

1. Which constellation is the most beautiful? 2. Which poet is the sweetest? 3. Who is he? what has he? 4. Who gives the book to thee? 5. To whom does he give the greatest praise? 6. Whose (*gen. sing.*) is the victory? Whose (*gen. pl.*) is the booty? 7. Which tax is the greatest? 8. Which king has the greatest taxes? 9. What animal is more sagacious (prudent) than the elephant? 10. What animal is more rapacious than the lion?

The Pupil is to pass over the next 36 pages, and proceed with the Verb on p. 37.

# PART I.

## GRAMMATICAL FORMS.

---

### THE CASES ARRANGED AS IN THE PUBLIC SCHOOL PRIMER.

#### I.—THE ALPHABET. PARTS OF SPEECH.

1. *Alphabet*.—The Latin Alphabet consists of 25 letters, the same as the English without *W*.

A, B, C, D, E, F, G, H, I, J, K, L, M, N, O, P,  
 a, b, c, d, e, f, g, h, i, j, k, l, m, n, o, p,  
 Q, R, S, T, U, V, X, Y, Z. .  
 q, r, s, t, u, v, x, y, z.

The letters are divided into Vowels and Consonants.

The Vowels are *a, e, i, o, u, y*. The remaining letters are Consonants.

The Diphthongs are *ae, oe, au*, which are in common use, and *eu, ei, ui*, which occur in only a few words.

The diphthongs *ae, oe*, are pronounced as *ē*.

A Long Syllable has the mark (˘) over the vowel. A Short Syllable has the mark (˙) over the vowel.

2. *Parts of Speech*.—There are eight parts of speech in the Latin language.

- |                          |                  |
|--------------------------|------------------|
| 1. Substantive, or Noun. | 5. Adverb.       |
| 2. Adjective.            | 6. Preposition.  |
| 3. Pronoun.              | 7. Conjunction.  |
| 4. Verb.                 | 8. Interjection. |

There is no article in the Latin language: hence the Latin *mensā* means not only *table*, but also *a table* and *the table*.

## II.—PRONUNCIATION.

The letters in Latin were probably pronounced as follows:—

VOWELS AND DIPHTHONGS.			
Latin	æ	=	English a in father.
"	ā	=	" first a in away, or a in villa
"	ā	=	" ai in pain.
"	æ	=	" ai in pain.
"	œ	=	" ai in pain.
"	ē	=	" e in men.
"	ī	=	" i in machine.
"	ī	=	" i in pity.
"	ō	=	" o in glory.
"	ō	=	" o in top.
"	u	=	" u in rule.
"	ū	=	" u in full.
"	au	=	" ow in power.
"	eu	=	{ Latin ē followed quickly by Latin ū (differs little from present pronunciation).
"	ei	=	
			{ Latin ē followed quickly by Latin i (differs little from ai in plain).

## CONSONANTS.

Latin	c, ch	=	English k.
"	g	=	" g in get.
"	s	=	" s in sin.
"	t (ratio)	=	{ t in cat, not sh, as in nation.
"	j	=	
"	y	=	" y in yard.
"	v	=	" v.
"	z, ph, th	=	" z, ph, th.

Latin s between two vowels = (sometimes) English s in rose, e.g. 'rosa.'

### III.—SUBSTANTIVES OR NOUNS. .

Nouns are declined by *Number* and *Case*.

There are two Numbers: *Singular* and *Plural*.

There are six Cases: *Nominative*, *Vocative*, *Accusative*, *Genitive*, *Dative*, *Ablative*.

There are three Genders: *Masculine*, *Feminine*, and *Neuter*.

Nouns which may be either Masculine or Feminine are called *Common*.

There are five Declensions, distinguished by the endings of the *Genitive Case*.

I.	II.	III.	IV.	V.
<i>Gen. Sing.</i> <i>ae</i>	<i>I</i>	<i>is</i>	<i>is</i>	<i>ei</i>
<i>Gen. Plur.</i> <i>Ā-rum</i>	<i>Ō-rum</i>	{ <i>-um</i> <i>I-nm</i> }	<i>Ū-rum</i>	<i>E-rum</i>

The *Stem* is that part of the word which remains after the changeable endings are taken away.

The *Stems* of Nouns can be ascertained by taking away the terminations *um* or *rum* of the *Genitive Plural*. Hence the final letter of the *Stem* is in—

I.	II.	III.	IV.	V.
<i>A</i>	<i>O</i>	consonant or <i>I</i>	<i>U</i>	<i>E</i>

### IV.—THE FIRST OR *A* DECLENSION.

The *Nominative Singular* of Nouns of the First Declension ends in *ā*.

	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>Mens-ā (fem.) a table</i>	<i>Mens-ae, tables</i>
<i>Voc.</i>	<i>Mens-ā, O table</i>	<i>Mens-ae, O tables</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>Mens-am, a table</i>	<i>Mens-as, tables</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>Mens-ae, of a table</i>	<i>Mens-Ārum, of tables</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>Mens-ae, to or for a table</i>	<i>Mens-is, to or for tables</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>Mens-ā, by, with, or from a table.</i>	<i>Mens-is, by, with, or from tables.</i>

NOTE.—*Fīlā, a daughter*; *dēā, a goddess*; *ēquā, a mare*; *āinā, a she-ass*; and a few others, make the *Dative* and *Ablative Plural* in *ābūs*: *filābūs, deābūs, equābūs, āsinābūs*, etc.

GENDER.—All Nouns of the First Declension are *Feminine*, unless they designate males: as, *nautā, a sailor*.

The Vocabularies begin on p. 125.

**RULE 1.**—The Nominative Case denotes the SUBJECT. A Verb agrees with its Nominative case in number and person: as, *puellā currit, the girl runs; puellae currunt, the girls run.*

**RULE 2.**—The Accusative Case denotes the OBJECT. Transitive verbs govern an Accusative case: as, *āquilā alās habēt, the eagle has wings.* NOTE.—In Latin the verb is put last and the Accusative case before it.

Singular, 3 pers.  
**Currit,** (*he, she, it*) runs.  
**Habēt,** (*he, she, it*) has.

Plural, 3 pers.  
**Currunt,** (*they*) run.  
**Habent,** (*they*) have.

### EXERCISE I.

1. *Filia currit.* 2. *Filiae currunt.* 3. *Regina coronam habet.*  
 4. *Puella coronam habet.* 5. *Filia pecuniam habet.* 6. *Femina pecuniam habet.* 7. *Roma portas habet.* 8. *Coloniae portas habent.*  
 9. *Puellae rosas habent.* 10. *Feminae rosas habent.* 11. *Columbae alas habent.* 12. *Insulae oras habent.*

1. The woman runs. 2. The women run. 3. The dove has wings. 4. The eagles have wings. 5. The colony has gates. 6. The island has coasts. 7. The girls have money. 8. The women have money. 9. The colony has women. 10. The island has colonies. 11. The woman has a crown. 12. The islands have roses.

**RULE 3.**—When two Nouns in Latin are connected by the verb "To be," they are put in the same case: as, *Britanniā est insulā, Britain is an island.* Use the Nominative case after the verb "To be."

**RULE 4.**—The latter of two Nouns is put in the Genitive case when the one is dependent upon the other: as, *Britanniā est insulā Europae, Britain is an island of Europe.*

**Est,** (*he*) is.

**Sunt,** (*they*) are.

### EXERCISE II.

1. *Sicilia est insula.* 2. *Sicilia est insula Europae.* 3. *Roma est regina Italiae.* 4. *Incolae Italiae sunt poetae.* 5. *Incolae insularum sunt nautae.* 6. *Incolae Britanniae sunt agricolae.* 7. *Insula est patria nautarum.* 8. *Graecia est patria poetarum.* 9. *Amicitia est gloria vitae.* 10. *Inimicitia incolarum est causa pugnae.*

1. Britain is the queen of islands. 2. Britain is the native-land of sailors. 3. Italy is the native-land of poets. 4. The inhabitants of Britain are sailors. 5. The inhabitants of Sicily are sailors. 6. The inhabitants of Gaul are husbandmen. 7. Britain is the native-land of glory. 8. Friendship is the crown of life. 9. The battle is the cause of glory. 10. The enmity of the sailors is the cause of the battle.

## V.—THE SECOND OR O DECLENSION.

The Nominative Singular of Masculine Nouns of the Second Declension ends in ūs and ĕr, and of Neuter Nouns in um.

### A. Masculine.

Sing.	Plur.
Nom. Dōmīn-ūs, a lord	Dōmīn-i, lords
Voc. Dōmīn-ĕ, O lord	Dōmīn-i, O lords
Acc. Dōmīn-um, a lord	Dōmīn-ōs, lords
Gen. Dōmīn-i, of a lord	Dōmīn-ōrum, of lords
Dat. Dōmīn-ō, to or for a lord	Dōmīn-is, to or for lords
Abl. Dōmīn-ō, by, with, or from a lord.	Dōmīn-is, by, with, or from lords.

Nom. Māgistr, a master	Māgistr-i, masters
Voc. Māgistr, O master	Māgistr-i, O masters
Acc. Māgistr-um, a master	Māgistr-ōs, masters
Gen. Māgistr-i, of a master	Māgistr-ōrum, of masters
Dat. Māgistr-ō, to or for a master	Māgistr-is, to or for masters
Abl. Māgistr-ō, by, with, or from a master.	Māgistr-is, by, with, or from masters.

### 3.

Nom. Puēr, a boy	Puēr-i, boys
Voc. Puēr, O boy	Puēr-i, O boys
Acc. Puēr-um, a boy	Puēr-ōs, boys
Gen. Puēr-i, of a boy	Puēr-ōrum, of boys
Dat. Puēr-ō, to or for a boy	Puēr-is, to or for boys
Abl. Puēr-ō, by, with, or from a boy.	Puēr-is, by, with, or from boys.

NOTE.—Proper Names in ūs make ī in the Vocative, as, Mer-cūriūs, *Mercury*, Voc. Mercūri. Also the Vocative Singular of filiūs, a son, is fili, and of genitūs, a guardian deity, is genī.

There is one Noun of the Second Declension ending in ĩr, namely, vĭr, a man (as distinguished from a woman). It is declined like puēr:

Sing.	4.	Plur.
Nom. Vĭr, a man	Vĭr-i,	men
Voc. Vĭr, O man	Vĭr-i,	O men
Acc. Vĭr-um, a man	Vĭr-ōs,	men
Gen. Vĭr-i, of a man	Vĭr-ōrum,	of men
Dat. Vĭr-ō, to or for a man	Vĭr-is,	to or for men
Abl. Vĭr-ō, by, with, or from a	Vĭr-is,	by, with, or from men.



## B. Neuter.

	Sing.		Plur.
N.V.A.	Regn-um, a kingdom, or O kingdom	Regn-ā,	kingdoms, or O kingdoms
Gen.	Regn-i, of a kingdom	Regn-ōrum,	of kingdoms
Dat.	Regn-ō, to or for a kingdom	Regn-is,	to or for kingdoms
Abl.:	Regn-ō, by, with, or from a kingdom.	Regn-is,	by, with, or from kingdoms.

NOTE.—The Nominative, Vocative, and Accusative of all Neuter Nouns are the same.

GENDER.—Most Nouns in ūs are Masculine, but names of trees are Feminine; as, *mālūs*, an apple-tree.

Three Nouns of the Second Declension ending in ūs are Neuter: *virtūs*, poison; *vulgūs*, the multitude; *pēlāgūs*, the (open) sea. They are used only in the Singular. (N.B. *Vulgus* is sometimes Masculine.)

et, and.

## EXERCISE III.

## Masculine Nouns in ūs.

1. Filius currit. 2. Servi currunt. 3. Dominus servos habet. 4. Filius domini servos habet. 5. Dominus servos et equos habet. 6. Filii dominorum equos et tauros habent. 7. Avus servos et equos habet. 8. Filius amici hortum habet. 9. Filii inimicorum gladios habent. 10. Rhodanus est fluvius Galliae. 11. Rhodanus et Rhenus sunt fluvii Galliae. 12. Hortus rosas habet.

1. The slave runs. 2. The sons run. 3. The grandfather has a slave. 4. The son of the grandfather has slaves. 5. The sons of the grandfather have slaves. 6. The sons of the lords are sailors. 7. The sons of the slaves are husbandmen. 8. The lord has slaves and horses. 9. The Rhone and the Rhine are rivers of Europe. 10. The friends of the grandfather are poets. 11. The enemies of the lord have swords. 12. The rivers of the island have banks.

RULE 5.—The Dative Case indicates the person who gains or receives anything: as, *magistēr cōlumbam pūrō dāt*, the master gives a dove to the boy.

Dāt, (he, she, it) gives.

Dant, (they) give.

## EXERCISE IV.

## Masculine Nouns in ēr.

1. Puer librum habet. 2. Magister librum puero dat. 3. Filius libros habet. 4. Dominus servos et ministros habet. 5. Dominus agrum ministro dat. 6. Socr agros et ministros habet. 7. Socr agrum genero dat. 8. Magistri libros pueris dant. 9. Gener servum puero dat. 10. Puer librum ministro dat.

1. The boys have books. 2. The lord gives a field to the boys.

3. The fathers-in-law and the sons-in-law have fields. 4. The father-in-law gives servants to the son-in-law. 5. The friends have books. 6. The enemies have servants and fields. 7. The masters give gardens to the boys. 8. The master gives doves to the boys. 9. The grandfather gives fields to the master. 10. The fathers-in-law give fields and bulls to the sons-in-law.

### EXERCISE V.

#### Neuter Nouns.

1. Amici sunt donum coeli. 2. Amicitia est donum Dei. 3. Dona avi sunt praemia diligentiae. 4. Aurum et argentum sunt metalla. 5. Magister argentum puero dat. 6. Discipuli sunt gaudium magistrorum. 7. Bellum est causa morborum. 8. Oppidum muros et portas habet. 9. Tempia sunt gloria Graeciae. 10. Romani gladios et scuta habent.

1. Friends are the gift of God. 2. The boys and girls are the joy of the grandfather. 3. The grandfather gives gold and silver to the boys. 4. Greece and Sicily have temples. 5. The temples of Greece have gifts. 6. The father-in-law gives gold and silver to the temples. 7. The metals are the cause of war. 8. The queen has lands and towns. 9. The queen gives rewards to the inhabitants. 10. The lord gives shields and swords to the servants.

## VI. -ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS.

Adjectives in ūs, ā, um, or ĕr, (ĕ)rā, (ĕ)rum, are declined in the Masculine and Neuter like Nouns of the Second Declension, and in the Feminine like Nouns of the First Declension: as, bōnūs, bōnā, bōnum, *good*; nīgēr, nigrū, nigrum, *black*; tēnēr, tēnērā, tēnērū, *tender*.

	Sing.			1.	Plur.		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.	
Nom.	Bōn-ūs	bōn-ā	bōn-um	Bōn-ī	bōn-ae	bōn-ā	
Voc.	Bōn-ē	bōn-ā	bōn-um	Bōn-ī	bōn-ae	bōn-ā	
Acc.	Bōn-um	bōn-am	bōn-um	Bōn-ōs	bōn-ās	bōn-ā	
Gen.	Bōn-ī	bōn-ae	bōn-ī	Bōn-ōrum	bōn-ārum	bōn-ōrum	
Dat.	Bōn-ō	bōn-ae	bōn-ō	Bōn-īs	bōn-īs	bōn-īs	
Abl.	Bōn-ō	bōn-ā	bōn-ō	Bōn-īs	bōn-īs	bōn-īs	

  

	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.	
N. V.	Nīgēr	nigr-ā	nigr-um	Nigr-ī	nigr-ae	nigr-ā	
Acc.	Nigr-um	nigr-am	nigr-um	Nigr-ōs	nigr-ās	nigr-ā	
Gen.	Nigr-ī	nigr-ae	nigr-ī	Nigr-ōrum	nigr-ārum	nigr-ōrum	
Dat.	Nigr-ō	nigr-ae	nigr-ō	Nigr-īs	nigr-īs	nigr-īs	
Abl.	Nigr-ō	nigr-ā	nigr-ō	Nigr-īs	nigr-īs	nigr-īs	

	Sing.			3.	Plur.		
	M.	F.	N.		M.	F.	N.
<i>N. V.</i>	Tēnēr	tēnēr-ā	tēnēr-um	Tēnēr-i	tēnēr-ae	tēnēr-ā	
<i>Acc.</i>	Tēnēr-um	tēnēr-am	tēnēr-um	Tēnēr-ōs	tēnēr-ās	tēnēr-ā	
<i>Gen.</i>	Tēnēr-i	tēnēr-ae	tēnēr-i	Tēnēr-ōrum	tēnēr-ārum	tēnēr-ōrum	
<i>Dat.</i>	Tēnēr-ō	tēnēr-ae	tēnēr-ō	Tēnēr-is	tēnēr-is	tēnēr-is	
<i>Abl.</i>	Tēnēr-ō	tēnēr-ā	tēnēr-ō	Tēnēr-is	tēnēr-is	tēnēr-is	

## 4.

FEMININE ADJECTIVE DECLINED ALONG WITH FEMININE NOUN, BOTH OF FIRST DECLENSION.

	Sing.
N.V.	Parvā mensā,
Acc.	Parvam mensam,
Gen.	Parvae mensae,
Dat.	Parvae mensae,
Abl.	Parvā mensā,

*a small table, or O small table*  
*a small table*  
*of a small table*  
*to or for a small table*  
*by, with, or from a small table.*

## Plur.

N.V.	Parvae mensae,
Acc.	Parvas mensas,
Gen.	Parvarum mensarum,
Dat.	Parvis mensis,
Abl.	Parvis mensis,

*small tables, or O small tables*  
*small tables*  
*of small tables*  
*to or for small tables*  
*by, with, or from small tables.*

## 5.

MASCULINE ADJECTIVES DECLINED ALONG WITH MASCULINE NOUNS, BOTH OF SECOND DECLENSION.

## (A.)

	Sing.
Nom.	Bōnūs dōmīnūs,
Voc.	Bōnē dōmīnē,
Acc.	Bōnum dōminum,
Gen.	Bōnī dōmīnī,
Dat.	Bōnō dōmīnō,
Abl.	Bōnō dōmīnō,

*a good lord*  
*O good lord*  
*a good lord*  
*of a good lord*  
*to or for a good lord*  
*by, with, or from a good lord.*

## Plur.

N.V.	Bōnī dōmīnī,
Acc.	Bōnōs dōmīnōs,
Gen.	Bōnōrum dōmīnōrum,
Dat.	Bōnīs dōmīnīs,
Abl.	Bōnīs dōmīnīs,

*good lords, or O good lords*  
*good lords*  
*of good lords*  
*to or for good lords*  
*by, with, or from good lords.*

## (B.)

	Sing.
Nom.	Bōnūs pūēr.
Voc.	Bōnē pūēr,
Acc.	Bōnum pūērum,
Gen.	Bōnī pūēri,
Dat.	Bōnō pūērō,
Abl.	Bōnō pūērō,

*a good boy*  
*O good boy*  
*a good boy*  
*of a good boy*  
*to or for a good boy*  
*by, with, or from a good boy.*

Plur.

<i>N. V.</i> Bōnī pūērī,	<i>good boys, or O good boys</i>
<i>Acc.</i> Bōnās pūērōs,	<i>good boys</i>
<i>Gen.</i> Bōnōrum pūērōrum,	<i>of good boys</i>
<i>Dat.</i> Bōnīs pūērīs,	<i>to or for good boys</i>
<i>Abl.</i> Bōnīs pūērīs,	<i>by, with, or from good boys.</i>

6.

NEUTER ADJECTIVE DECLINED ALONG WITH NEUTER NOUN,  
BOTH OF SECOND DECLENSION.

(A.)

Sing.

<i>N. V. A.</i> Magnū regnū,	<i>a great kingdom, or O great kingdom</i>
<i>Gen.</i> Magnī regnī,	<i>of a great kingdom</i>
<i>Dat.</i> Magnō regnō,	<i>to or for a great kingdom</i>
<i>Abl.</i> Magnō regnō,	<i>by, with, or from a great kingdom.</i>

Plur.

<i>N. V. A.</i> Magnā regnā,	<i>great kingdoms, or O great kingdoms</i>
<i>Gen.</i> Magnōrum regnōrum,	<i>of great kingdoms</i>
<i>Dat.</i> Magnīs regnīs,	<i>to or for great kingdoms</i>
<i>Abl.</i> Magnīs regnīs,	<i>by, with, or from great kingdoms.</i>

(B.)

Sing. only.

<i>N. V. A.</i> Magnū pēlāgū,	<i>the great sea</i>
<i>Gen.</i> Magnī pēlāgī,	<i>of the great sea</i>
<i>Dat.</i> Magnō pēlāgō,	<i>to or for the great sea</i>
<i>Abl.</i> Magnō pēlāgō,	<i>by, with, or from the great sea.</i>

7.

MASCULINE ADJECTIVE OF SECOND DECLENSION DECLINED WITH  
MASCULINE NOUN OF FIRST DECLENSION.

Sing.

<i>Nom.</i> Clārūs nautā,	<i>a famous sailor</i>
<i>Voc.</i> Clārē nautā,	<i>O famous sailor</i>
<i>Acc.</i> Clārum nautam,	<i>a famous sailor</i>
<i>Gen.</i> Clārī nautae,	<i>of a famous sailor</i>
<i>Dat.</i> Clārō nautae,	<i>to or for a famous sailor</i>
<i>Abl.</i> Clārō nautā,	<i>by, with, or from a famous sailor.</i>

Plur.

<i>N. V.</i> Clārī nautae,	<i>famous sailors, or O famous sailors</i>
<i>Acc.</i> Clārōs nautās,	<i>famous sailors</i>
<i>Gen.</i> Clārōrum nautārum,	<i>of famous sailors</i>
<i>Dat.</i> Clārīs nautīs,	<i>to or for famous sailors</i>
<i>Abl.</i> Clārīs nautīs,	<i>by, with, or from famous sailors.</i>

**RULE 6.**—Adjectives agree with their Nouns in gender, number, and case.

Note that the Adjective in Latin is sometimes placed after the Noun.

#### EXERCISE VI.

**A.**—1. Servus est timidus. 2. Columba est timida. 3. Gaudium est magnum. 4. Servi sunt mali. 5. Insulae sunt magnae. 6. Oppida sunt parva. 7. Muri sunt alti. 8. Puellae sunt bonae. 9. Horti sunt lati. 10. Alae sunt albae.

1. The sword is long. 2. The island is long. 3. The shields are long. 4. The slaves are timid. 5. The doves are timid. 6. The towns are great. 7. The temples are small. 8. The shields are wide. 9. The kingdom is great. 10. The friends are good.

**B.**—1. Columba albas alas habet. 2. Multae columbae albas alas habent. 3. Graecia multa templa habet. 4. Splendida templa sunt gloria Graeciae. 5. Bellicosa regina multas terras habet. 6. Oppidum magnum multas portas habet. 7. Magister librum bono puero dat. 8. Avus praemium bonae puellae dat. 9. Pericula nautarum sunt magna. 10. Dominus acutos gladios habet.

1. The queen has many islands. 2. The queen gives swords to the inhabitants. 3. Gaul has many towns. 4. The temples are great and splendid. 5. The daughters of the women are good. 6. The son of the warlike queen has a sharp sword. 7. The high banks have many roses. 8. The Rhone is a great and broad river. 9. The roses of the high banks are white. 10. The Rhine is a rapid river.

**C.**—1. Puer est aeger. 2. Puella est aegra. 3. Aurum templi est sacrum. 4. Regina est pulchra. 5. Filiae sunt tenerae. 6. Filii sunt miseri. 7. Morbus molestus est tenero filio. 8. Exemplum servi noxium puero est. 9. Praemia diligentiae sunt grata discipulis. 10. Magnus est numerus puerorum.

1. The pupils of the master are sick. 2. The master gives a book to the sick boy. 3. The black slaves are troublesome to the lord. 4. Great is the number of black slaves. 5. The splendid gifts of the temple are sacred. 6. Great is the diligence of the beautiful girl. 7. The diligence of the girl is pleasing to the grandfather. 8. The example of the slaves is injurious to the pupils. 9. The disease is troublesome to the wretched girl. 10. The master gives rewards to the beautiful girl.

## VII.—THE THIRD OR CONSONANT AND I DECLENSION.

The Nominative Singular of Nouns of the Third Declension ends in various letters. Their stems end in some consonant or *i*.

### A. Masculine and Feminine Nouns.

#### I. STEMS ENDING IN A CONSONANT.

1. Nouns the stems of which end in the labial (lip) letters *p, b, m*.

Sing.	1.	Plur.
N.V. Trăb-s ( <i>f.</i> ), a beam, or O beam	Trăb-ēs,	beams, or O beams
Acc. Trăb-em, a beam	Trăb-ēs,	beams
Gen. Trăb-is, of a beam	Trăb-um,	of beams
Dat. Trăb-i, to or for a beam	Trăb-ibūs,	to or for beams
Abl. Trăb-ē, by, with, or from a beam.	Trăb-ibūs,	by, with, or from beams.

2.		
N.V. Princip-s ( <i>c.</i> ), a chief, or O	Princip-ēs,	chiefs, or O chiefs
Acc. Princip-em, a chief [chief	Princip-ēs,	chiefs
Gen. Princip-is, of a chief	Princip-um,	of chiefs
Dat. Princip-i, to or for a chief	Princip-ibūs,	to or for chiefs
Abl. Princip-ē, by, with, or from a chief.	Princip-ibūs,	by, with, or from chiefs.

### 3.

N.V. <b>Hiēm-s</b> ( <i>f.</i> ), winter, or <i>O</i>	<b>Hiēm-ēs</b> , winters, or <i>O</i> winters
Acc. <b>Hiēm-em</b> , winter [winter	<b>Hiēm-ēs</b> , winters
Gen. <b>Hiēm-is</b> , of winter	<b>Hiēm-um</b> , of winters
Dat. <b>Hiēm-i</b> , to or for winter	<b>Hiēm-ibūs</b> , to or for winters
Abl. <b>Hiēm-ē</b> , by, with, or from winter.	<b>Hiēm-ibūs</b> , by, with, or from winters.

2. Nouns the stems of which end in the guttural (throat) letters *c, g*. NOTE.—In the Nominative and Vocative Singular *cs, gs* are contracted into *x*.

Sing.	1.	Plur.
N.V. Dux ( <i>c.</i> ), a leader, or O leader	Dūc-ēs,	leaders, or O leaders
Acc. Dūc-em, a leader	Dūc-ēs,	leaders
Gen. Dūc-is, of a leader	Dūc-um,	of leaders
Dat. Dūc-i, to or for a leader	Dūc-ibūs,	to or for leaders
Abl. Dūc-ē, by, with, or from a leader.	Dūc-ibūs,	by, with, or from leaders.

Sing.	2.	Plur.
<i>N.V. Lex (f.), a law, or O law</i>	<i>Lēg-ēs, laws, or O laws</i>	
<i>Acc. Lēg-em, a law</i>	<i>Lēg-ēs, laws</i>	
<i>Gen. Lēg-is, of a law</i>	<i>Lēg-um, of laws</i>	
<i>Dat. Lēg-i, to or for a law</i>	<i>Lēg-ibūs, to or for laws</i>	
<i>Abl. Lēg-ē, by, with, or from a law.</i>	<i>Lēg-ibūs, by, with, or from laws.</i>	

3.	
<i>N.V. Jūdex (c.), a judge, or O judge</i>	<i>Jūdic-ēs, judges, or O judges</i>
<i>Acc. Jūdic-em, a judge</i>	<i>Jūdic-ēs, judges</i>
<i>Gen. Jūdic-is, of a judge</i>	<i>Jūdic-um, of judges</i>
<i>Dat. Jūdic-i, to or for a judge</i>	<i>Jūdic-ibūs, to or for judges</i>
<i>Abl. Jūdic-ē, by, with, or from a judge.</i>	<i>Jūdic-ibūs, by, with, or from judges.</i>

Ērāt, (he, she, it) was.

Ērant, (they) were.

## EXERCISE VII.

1. Trabes sunt longae. 2. Romulus Romanorum rex erat. 3. Pax regi jucunda erat. 4. Judices erant justī. 5. Duces erant benigni. 6. Leges Romanorum severae erant. 7. Reges arces firmas habent. 8. Arx urbis est firma. 9. Hiems agricolis molesta erat. 10. Oppida regis firma erant.

1. The beams were long. 2. Rome is a city of Italy. 3. The leader of the Romans was warlike. 4. Peace was pleasant to the leaders. 5. The king gives the city to the leader. 6. The judges were kind and just. 7. The king gives a book to the severe judge. 8. The disease is troublesome to the king. 9. The example is injurious to the judges. 10. The sons of the judges are severe.

3. Nouns the stems of which end in the dental (teeth) letters *t, d*.

Sing.	1.	Plur.
<i>N.V. Aetās (f.), an age, or O age</i>	<i>Aetāt-ēs, ages, or O ages</i>	
<i>Acc. Aetāt-em, an age</i>	<i>Aetāt-ēs, ages</i>	
<i>Gen. Aetāt-is, of an age</i>	<i>Aetāt-um, of ages</i>	
<i>Dat. Aetāt-i, to or for an age</i>	<i>Aetāt-ibūs, to or for ages</i>	
<i>Abl. Aetāt-ē, by, with, or from an age.</i>	<i>Aetāt-ibūs, by, with, or from ages.</i>	

<i>N.V. Lāpis (m.), a stone, or O stone</i>	<i>Lāpid-ēs, stones, or O stones</i>
<i>Acc. Lāpid-em, a stone</i>	<i>Lāpid-ēs, stones</i>
<i>Gen. Lāpid-is, of a stone</i>	<i>Lāpid-um, of stones</i>
<i>Dat. Lāpid-i, to or for a stone</i>	<i>Lāpid-ibūs, to or for stones</i>
<i>Abl. Lāpid-ē, by, with, or from a stone.</i>	<i>Lāpid-ibūs, by, with, or from stones.</i>

N. V. <b>Milē-s</b> (s.), a soldier, or O	<b>Milit-ēs</b> , soldiers, or O soldiers
Acc. <b>Milit-em</b> , a soldier [soldier]	<b>Milit-ēs</b> , soldiers
Gen. <b>Milit-is</b> , of a soldier	<b>Milit-um</b> , of soldiers
Dat. <b>Milit-i</b> , to or for a soldier	<b>Milit-ibūs</b> , to or for soldiers
Abl. <b>Milit-ē</b> , by, with, or from a soldier.	<b>Milit-ibūs</b> , by, with, or from soldiers.

RULE 7.—The Ablative case indicates—(1) The instrument or means by which something is done: as, *dōmīnūs hastā servum occidit*, the lord kills the slave with a spear.

(2) The time when something is done or takes place: as, *noctēs hīemē longae sunt*, the nights are long in winter.

**Occidit**, (he, she, it) kills.

**Occidunt**, (they) kill.

### EXERCISE VIII.

1. Miles gladio obsidem occidit. 2. Miles lapide comitem occidit. 3. Pedites custodes gladiis occidunt. 4. Tempestates auctumno magnae sunt. 5. Equites et pedites timidi erant. 6. Custodes auri erant timidi. 7. Mors est lex naturae. 8. Civitas Romanorum clara erat. 9. Voluntas iudicis justa est. 10. Milites iudices hastis occidunt.

1. Tempests in the winter are great. 2. A tempest in the summer is troublesome. 3. A long night in the winter is pleasant. 4. The inhabitants kill the soldiers with stones. 5. The hostages kill the foot-soldiers with spears. 6. The wish of the companion is just. 7. The horse-soldiers and foot-soldiers have swords. 8. The guardian of the silver was timid. 9. The boy has many stones. 10. The king has many soldiers and companions.

4. Nouns the stems of which end in the liquids *l*, *r*, and the sibilant *s*.

Sing.	1.	Plur.
N. V. <b>Consul</b> (m.), a consul, or O	<b>Consul-ēs</b> , consuls, or O consuls	
Acc. <b>Consul-em</b> , a consul [consul]	<b>Consul-ēs</b> , consuls	
Gen. <b>Consul-is</b> , of a consul	<b>Consul-um</b> , of consuls	
Dat. <b>Consul-i</b> , to or for a consul	<b>Consul-ibūs</b> , to or for consuls	
Abl. <b>Consul-ē</b> , by, with, or from a consul.	<b>Consul-ibūs</b> , by, with, or from consuls.	

N. V. <b>Clāmōr</b> (m.), a shout, or O	<b>Clāmōr-ēs</b> , shouts, or O shouts
Acc. <b>Clāmōr-em</b> , a shout [shout]	<b>Clāmōr-ēs</b> , shouts
Gen. <b>Clāmōr-is</b> , of a shout	<b>Clāmōr-um</b> , of shouts
Dat. <b>Clāmōr-i</b> , to or for a shout	<b>Clāmōr-ibūs</b> , to or for shouts
Abl. <b>Clāmōr-ē</b> , by, with, or from a shout.	<b>Clāmōr-ibūs</b> , by, with, or from shouts.



Sing.	3.	Plur.
<i>N.V. Ansēr (m.), a goose, or O goose</i>	<i>Ansēr-ēs,</i>	
<i>Acc. Ansēr-em, a goose</i>	<i>Ansēr-ēs,</i>	
<i>Gen. Ansēr-is, of a goose</i>	<i>Ansēr-um, of geese</i>	
<i>Dat. Ansēr-i, to or for a goose</i>	<i>Ansēr-ibūs, to or for geese</i>	
<i>Abl. Ansēr-ē, by, with, or from a goose.</i>	<i>Ansēr-ibūs, by, with, or from geese.</i>	

4.	
<i>N.V. Pātēr, a father, or O father</i>	<i>Patr-ēs, fathers, or O fathers</i>
<i>Acc. Patr-em, a father</i>	<i>Patr-ēs, fathers</i>
<i>Gen. Patr-is, of a father</i>	<i>Patr-um, of fathers</i>
<i>Dat. Patr-i, to or for a father</i>	<i>Patr-ibūs, to or for fathers</i>
<i>Abl. Patr-ē, by, with, or from a father.</i>	<i>Patr-ibūs, by, with, or from fathers.</i>

<i>N.V. Flōs (m.), a flower, or O flower.</i>	<i>Flōr-ēs, flowers, or O flowers</i>
<i>Acc. Flōr-em, a flower</i>	<i>Flōr-ēs, flowers</i>
<i>Gen. Flōr-is, of a flower</i>	<i>Flōr-um, of flowers</i>
<i>Dat. Flōr-i, to or for a flower</i>	<i>Flōr-ibūs, to or for flowers</i>
<i>Abl. Flōr-ē, by, with, or from a flower.</i>	<i>Flōr-ibūs, by, with, or from flowers.</i>

## EXERCISE IX.

1. Puer patrem et matrem habet. 2. Puellae fratres et sorores habent. 3. Odores florum sunt varii. 4. Color floris est jucundus. 5. Labor aestate molestus est. 6. Calor solis molestus est. 7. Totae urbs est praeda victoris. 8. Aggeres et fossae sunt munimenta castrorum. 9. Clamor militum molestus est.

1. The father of the judge is just. 2. The mother of the soldier is sick. 3. The hostage has a brother and a sister. 4. The colours of the flowers are various. 5. The brother gives a flower to (his) sister. 6. The shout of the soldiers was great. 7. The heat of the sun is great. 8. The heat is troublesome in the summer. 9. The mounds of the camp are high. 10. The cities are the booty of the soldiers.

5. Nouns the stems of which end in *ōn* or *ōn* (in).

Sing.	1.	Plur.
<i>N.V. Lēo (m.), a lion, or O lion</i>	<i>Lēōn-ēs,</i>	<i>lions, or O lions</i>
<i>Acc. Lēōn-em, a lion</i>	<i>Lēōn-ēs,</i>	<i>lions</i>
<i>Gen. Lēōn-is, of a lion</i>	<i>Lēōn-um,</i>	<i>of lions</i>
<i>Dat. Lēōn-i, to or for a lion</i>	<i>Lēōn-ibūs,</i>	<i>to or for lions</i>
<i>Abl. Lēōn-ē, by, with, or from a lion.</i>	<i>Lēōn-ibūs,</i>	<i>by, with, or from lions.</i>

<i>N.V. Virgo (f.), a maiden, or O maiden</i>	<i>Virgīn-ēs,</i>	<i>maidens, or O maidens</i>
<i>Acc. Virgīn-em, a maiden</i>	<i>Virgīn-ēs,</i>	<i>maidens</i>
<i>Gen. Virgīn-is, of a maiden</i>	<i>Virgīn-um,</i>	<i>of maidens</i>
<i>Dat. Virgīn-i, to or for a maiden</i>	<i>Virgīn-ibūs,</i>	<i>to or for maidens</i>
<i>Abl. Virgīn-ē, by, with, or from a maiden.</i>	<i>Virgīn-ibūs,</i>	<i>by, with, or from maidens</i>

EXERCISE X.

1. Leones sunt validi. 2. Virgo est timida. 3. Calor molestus est multis hominibus. 4. Consuetudo altera natura est. 5. Sermo oratoris est doctus. 6. Pavones agricolae sunt pulchri. 7. Mors hominibus certa est. 8. Multitudo morborum est infinita. 9. Juno erat dea Romanorum. 10. Vita hominibus grata est.

1. The lion is strong. 2. The maidens are timid. 3. The multitude of men is infinite. 4. The soldier kills the lion with a sword. 5. The father gives a peacock to the maiden. 6. The heat is troublesome. 7. The heat in autumn is injurious to men. 8. The discourses of the orators were learned. 9. Juno and Minerva were goddesses of the Romans. 10. The peacock was sacred to Juno.

II. STEMS ENDING IN I.

Sing.	1.	Plur.
N.V. Host-is (c.), an enemy, or O	Host-ēs,	enemies, or O enemies
Acc. Host-em, an enemy [enemy	Host-ēs,	enemies
Gen. Host-is, of an enemy	Host-ium,	of enemies
Dat. Host-i, to or for an enemy	Host-ibūs,	to or for enemies
Abl. Host-ē, by, with, or from an enemy.	Host-ibūs,	by, with, or from enemies.

Some stems in *i* have the Nominative in *e* and are thus declined :—

N.V. Nūb-ēs (f.), a cloud, or O	Nūb-ēs,	clouds, or O clouds
Acc. Nūb-em, a cloud [cloud	Nūb-ēs,	clouds
Gen. Nūb-is, of a cloud	Nūb-ium,	of clouds
Dat. Nūb-i, to or for a cloud	Nūb-ibūs,	to or for clouds
Abl. Nūb-ē, by, with, or from a cloud.	Nūb-ibūs,	by, with, or from clouds.

EXERCISE XI.

1. Cives agros et hortos habent. 2. Rex civibus praemia dat. 3. Nubes atrae sunt causa tempestatum. 4. Rupes sunt durae. 5. Urbs turrets altas habet. 6. Clades hostium magna erat. 7. Classis Romana duces peritos habet. 8. Valles hostibus notae erant. 9. Graecia valles angustas habet. 10. Virgo pulchram vestem habet.

1. The citizens were timid. 2. The valleys are known to the citizens. 3. The mother gives a garment to the maiden. 4. The citizens kill the enemies with swords. 5. The rocks are known to the citizens. 6. The valleys of Greece are narrow. 7. The Roman fleet has a skilful leader. 8. The maidens have beautiful garments. 9. The slaughter of the soldiers was great. 10. The leaders of the enemies were skilful.

## B. Neuter Nouns.

## I. STEMS ENDING IN A CONSONANT.

Nouns the stems of which end in *n, r, s, t*.

Sing.	1.	Plur.
N.V.A. <b>Nēmēn</b> , a name, or O	<b>Nōmīn-ā</b> , names, or O names	
Gen. <b>Nōmīn-is</b> , of a name [name]	<b>Nōmīn-um</b> , of names	
Dat. <b>Nōmīn-i</b> , to or for a name	<b>Nōmīn-ibūs</b> , to or for names	
Abl. <b>Nōmīn-ē</b> , by, with, or from a name.	<b>Nōmīn-ibūs</b> , by, with, or from names.	
N.V.A. <b>Fulgūr</b> , lightning, or O	<b>Fulgūr-ā</b> , lightnings, or O light-	
Gen. <b>Fulgūr-is</b> , of lightning	<b>Fulgūr-um</b> , of lightnings	
Dat. <b>Fulgūr-i</b> , to or for lightning	<b>Fulgūr-ibūs</b> , to or for lightnings	
Abl. <b>Fulgūr-ē</b> , by, with, or from lightning.	<b>Fulgūr-ibūs</b> , by, with, or from lightnings.	
N.V.A. <b>Crūs</b> , a leg, or O leg	<b>Crūr-ā</b> , legs, or O legs	
Gen. <b>Crūr-is</b> , of a leg	<b>Crūr-um</b> , of legs	
Dat. <b>Crūr-i</b> , to or for a leg	<b>Crūr-ibūs</b> , to or for legs	
Abl. <b>Crūr-ē</b> , by, with, or from a leg.	<b>Crūr-ibūs</b> , by, with, or from legs.	
N.V.A. <b>Ōpūs</b> , a work, or O work	<b>Ōpēr-ā</b> , works, or O works	
Gen. <b>Ōpēr-is</b> , of a work	<b>Ōpēr-um</b> , of works	
Dat. <b>Ōpēr-i</b> , to or for a work	<b>Ōpēr-ibūs</b> , to or for works	
Abl. <b>Ōpēr-ē</b> , by, with, or from a work.	<b>Ōpēr-ibūs</b> , by, with, or from works.	
N.V.A. <b>Corpūs</b> , a body, or O body	<b>Corpōr-ā</b> , bodies, or O bodies	
Gen. <b>Corpōr-is</b> , of a body	<b>Corpōr-um</b> , of bodies	
Dat. <b>Corpōr-i</b> , to or for a body	<b>Corpōr-ibūs</b> , to or for bodies	
Abl. <b>Corpōr-ē</b> , by, with, or from a body.	<b>Corpōr-ibūs</b> , by, with, or from bodies.	
N.V.A. <b>Cāpūt</b> , a head, or O head	<b>Cāpīt-ā</b> , heads, or O heads	
Gen. <b>Cāpīt-is</b> , of a head	<b>Cāpīt-um</b> , of heads	
Dat. <b>Cāpīt-i</b> , to or for a head	<b>Cāpīt-ibūs</b> , to or for heads	
Abl. <b>Cāpīt-ē</b> , by, with, or from a head.	<b>Cāpīt-ibūs</b> , by, with, or from heads.	

## II. STEMS ENDING IN I.

The Nominative in *ē, āl, ār*.

Sing.	1.	Plur.
N.V.A. <b>Mār-ē</b> , the sea, or O sea	<b>Mār-ā</b> , seas, or O seas	
Gen. <b>Mār-is</b> , of the sea	<b>Mār-um</b> , of seas	
Dat. <b>Mār-i</b> , to or for the sea	<b>Mār-ibūs</b> , to or for seas	
Abl. <b>Mār-i</b> , by, with, or from the sea.	<b>Mār-ibūs</b> , by, with, or from seas.	

	Sing.	Plur.
N. V. A.	Ānimāl, an animal, or O animal	Ānimāl-ī, animals, or O ani- mals
Gen.	Ānimāl-is, of an animal	Ānimāl-īum, of animals
Dat.	Ānimāl-i, to or for an animal	Ānimāl-ībūs, to or for animals
Abl.	Ānimāl-i, by, with, or from an animal.	Ānimāl-ībūs, by, with, or from animals.

8.

N. V. A.	Calcār, a spur, or O spur	Calcār-ī, spurs, or O spurs
Gen.	Calcār-is, of a spur	Calcār-īum, of spurs
Dat.	Calcār-i, to or for a spur	Calcār-ībūs, to or for spurs
Abl.	Calcār-i, by, with, or from a spur.	Calcār-ībūs, by, with, or from spurs.

### EXERCISE XII.

**A.**—1. Nomen Carthaginis clarum erat. 2. Litora erant angusta.  
3. Elephantī magna capita et parva crura habent. 4. Balaenae  
parva ora habent. 5. Fulgur est rapidum. 6. Opus est durum  
et molestum. 7. Ira causa multorum scelerum est. 8. Juno an-  
tiquis temporibus erat dea. 9. Sidera nautis grata sunt. 10. Frigus  
hieme est molestum.

1. The name of Cicero is renowned. 2. The works of Cicero  
are renowned. 3. Elephants have a strong body. 4. The legs  
of elephants are small. 5. The mouths of whales are small.  
6. Elephants have great heads and small eyes. 7. The crimes  
are known to the judge. 8. The cold is troublesome to the maiden.  
9. The time of the year is pleasant. 10. The shore is wide.

**B.**—1. Maria sunt domicilia piscium. 2. Calcaria sunt decus  
equis. 3. Litora maris sunt magna. 4. Nautae retia habent.  
5. Vectigalia sunt magna. 6. Gramen animalibus gratum erat.  
7. Calcaria equitis sunt nova. 8. Maria sunt profunda. 9. Genera  
animalium sunt varia. 10. Equites aurea calcaria habent.

1. The sea is deep. 2. The shores of the seas are high. 3. The  
deep sea is the abode of fishes. 4. The nets of the sailors are  
golden. 5. The king gives golden nets to the sailors. 6. The  
spurs of the horse-soldier are golden. 7. The king gives a golden  
spur to the horse-soldier. 8. The animal is strong. 9. Many  
animals are strong. 10. The tax is troublesome.

### NOUNS OF THIRD DECLENSION, AND ADJECTIVES OF FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSIONS, DECLINED TOGETHER.

#### 1. Magnus Dux,—a great leader.

	Sing.	Plur.
Nom.	Magnūs dux	Magnī dūces
Voc.	Magnē dux	Magnī dūces
Acc.	Magnum dūcem	Magnōs dūces
Gen.	Magnī dūcis	Magnōrum dūcium
Dat.	Magnō dūci	Magnis dūcībūs
Abl.	Magnō dūce	Magnis dūcībūs.

## 2. Bōnā Mātēr,—a good mother.

	Sing.	Plur.
N.V.	Bōnā mātēr	Bōnæ mātērē
Acc.	Bōnam mātrem	Bōnās mātērē
Gen.	Bōnæ mātēris	Bōnārum mātērum
Dat.	Bōnæ mātēri	Bōnīs mātēribūs
Abl.	Bōnā mātēre	Bōnīs mātēribūs.

## 3. Rāpīdum Flūmēn,—a rapid river.

N.V.A.	Rāpīdum flūmēn	Rāpīdā flūmīnā
Gen.	Rāpīdī flūmīnis	Rāpīdōrum flūmīnum
Dat.	Rāpīdō flūmīni	Rāpīdis flūmīnībūs
Abl.	Rāpīdō flūmīnē	Rāpīdis flūmīnībūs.

## VIII.—ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

I. ADJECTIVES OF THREE TERMINATIONS end in ēr, rīs, rē, and are declined like Nouns of the Third Declension. They have three terminations in the Nominative and Vocative Singular only: as, ācēr, ācēris, ācrē, *sharp*; cēlēr, cēlētis, cēlērē, *swift*.

	Sing.			Plur.	
	M.	F.	N.	M. and F.	N.
N.V.	Ācēr	Ācēris	ācrē	Ācrēs	ācrīā
Acc.	Ācrem	ācrem	ācrē	Ācrēs	ācrīā
Gen.	Ācēris	ācēris	ācēris.	Ācrīum	ācrīum
Dat.	Ācēri	ācēri	ācēri	Ācēribūs	ācēribūs
Abl.	Ācēri	ācēri	ācēri	Ācēribūs	ācēribūs

II. ADJECTIVES OF TWO TERMINATIONS are declined like Nouns of the Third Declension. They have two terminations in the Nominative, Vocative, and Accusative only. They include—

1. Adjectives ending in īs: as, tristīs (*masc. and fem.*), tristē (*neut.*), *sad*.
2. Comparatives, ending in iōr, iūs: as, mēliōr (*masc. and fem.*), mēliūs (*neut.*), *better*.

	Sing.		Plur.	
	M. and F.	N.	M. and F.	N.
N.V.	Trist-īs	trist-ē	Trist-ēs	trist-iā
Acc.	Trist-em	trist-ē	Trist-ēs	trist-iā
Gen.	Trist-īs	trist-īs	Trist-ium	trist-ium
Dat.	Trist-i	trist-i	Trist-ibūs	trist-ibūs
Abl.	Trist-i	trist-i	Trist-ibūs	trist-ibūs

2.

N.V.	Mēliōr	mēliūs	Mēliōr-ēs	mēliōr-ē
Acc.	Mēliōr-em	mēliūs	Mēliōr-ēs	mēliōr-ē
Gen.	Mēliōr-īs	mēliōr-īs	Mēliōr-um	mēliōr-um
Dat.	Mēliōr-i	mēliōr-i	Mēliōr-ibūs	mēliōr-ibūs
Abl.	Mēliōr-ē or i	mēliōr-ē or i	Mēliōr-ibūs	mēliōr-ibūs

III. ADJECTIVES OF ONE TERMINATION are of various endings and declined like Nouns of the Third Declension :  
as, *fēlix, fortunate ; prūdens, prudent.*

	Sing.	N.	M. and F.	Plur.
N. V.	<i>Fēlix</i>	<i>fēlix</i>	<i>Fēlic-ēs</i>	<i>fēlic-iā</i>
Acc.	<i>Fēlic-em</i>	<i>fēlix</i>	<i>Fēlic-ēs</i>	<i>fēlic-iā</i>
Gen.	<i>Fēlic-is</i>	<i>fēlic-is</i>	<i>Fēlic-ium</i>	<i>fēlic-ium</i>
Dat.	<i>Fēlic-i</i>	<i>fēlic-i</i>	<i>Fēlic-ibūs</i>	<i>fēlic-ibūs</i>
Abl.	<i>Fēlic-i or ē</i>	<i>fēlic-i or ē</i>	<i>Fēlic-ibūs</i>	<i>fēlic-ibūs</i>

2.

N. V.	<i>Prūdēns</i>	<i>prūdēns</i>	<i>Prudent-ēs</i>	<i>prudent-iā</i>
Acc.	<i>Prudent-em</i>	<i>prūdēns</i>	<i>Prudent-ēs</i>	<i>prudent-iā</i>
Gen.	<i>Prudent-is</i>	<i>prudent-is</i>	<i>Prudent-ium</i>	<i>prudent-ium</i>
Dat.	<i>Prudent-i</i>	<i>prudent-i</i>	<i>Prudent-ibūs</i>	<i>prudent-ibūs</i>
Abl.	<i>Prudent-i or ē</i>	<i>prudent-i or ē</i>	<i>Prudent-ibūs</i>	<i>prudent-ibūs</i>

ADJECTIVES OF THIRD DECLENSION, DECLINED WITH NOUNS OF FIRST, SECOND, AND THIRD DECLENSIONS.

1. *Cēlērīs Sāgittā, — a swift arrow.*

	Sing.	Plur.
N. V.	<i>Cēlērīs sāgittā</i>	<i>Cēlērēs sāgittae</i>
Acc.	<i>Cēlērem sāgittam</i>	<i>Cēlērēs sāgittas</i>
Gen.	<i>Cēlērīs sāgittae</i>	<i>Cēlērū sāgittarū</i>
Dat.	<i>Cēlērī sāgittae</i>	<i>Cēlērībūs sāgittis</i>
Abl.	<i>Cēlērī sāgittā</i>	<i>Cēlērībūs sāgittis</i>

2. *Tristē Proelium, — a sad battle.*

N. A. V.	<i>Tristē proelium</i>	<i>Tristiā proeliā</i>
Gen.	<i>Tristis proelii</i>	<i>Tristium proeliorum</i>
Dat.	<i>Tristi proelio</i>	<i>Tristibus proeliis</i>
Abl.	<i>Tristi proelio</i>	<i>Tristibus proeliis</i>

3. *Fēlix Hōmo, — a happy man.*

N. V.	<i>Fēlix hōmo</i>	<i>Fēlicēs hōmīnēs</i>
Acc.	<i>Fēlicem hōmīnem</i>	<i>Fēlicēs hōmīnēs</i>
Gen.	<i>Fēlicis hōmīnis</i>	<i>Fēlicium hōmīnū</i>
Dat.	<i>Fēlicī hōmīni</i>	<i>Fēlicībūs hōmīnībūs</i>
Abl.	<i>Fēlicī or ē hōmīnē</i>	<i>Fēlicībūs hōmīnībūs</i>

EXERCISE XIII.

A.—1. *Ira furor brevis est.* 2. *Ira militum erat acris.* 3. *Via est facilis.* 4. *Omne initium est difficile.* 5. *Leges hominibus utiles sunt.* 6. *Vulnus militis est leve.* 7. *Carmen est dulce.* 8. *Naves hostium sunt celeres.* 9. *Tempus humanae vitae breve est.* 10. *Rex cives fideles habet.*

1. The soldiers have sharp arms. 2. The arrow is swift. 3. Labour is easy in the winter. 4. Labour is difficult in the summer. 5. Arms are useful to soldiers. 6. The soldiers have short swords. 7. The beginning of the song is difficult. 8. The songs are easy. 9. The wounds of the soldier are light. 10. The arrows are sharp and swift.

**B.**—1. Consilium ducis audax est. 2. Consilia ducis Romani audacia sunt. 3. Tempus praesens felix est. 4. Regnum Persarum erat potens. 5. Animalia rapacia sunt velocia. 6. Vetus vinum est bonum. 7. Rex ingentem numerum militum habet. 8. Leges Romanorum erant praestantes. 9. Praemia equitum ingentia erant. 10. Agricola vinum vetus habent.

1. The plans of the leader were prudent. 2. Elephants are prudent animals. 3. The booty of the Romans was immense. 4. The beginning was fortunate. 5. The Romans have excellent laws. 6. The king gives immense rewards to the soldiers. 7. Lions are rapacious animals. 8. The father gives old wine to the boy. 9. The present times are fortunate. 10. The Romans are powerful.

### IX.—THE FOURTH OR U DECLENSION.

The Nominative Singular of Masculine and Feminine Nouns of the Fourth Declension ends in *ūs*, and of Neuter Nouns in *u*.

Sing.	1.	Plur.
<i>N. V. Grād-ūs (m.), a step, or O step</i>	<i>Grād-ūs,</i>	<i>steps, or O steps</i>
<i>Acc. Grād-um, a step</i>	<i>Grād-ūs,</i>	<i>steps</i>
<i>Gen. Grād-ūs, of a step</i>	<i>Grād-ūum,</i>	<i>of steps</i>
<i>Dat. Grād-ūi, to or for a step</i>	<i>Grād-ībūs,</i>	<i>to or for steps</i>
<i>Abl. Grād-ū, by, with, or from a step.</i>	<i>Grād-ībūs,</i>	<i>by, with, or from steps.</i>
	2.	
<i>N. V. A. Gēn-u (n.), a knee or O knee</i>	<i>Gēn-ūā,</i>	<i>knees, or O knees</i>
<i>Gen. Gēn-ūs, of a knee</i>	<i>Gēn-ūum,</i>	<i>of knees</i>
<i>Dat. Gēn-ūi, to or for a knee</i>	<i>Gēn-ībūs,</i>	<i>to or for knees</i>
<i>Abl. Gēn-ū, by, with, or from a knee.</i>	<i>Gēn-ībūs,</i>	<i>by, with, or from knees.</i>

NOTE.—Some nouns of the Fourth Declension make the Dative and Ablative plural in *-ībūs*: as, *acībūs*, *arībūs*, *portībūs*, *verībūs*, with a few others. Also, the Dative Singular *ūi* is sometimes contracted into *ū*: as, *grādūi*, *grādū*.

### EXERCISE XIV.

**A.**—1. Quercus sunt altae. 2. Manus hominibus utiles sunt. 3. Visus et auditus sunt utiles hominibus. 4. Acus est acuta. 5. Portus est tutus. 6. Cursus militis erat celer. 7. Arcus Scytharum leves erant. 8. Arcus coelestis varios colores habet. 9. Fructus ficus erat dulcis. 10. Caput est sedes omnium sensuum.  
1. The oak is useful to man. 2. The city has beautiful harbours. 3. The Scythians have arrows and bows. 4. The needles are sharp. 5. The girl has a sharp needle. 6. The harbours of the city are safe. 7. The number of the harbours is great. 8. Hearing and seeing are useful (*pl.*) to animals. 9. The fruit of fig-trees is sweet. 10. The soldier kills the lion with (his) hand.

**B.**—1. Cornua tauri acuta sunt. 2. Magister cornu puero dat. 3. Genua hominibus utilia sunt. 4. Magistratus sunt legum ministri. 5. Exercitus arma magnifica habet. 6. Duces exercitūs audaces erant. 7. Rex equitatum peditatumque\* habet. 8. Voluptas sensibus grata est. 9. Oculi sunt instrumenta visūs. 10. Aures sunt instrumenta auditūs.

1. The knees of elephants are hard. 2. The horns of the stag are hard. 3. The king gives a beautiful horn to the soldier. 4. The magistrates are the guardians of the laws. 5. The leader of the cavalry is bold. 6. Greece has many harbours. 7. Every (omne) animal has senses. 8. Eyes and ears are the instruments of the senses. 9. Sharp needles are useful to women. 10. The leaders of the infantry are powerful.

\* Quæ, *quæ* (placed after the word which it unites to the preceding).

## X.—THE FIFTH OR E DECLENSION.

— The Nominative Singular of Nouns of the Fifth Declension ends in *ēs*.

	Sing.		Plur.
<i>N.V.</i>	<i>Dī-ēs, a day, or O day</i>	<i>Dī-ēs, days, or O days</i>	
<i>Acc.*</i>	<i>Dī-em, a day</i>	<i>Dī-ēs, days</i>	
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>Dī-ēi, of a day</i>	<i>Dī-ērum, of days</i>	
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>Dī-ēi, to or for a day</i>	<i>Dī-ēbūs, to or for days</i>	
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>Dī-ē, by, with, or from a day.</i>	<i>Dī-ēbūs, by, with, or from days.</i>	

NOTE.—In Nouns like *rēs*, where *ēs* is preceded by a Consonant, the *e* becomes short in Gen. and Dat. Singular: as, *rēi, spēi*.

GENDER.—All Nouns of the Fifth Declension are Feminine except *dīēs*, which is either Masculine or Feminine in the Singular, and always Masculine in the Plural; and *mēridiēs*, *midday*, which is always Masculine.

RULE 8.—When the Ablative Case indicates the place *where*, it is used with the Preposition *in, in*: as, *hostēs in planitiē erant, the enemies were in the plain*. See Rule 7, p. 13.

### EXERCISE XV.

1. Dies sunt sereni. 2. Numerus dierum serenorum parvus est. 3. Deus est dominus omnium rerum. 4. Dux magnam victoriae spem habet. 5. Fides servorum rara erat. 6. Exercitus in magna planitie erat. 7. In acie multi pedites erant. 8. Fortuna est domina rerum humanarum. 9. Facies filii pulchra erat. 10. Magna est pueri segnitie.

1. The number of days is infinite. 2. God is the creator of all things. 3. Many things are hurtful to man. 4. The mother gives many things to the girl. 5. In the line-of-battle were many horse-soldiers. 6. The cavalry was in the plain. 7. The reward was the beginning of hope. 8. The leaders have great hope of victory. 9. The fidelity of sons was rare. 10. The slothfulness of the girl is troublesome to the mother.



## XI.—SOME IRREGULAR NOUNS.

The following words are thus declined:—

Dēus, <i>m.</i> , <i>God.</i> (2 Decl.)		Dōmūs, <i>f.</i> , <i>a house.</i> (2 and 4 Decl.)	
Sing.	Plur.	Sing.	Plur.
N. V. Dēūs	Dēī, Dī, or Dī	Dōmūs	Dōmūs
Acc. Dēum	Dēōs	Dōmum	Dōmōs ( <i>rarely dōmūs</i> )
Gen. Dēī	Dēōrum, or Dēūm	Dōmūs	Dōmūum, or dōmōrum
Dat. Dēō	Dēīs, Dīs, or Dīs	Dōmūī	Dōmībūs
Abl. Dēō	Dēīs, Dīs, or Dīs	Dōmō	Dōmībūs

N.B. The form *dōmī* is used only in the sense of *at home*.

Bōs, <i>c.</i> , <i>an ox or cow.</i> (3 Decl.)		Sēnex, <i>m.</i> , <i>an old man.</i> (3 Decl.)	
Sing.	Plur.	Sing.	Plur.
N. V. Bōs	Bōvēs	Sēnex	Sēnēs
Acc. Bōvem	Bōvēs	Sēnem	Sēnēs
Gen. Bōvis	Bōvum, or bōūm	Sēnīs	Sēnum
Dat. Bōvi	Bōbūs, or bābūs	Sēnī	Sēnībūs
Abl. Bōvē	Bōbūs, or bābūs.	Sēnē	Sēnībūs

Vis, <i>f.</i> , <i>strength.</i> (3 Decl.)		Jūpītēr (= Jōv-pītēr, <i>i. e.</i> pātēr), (3 Decl.) <i>the god.</i>	
Sing.	Plur.	Sing.	Plur.
Nom. Vis	Virēs	Jūpītēr	No plural.
Acc. Vim	Virēs	Jōvem	
Gen. wanting	Virium	Jōvis	
Dat. wanting	Virībūs	Jōvi	
Abl. Vi	Virībūs	Jōvē	

Jusjūrandum, *n.*, *an oath* (properly two words, Jūs, 3 Decl. and jūrandum, 2 Decl.).

Sing.	Plural.
N. V. A. Jusjūrandum	
Gen. Jūrisjūrandī	
Dat. Jūrījūrandō	
Abl. Jūrējūrandō	

Respublica, *f.*, *a commonwealth, a republic* (properly two words, Res, 3 Decl. and publicā, 1 Decl.).

Sing.	Plural.
N. V. Respublicā	
Acc. Rēpublicam	
Gen. Rēpublicae	
Dat. Rēpublicae	
Abl. Rēpublicā	

## EXERCISE XVI.

A.—1. Dī sunt immortales. 2. Jupiter et Neptunus sunt dī Romanorum. 3. Quercus Jovi sacrae erant. 4. Dōmus urbis sunt pulchrae. 5. Divitiae magnae in domo patris sunt. 6. Divitiae ingentes in domibus incolarum sunt. 7. Canes domuum custodes sunt. 8. Homines in domibus sunt, bestiae in silvis. 9. Dis sacrum est monumentum. 10. Vis fluminis ingens est.

1. Men are mortal, the gods immortal. 2. The oak is sacred to Jupiter. 3. Thunderbolts are the arms of Jupiter. 4. Many

trees are sacred to the gods. 5. The number of the gods is immense. 6. The number of the houses is immense. 7. (There) were immense riches in the houses of the citizens. 8. The monuments are sacred to the gods. 9. Jupiter has many temples in Italy. 10. Oxen have great strength (*pl.*).

**B.**—1. Senex est debilis et aeger.\* 2. Funera senum et juvenum sunt multa. 3. Nomen Ciceronis senibus notum est. 4. Boves magnas vires habent. 5. Magna est vis conscientiae. 6. Civis jusjurandum judici dat.\* 7. In republica Romana sunt multi servi. 8. Respublica Romanorum potens erat. 9. Cornua bovis dura sunt. 10. Boves et equi in agro sunt.

1. The strength (*pl.*) of oxen is immense. 2. The king gives many oxen to the soldiers. 3. The old-men are feeble and sick. 4. The old-man gives gold and silver to the young-man. 5. The house of the old-man is full of riches. 6. Gold and silver are in the houses of the citizens. 7. In the Roman commonwealth were many brave citizens. 8. The friends of the commonwealth were few. 9. The grass is pleasing to the oxen. 10. The fields are sacred to Jupiter.

\* Jusjurandum dat, in English, *takes the oath.*

## XII.—SOME IRREGULAR ADJECTIVES.

The following words have in the Genitive Sing. *iūs* (rarely *iūs*) and in the Dative *i*:—

<i>unus, a, um,</i>	<i>one, alone.</i>
<i>solus, a, um,</i>	<i>alone.</i>
<i>totus, a, um,</i>	<i>whole.</i>
<i>ullus, a, um,</i>	<i>any.</i>
<i>nullus, a, um,</i>	<i>no, none.</i>
<i>uter, utra, utrum,</i>	<i>which of two.</i>
<i>neuter, neutra, neutrum,</i>	<i>neither.</i>

<i>alter, altera, alterum,</i>	<i>one of two ;</i>
<i>alter . . . alter,</i>	<i>the one . . .</i>
	<i>the other.</i>
<i>alius, alia, aliud,</i>	<i>one of any</i>
	<i>number ; alius . . . alius,</i>
	<i>one . . . another ; in pl. some,</i>
	<i>others.</i>

For example—

	Sing.			Plur.		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>Un-us</i>	<i>un-a</i>	<i>un-um</i>	<i>Un-i</i>	<i>un-ae</i>	<i>un-a</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>Un-um</i>	<i>un-am</i>	<i>un-um</i>	<i>Un-os</i>	<i>un-as</i>	<i>un-a</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>Un-iūs</i>			<i>Un-ōrum</i>	<i>un-ārum</i>	<i>un-ōrum</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>Un-i</i>			<i>Un-is</i>		
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>Un-o</i>	<i>un-a</i>	<i>un-o</i>	<i>Un-is</i>		

*Obs.* As to the use of the Plural of *unus*, see p. 26.

The Genitive Singular of *alter* is *alteriūs*, and of *alius* is *aliūs*.

### EXERCISE XVII.

1. Virtus sola dat veram voluptatem. 2. Cives Ciceroni uni dant honorem. 3. Utri dat (*does he give*) laudem? Neutri. 4. Alii sunt docti, alii indocti. 5. Alius (*gen.*) vires, alius (*gen.*) divitiae sunt magnae. 6. Alter est Graecus, alter Romanus. 7. Tota vita

hominis memorabilis erat. 8. Alteri (*dat.*) laudam, alteri (*dat.*) culpam dant. 9. Neutri dat totam laudem. 10. Neutra civitas habet laudem ullam.

1. He gives the whole booty to the soldiers. 2. Cicero alone was pleasing to the citizens. 3. He was troublesome to neither. 4. To which-of-the-two does he give the praise? 5. Neither of the men has any abode. 6. Virtue alone gives true honours. 7. Life is troublesome to no good man. 8. Rome alone was head of (all) cities. 9. He was unfriendly to neither. 10. The one was pleasing to the citizens, the other was troublesome.

### XIII.—COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

Adjectives have three Degrees of Comparison: Positive, Comparative, and Superlative: as,

Positive.	Comparative.	Superlative.
Altus, high.	Altior, higher.	Altissimus, { highest, most high, or very high.

The Comparative is formed by adding *ior* and the Superlative by adding *issimus* to the Positive, after taking away the termination of the Genitive Singular: as,

Nom.	Posit.	Gen.	Comp.	Sup.
Altus,		Alt-i,	high,	Alt-issimus,
Lævis,		Læv-is,	light,	Læv-issimus,
Felix,		Felic-is,	fortunate,	Felic-issimus,
Prudens,		Prudent-is,	prudent,	Prudent-issimus.

The Comparative is declined on p. 18 (*mël-ior*). The Superlative is declined like *bonus*, *bôna*, *bônum*.

EXCEPTIONS.—I. Adjectives ending in *ër* form the Superlative in *rîmus*: as,

Nom.	Posit.	Gen.	Comp.	Sup.
pulcher,		pulchr-î,	beautiful,	pulchr-rîmus.
liber,		libër-î,	free,	liber-rîmus.
acer,		âcr-is,	sharp,	âcer-rîmus.
celer,		cêlër-is,	swift,	cêlër-rîmus.

Also *vêtus* (*Gen.* *vêtër-is*), *old*, has a Superlative, *vêtër-rîmus*.

II. The following six Adjectives ending in *ilis* form their Superlative in *lîmus*: as,

Posit.	Comp.	Sup.
faciîlis,	fâcîl-îor,	fâcîl-lîmus.
difficîlis,	difficîl-îor,	difficîl-lîmus.
sîmilîs,	sîmil-îor,	sîmil-lîmus.
dissîmilîs,	dissîmil-îor,	dissîmil-lîmus.
grâcîlis,	grâcîl-îor,	grâcîl-lîmus.
hûmilîs,	hûmil-îor,	hûmil-lîmus.

III. Adjectives ending in *dīcūs*, *ficūs*, and *vōlūs*, form their Comparatives in *entiōr* and their Superlatives in *entissimūs*: as,

Posit.		Comp.	Sup.
mālēdicūs,	slanderous,	mālēdicentiōr,	mālēdicentissimūs.
bēnēficūs,	beneficent,	bēnēficentiōr,	bēnēficentissimūs.
bēnēvōlūs,	benevolent,	bēnēvōlentiōr,	bēnēvōlentissimūs.

IV. Adjectives which have a vowel before the termination *us*, usually form the Comparative by prefixing the Adverb *māgis*, *more*, and the Superlative by prefixing the Adverb *maximē*, *most*: as, *noxius*, *hurtful*; *māgis noxiūs*, *more hurtful*; *maximē noxiūs*, *most hurtful*.

#### IRREGULAR COMPARISON.

Posit.		Comp.	Sup.
bōnus,	good,	mēlior,	optimūs.
malus,	bad,	pēior,	pessimūs.
magnus,	great,	māior,	maximūs.
parvus,	small,	mīior,	mīnimūs.
multus,	much,	plūs (see below),	plūrimūs.
nēquam (not declined),	worthless,	nēquior,	nēquissimūs.
dives,	rich,	ditiōr,	dītissimūs.
sēnex,	old,	sēnior [nātū māior],	[nātū maximūs].
jūvenis,	young,	jūnior [nātū mīior],	[nātū mīnimūs].
sūperus,	upper,	sūpērior,	suprēmūs, summūs.
infērus,	lower,	infērior,	infimūs, imūs.
extērus,	outside,	extērior,	extrēmūs, extimūs.
intērus,	inside,	intērior,	intimūs.
postērus,	behind,	posterior,	postremūs, postimūs.
—	—	prior (former),	primūs (first).
—	—	prōprior (nearer),	proximūs (nearest, next).
—	—	ultērior (further),	ultimūs (furthest, last).

  

Singular.		Plural.	
Neut. only.		Masc. and Fem.	Neut.
Nom. } Plūs		Plūrēs	Plūrē
& Acc. }			
Gen. Plūris		Plūrium	Plūrium
Dat. Plūri		Plūribūs	Plūribūs
Abl. Plūrē		Plūribūs	Plūribūs

RULE 9.—The English word *than* after the Comparative is translated by the Latin *quam* (indeclinable).

#### EXERCISE XVIII.

A.—1. Aestate dies longiores sunt quam noctes. 2. Tempore hiberno dies sunt breviores. 3. Lepores timidiore sunt quam canes. 4. Noctes brevissimae sunt aestate. 5. Roma clarissima

urbs Italiae erat. 6. Ferrum utilissimum est metallorum. 7. Radices arborum longissimae sunt. 8. Nihil est amabilius quam virtus. 9. Lux est velocior quam sonitus. 10. Nihil in amicitia perniciosius est quam adulatio.

1. Men are stronger than women. 2. Iron is more useful than gold. 3. The hare is a very timid animal. 4. Nothing is more excellent than virtue. 5. The roots of oak-trees are very strong and very long. 6. The Rhine is a very rapid river. 7. The eyes of the eagle are very keen. 8. The days are calmer in summer than in winter. 9. In winter time the light is feebler than in summer. 10. Nothing is more destructive to friendship than flattery.

**B.**—1. In bello miserrimi sunt agricolae. 2. Filiae matri sunt simillimae. 3. Itinera antiquis temporibus difficillima erant. 4. Pulcherrima est imago regis. 5. Facillimi erant labores militum. 6. Pulcherrima animalia non semper sunt utilissima. 7. Veterrima vina non semper sunt dulcissima. 8. Vultures acerrimos habent oculos. 9. Pulcherrimi sunt colores florum. 10. In Helvetia sunt asperissimi montes.

1. The scent of flowers is very sweet. 2. The work is very difficult. 3. The journey was very long and very rough. 4. The eyes of the vulture are very keen. 5. Helvetia is a very rugged land. 6. The swiftest animals are not always the strongest. 7. The legs of the stag are very slender. 8. The son was very like (his) father (*dat.*). 9. War is the cause of many crimes. 10. In summer the sun is more powerful than in winter.

**C.**—1. Nihil est melius quam sapientia. 2. Sol major est quam terra. 3. Luna minor est quam terra. 4. Plurima et maxima animalia sunt in mari. 5. Optimae erant leges Romanae. 6. Pessimae sunt consuetudines discipulorum. 7. Melior est certa pax quam sperata victoria. 8. Simulatio amoris est pejor quam odium. 9. Cato optimus erat suae aetatis orator. 10. Aquilae vis maxima est.

1. Hatred is better than flattery. 2. Very many men give the greatest praise to Cato. 3. The best orator is not always the best citizen. 4. The most wicked men slay the most excellent (men). 5. No state was ever more renowned than Rome. 6. The best men are not always the most powerful. 7. They give the honour to the most excellent citizens. 8. Very many islands are larger than Sicily. 9. Sicily is a smaller island than Britain. 10. The Greeks were more learned than the Romans.

#### XIV.—THE NUMERALS.

*Cardinal Numerals* denote number simply or absolutely : as, *ūnūs, one* ; *dūō, two* ; *trēs, three*.

The declension of *ūnūs* is given on p. 23.

*Obs.* *Ūnūs* is used in the Plural with Plural Nouns which have a singular meaning : as, *ūnā castrā, one camp* ; *ūnae aedēs, one house* ; *ūnae litterae, one letter*.

ARABIC SYMBOLS.	ROMAN SYMBOLS.	CARDINALS.	ORDINALS.
1	I	ūnus	primus.
2	II	duō	secundus or altēr.
3	III	trēs	tertius.
4	IV	quattuor (quattuor)	quartus.
5	V	quinquē	quintus.
6	VI	sex	sextus.
7	VII	septem	septimus.
8	VIII	octō	octavus.
9	IX	novem	nonus.
10	X	decem	decimus.
11	XI	undecim	undecimus.
12	XII	duodecim	duodecimus.
13	XIII	tredecim	tertius decimus.
14	XIV	quattuordecim	quartus decimus.
15	XV	quindecim	quintus decimus.
16	XVI	sedecim	sextus decimus.
17	XVII	septemdecim	septimus decimus.
18	XVIII	duodeviginti	duodevicesimus.
19	XIX	undeviginti	undevicesimus.
20	XX	viginti	vicesimus.
21	XXI	ūnus et viginti or viginti ūnus	primus et vicesimus, or vicesimus primus.
22	XXII	duō et viginti or viginti duō	alter et vicesimus, or vicesimus alter.
23	XXIII	trēs et viginti or viginti trēs	tertius et vicesimus, or vicesimus tertius.
28	XXVIII	duodetriginta	duodetrigesimus.
29	XXIX	undetriginta	undetrigesimus.
30	XXX	triginta	trigesimus.
40	XLI	quadraginta	quadragésimus.
50	L	quinguaaginta	quingua-gésimus.
60	LX	sexaginta	sexagésimus.
70	LXX	septuaginta	septuagésimus.
80	LXXX	octoginta	octogésimus.
90	XC	nonaginta	nonagésimus.
100	C	centum	centésimus.
200	CC	ducenti, ac, &	ducentésimus.
300	CCC	trecenti, ac, &	trecentésimus.
400	CCCC	quadringenti, ac, &	quadringentésimus.
500	D or Iꝰ	quingenti, ac, &	quingentésimus.
600	DC	sexcenti, ac, &	sexcentésimus.
700	DCC	septingenti, ac, &	septingentésimus.
800	DCCC	octingenti, ac, &	octingentésimus.
900	DCCCC	nongenti, ac, &	nongentésimus.
1,000	M or CIꝰ	millē	millésimus.
2,000	MM	duō millia	bis millésimus.
100,000	CCCLXXX	centum millia	centies millésimus.

Dŭō, *two*, trēs, *three*, and millĭā, *thousands*, are declined as follows :—

	M.	F.	N.	M. and F.	N.	N.
Nom.	Dŭ-ō	dŭ-ae	dŭ-ō	Trēs	triā	Millĭā
Acc.	Dŭ-ōs or dŭ-ō	dŭ-as	dŭ-ō	Trēs or trīs	triā	Millĭā
Gen.	Dŭ-ōrum	dŭ-ārum	dŭ-ōrum	Trium	triūm	Millĭum
Dat.	Dŭ-ōbŭs	dŭ-ābŭs	dŭ-ōbŭs	Tribŭs	tribŭs	Millĭbŭs
Abl.	Dŭ-ōbŭs	dŭ-ābŭs	dŭ-ōbŭs	Tribŭs	tribŭs	Millĭbŭs

Obs. Ambō, *both*, is declined like dŭō.

Millē, *a thousand*, in the singular, is an indeclinable adjective; but millĭā, *thousands*, in the plural, is a Substantive: as, millē hōmīnēs, *a thousand men*; but dŭō millĭā hōmīnum, *two thousand men*, literally, *two thousands of men*.

The Cardinal Numerals from quattuor, *four*, to centum, *a hundred*, are indeclinable.

Dūcentī, *ae*, ſ, *two hundred*, and the following hundreds, are declined regularly.

Ordinal Numerals denote numbers regarded as forming parts of a series: as, primŭs, *first*; ſecundŭs, or altēr, *second*. They are declined regularly as adjectives.

#### EXERCISE XIX.

1. Homo habet unum ōs, duas aures, duos oculos. 2. Magister puero tres libros dat. 3. Sunt (there are) sedecim mala, viginti pruna, undeviginti pira, duodeviginti cera. 4. In capite hominis sexaginta tria sunt ossa. 5. In exercitu Alexandri Magni duodecim millia Macedonum erant. 6. Xerxes habet classem mille ducentarum navium. 7. In legione Romana erant cohortes decem, manipuli triginta, centuriae sexaginta. 8. Septem erant reges Romani; primus erat Romulus, secundus Numa Pompilius, tertius Tullus Hostilius, quartus Ancus Martius, quintus Tarquinius Priscus, sextus Servius Tullius, septimus Tarquinius Superbus. 9. Augustus octavus est anni mensis. 10. Manipulus erat trigesima pars legionis Romanae.

1. The wise (men) of Greece were seven. 2. The first king of Rome was warlike. 3. They slay the tenth part of the men. 4. In a Roman legion (there) were ten cohorts, thirty maniples, sixty centuries. 5. They slay ten thousand men (*gen.*) in the war. 6. The second king of Rome was just and mild. 7. The seventh king of Rome was unjust and wicked. 8. In the first month of the year (there) are thirty-one days. 9. Rome has two consuls. 10. A Roman legion has five thousand foot-soldiers (*gen.*), three hundred horse-soldiers.\*

\* The number of soldiers in a legion varied considerably at different periods.

XV.—THE VERB SUM, *I am.*

Sum, fūl, fūtūrūs, esse, —to be. Stem: es-, fu-.

VERB FINITE.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

1. PRESENT TENSE.

<i>Sing.</i> Sum,	<i>I am</i>	<i>Plur.</i> Sūmūs,	<i>We are</i>
Es,	<i>thou art</i>	Estis,	<i>ye are.</i>
Est,	<i>he is.</i>	Sunt,	<i>they are.</i>

2. IMPERFECT TENSE.

<i>Sing.</i> Ēram,	<i>I was</i>	<i>Plur.</i> Ērāmūs,	<i>We were</i>
Ērās,	<i>thou wast</i>	Ērātīs,	<i>ye were</i>
Ērāt,	<i>he was.</i>	Ērant,	<i>they were.</i>

3. FUTURE-SIMPLE TENSE.

<i>Sing.</i> Ēro,	<i>I shall be</i>	<i>Plur.</i> Ērimūs,	<i>We shall be</i>
Ēris,	<i>thou wilt be</i>	Ēritīs,	<i>ye will be</i>
Ērit,	<i>he will be.</i>	Ērunt,	<i>they will be.</i>

4. PERFECT TENSE.

<i>Sing.</i> Fui,	<i>I have been, or</i>	<i>Plur.</i> Fuimūs,	<i>We have been, or</i>
	<i>I was</i>		<i>we were</i>
Fuistī,	<i>thou hast been, or</i>	Fuistīs,	<i>ye have been, or</i>
	<i>thou wast</i>		<i>ye were</i>
Fuit,	<i>he has been, or</i>	Fuērunt,	<i>they have been, or</i>
	<i>he was.</i>	or fuērē	<i>they were.</i>

5. PLUPERFECT TENSE.

<i>Sing.</i> Fuēram,	<i>I had been</i>	<i>Plur.</i> Fuērāmūs,	<i>We had been</i>
Fuērās,	<i>thou hadst been</i>	Fuērātīs,	<i>ye had been</i>
Fuērāt,	<i>he had been.</i>	Fuērant,	<i>they had been.</i>

6. FUTURE-PERFECT TENSE.

<i>Sing.</i> Fuēro,	<i>I shall have been</i>	<i>Plur.</i> Fuērimūs,	<i>We shall have been</i>
Fuērīs,	<i>thou wilt have been</i>	Fuēritīs,	<i>ye will have been</i>
Fuērīt,	<i>he will have been.</i>	Fuērint,	<i>they will have been.</i>

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

1. PRESENT TENSE.

<i>Sing.</i> Es,	<i>Be thou.</i>	<i>Plur.</i> Estē,	<i>Be ye.</i>
------------------	-----------------	--------------------	---------------

2. FUTURE TENSE.

<i>Sing.</i> Estō,	<i>Thou shalt or must</i>	<i>Plur.</i> Estōtē,	<i>Ye shall or must</i>
	<i>be</i>		<i>be</i>
Estō,	<i>he shall or must be.</i>	Suntō,	<i>they shall or must</i>
			<i>be.</i>



## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## 1. PRESENT TENSE.

<i>Sing.</i> <b>Sim,</b>	<i>I may be</i>	<i>Plur.</i> <b>Simūs,</b>	<i>We may be</i>
<b>Sis,</b>	<i>thou mayst be</i>	<b>Sitis,</b>	<i>ye may be</i>
<b>Sit,</b>	<i>he may be.</i>	<b>Sint,</b>	<i>they may be.</i>

*Obs.* The first and third Persons singular and plural of the Present Subjunctive are often used as Imperatives; as, *sint cives justī*, let the citizens be just.

## 2. IMPERFECT TENSE.

<i>Sing.</i> <b>Essem</b> or <b>fōrem,</b>	<i>I might be</i>	<i>Plur.</i> <b>Essēmūs</b> or <b>fōrēmūs,</b>	<i>We might be</i>
<b>Essēs</b> or <b>fōrēs,</b>	<i>thou mightst be</i>	<b>Essētis</b> or <b>fōrētis,</b>	<i>ye might be</i>
<b>Essēt</b> or <b>fōrēt,</b>	<i>he might be.</i>	<b>Essent</b> or <b>fōrent,</b>	<i>they might be.</i>

## 3. PERFECT TENSE.

<i>Sing.</i> <b>Fuērim,</b>	<i>I may have been</i>	<i>Plur.</i> <b>Fuērimūs,</b>	<i>We may have been</i>
<b>Fuēris,</b>	<i>thou mayst have been</i>	<b>Fuēritis,</b>	<i>ye may have been</i>
<b>Fuērit,</b>	<i>he may have been.</i>	<b>Fuērint,</b>	<i>they may have been.</i>

## 4. PLUPERFECT TENSE.

<i>Sing.</i> <b>Fuissem,</b>	<i>I should</i>	<i>Plur.</i> <b>Fuissēmūs,</b>	<i>We should</i>
<b>Fuissēs,</b>	<i>thou wouldst</i>	<b>Fuissētis,</b>	<i>ye would</i>
<b>Fuissēt,</b>	<i>he would</i>	<b>Fuissent,</b>	<i>they would</i>

## VERB INFINITIVE.

INFINITIVE PRESENT, and IMPERFECT,	<b>Essē,</b>	<i>to be.</i>
INFINITIVE PERFECT, and PLUPERFECT,	<b>Fuissē,</b>	<i>to have been.</i>
INFINITIVE FUTURE, PARTICIPLE FUTURE,	<b>Fūtūrūs essē,</b> or <b>fōrē,</b>	<i>to be about to be.</i>
	<b>Fūtūrūs, -a, -um,</b>	<i>about to be.</i>

NOTE.—A vowel before another vowel is usually short, and will therefore in future not always be marked.

*Obs.* **Fūtūrūs** may be conjugated with all the tenses of *sum*: as, *fūtūrūs sum, I am about to be*; *fūtūrūs eram, I was about to be*, &c.

## EXERCISE XX.

*The Verb Sum.—Indicative Mood.*

**A.**—1. *Sum laetus.* 2. *Es tristis.* 3. *Non diligens fuisti, Tite.* 4. *Probi filii gaudium patris erunt.* 5. *Opera tua multis hominibus erunt utilia.* 6. *Dux vester ero: victores erimus.* 7. *Si contenti eritis, pauperes non eritis.* 8. *Multi erunt pauperes, qui (who) divites fuerant.* 9. *Cives urbis liberae sumus.* 10. *Custodes miseræ puellæ fuistis.*

1. We are joyful. 2. Ye are sad. 3. I am a Roman citizen.

4. The contented (*pl.*) are always joyful; the rich (*pl.*) are often sad. 5. If ye are good, ye are rich. 6. If thou wilt be diligent, thou wilt be learned. 7. The wicked man is not free. 8. They had been unlearned, now they are learned. 9. Ye will be rich and free. 10. The Roman state was renowned.

*Imperative Mood.*

**B.**—1. *Judex custos severus juris esto.* 2. *Probi este, pueri, et felices eritis.* 3. *Discipuli sunto attenti.* 4. *Judices justi sunto.* 5. *Reipublicae salus civibus cara esto.* 6. *Amici fideles sunto.* 7. *Reges patres patriae sunto.* 8. *Attenti este, discipuli.* 9. *Contenti estote sorte vestra.* 10. *Praeceptorum memores este.*

1. Be diligent, scholars. 2. Praise shall be the reward of diligence. 3. Be faithful, friends! 4. The judge must be just. 5. They are contented, they shall be rich. 6. There must be no cause of enmity; we are faithful friends. 7. Be just, be upright; thou wilt be successful. 8. Be brave, soldiers! 9. Let the citizens be (sint) free, let them be happy! 10. The city shall be the booty of the soldiers.

XVI.—COMPOUNDS OF SUM.

Absum,	<i>I am absent.</i>
Adsum,	<i>I am present, stand by, side with.</i>
Dēsum,	<i>I am wanting.</i>
Insum,	<i>I am in.</i>
Intersum,	<i>I am among.</i>
Obsum,	<i>I am in the way, am hurtful to, injure.</i>
Praesum,	<i>I am before, am at the head of.</i>
Prōsum,	<i>I am serviceable, do good to.</i>
Subsum,	<i>I am under, or amongst.</i>
Sūpersum,	<i>I remain over, survive.</i>

All these compounds of Sum are followed by the Dative Case. They are conjugated like Sum, but Prōsum takes *ut* before *e*: as,

INDICATIVE.

*Present.*

<i>Sing.</i>	Prō-sum	<i>Plur.</i>	Prō-sūmūs
	Prōd-ēs		Prōd-estīs
	Prōd-est.		Prō-sunt.
	<i>Imperfect.</i>		<i>Future.</i>
	Prōd-eram,		Prōd-ēro,
	&c.		&c.

INFINITIVE—*Present.*

Prōd-esso.

## EXERCISE XXI.

1. Bonis hominibus non deerunt amici. 2. Cicero reipublicae profuit. 3. Legionibus Romanis duces praeferunt fortes. 4. Alexander Magnus multis proeliis interfuit. 5. Equitum multitudo exercitui nostro proderit. 6. Miles fortis omnibus aderit periculis. 7. Variarum cupiditates animo insunt. 8. Frigus multis plantis non prodest. 9. Militibus deest animus. 10. Auxilium meum reipublicae non profuit.

1. To good men friends are not wanting. 2. He was not serviceable to the commonwealth. 3. A good citizen sides with his native country in the time of danger. 4. Indolence is hurtful to all men. 5. Alexander the Great survived many battles. 6. The general was amongst his soldiers in the battle. 7. Light is serviceable to all animals. 8. The general is-at-the-head-of the army. 9. Anger has been hurtful to many. 10. The soul survives the body.

## XVII.—THE PRONOUNS.

## I. PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

1. *Pronoun of the First Person.*

	Sing.		Plur.
Nom.	Egō, I	Nōs,	we
Acc.	Mē, me	Vōs,	us
Gen.	Mēi, of me	Nostri or nostrum,	of us
Dat.	Mihī, to or for me	Nōbīs,	to or for us
Abl.	Mē, by, with, or from me.	Nōbīs,	by, with, or from us

2. *Pronoun of the Second Person.*

	Sing.		Plur.
N. V.	Tū, thou	Vōs,	ye
Acc.	Tē, thee	Vōs,	you
Gen.	Tui, of thee	Vestri or vestrum,	of you
Dat.	Tibi, to or for thee	Vōbīs,	to or for you
Abl.	Tē, by, with, or from thee.	Vōbīs,	by, with, or from you.

3. *Pronoun of the Third Person.*

For the Pronoun of the Third Person, *he, she, it, is, eā, id* is usually employed. (See p. 35.)

## II. REFLECTIVE PRONOUN OF THE THIRD PERSON.

The Reflective Pronoun refers to the Subject of the sentence, and cannot therefore have a Nominative case.

	Sing. and Plur.
Acc. Sē or sēsē,	himself, herself, itself, or themselves.
Gen. Sui,	of himself, herself, itself, or themselves.
Dat. Sibi,	to or for himself, herself, itself, or themselves.
Abl. Sē or sēsē,	by or from himself, herself, itself, or themselves.

There are no distinct reflective forms in the 1st and 2nd persons; the different cases of *ego* and *tu* being used reflectively: as *mei*, of myself; *tibi*, to thyself, etc.

## III. POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS.

These are formed from the First and Second Personal and the Third Reflective Pronouns, and are declined as adjectives:

M.	F.	N.	
Mēus,	mēa,	mēum,	my or mine.
Tūus,	tūa,	tūum,	thy or thine.
Noster,	nostra,	nostrum,	our, ours.
Vester,	vestra,	vestrum,	your, yours.
Sūs,	sūa,	sūum,	his, her, its, their

## EXERCISE XXII.

1. Ego sum lætus, tu es tristis. 2. Pater mihi librum dat utilem. 3. In me et in te et in nobis omnibus est animus immortalis. 4. Patria mihi cariōr est quam vita. 5. Omnia tua consilia nobis nota sunt. 6. Parentes vobis cari sunt. 7. Memores sumus tui. 8. Amicus memor est vestri. 9. Memoria vestri nobis grata est. 10. Mihi mea vita, tibi tua (vita) cara est.

1. Thy father is dear to thee; mine to me. 2. Wisdom and counsel are wanting to you, citizens! 3. In thee is all our hope and safety. 4. Thy native-land must be ever most dear to thee. 5. Thine indolence is-in-the-way, Titus! 6. A true friend will be with thee in the time of danger. 7. The memory of our works survives us. 8. In neither battle was the general amongst his soldiers. 9. He was serviceable to his friends; he was hurtful to his enemies. 10. To us the victory is joyful, to you it is most-sad.

## IV. DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

1. Hic, haec, hoc, *this (near me)* ; pl. *these*.

	Sing.				Plur.		
	M.	F.	N.		M.	F.	N.
Nom.	Hic	haec	hoc		Hī	hae	haec
Acc.	Hunc	hanc	hoc		Hōs	hās	haec
Gen.	Hūjus				Hōrum	hārum	hōrum
Dat.	Huic				Hīs		
Abl.	Hōc	hāc	hōc		Hīs		

\* 2. Istē, istā, istū, *that (near you), that of yours* ; pl. *those*

Nom.	Istē	istā	istū	Istī	istae	istā
Acc.	Istum	istam	istū	Istōs	istās	istā
Gen.	Istius			Istōrum	istārum	istōrum
Dat.	Isti			Istis		
Abl.	Istō	istā	istō	Istīs		

3. Illē, illā, illū, *that, that yonder* ; pl. *those*.

Nom.	Ill <sup>x</sup>	illā	illū	Illī	illae	illā
Acc.	Illum	illam	illū	Illōs	illās	illā
Gen.	Illius			Illōrum	illārum	illōrum
Dat.	Illī			Illīs		
Abl.	Illō	illā	illō	Illīs		

## EXERCISE XXIII.

1. Haec carmina suavissima sunt. 2. Hi montes altissimi sunt.  
 3. Liberi agricolarum illorum diligentes fuerunt. 4. Dat tibi illud  
 carmen pulcherrimum. 5. Hic puer industrius est, ille iners. 6. De-  
 mosthenes et Cicero clarissimi oratores fuerunt; ille erat Graecus,  
 hic autem Romanus. 7. Iste amicus vir est optimus. 8. Ista  
 auctoritas est maxima. 9. Memoria harum rerum nobis jucun-  
 dissima est. 10. Nomen illius poetae clarissimum est.

1. These mountains are very high and very rugged. 2. That  
 indolence (of yours) is hurtful to you (*sing.*), Titus. 3. The im-  
 mortal soul will survive this mortal body. 4. That one man has  
 always been hurtful to the commonwealth. 5. The memory of  
 that one day was to Cicero most delightful. 6. That song (of  
 yours) is to me most pleasant. 7. This my son is careful and in-  
 dustrious. 8. This life (of ours) is short; but that-one (*illa*) is  
 immortal. 9. Those hands (of yours) are always busy. 10. These  
 citizens are serviceable to the commonwealth; those are hurtful.

# V. DETERMINATE, RELATIVE, AND INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS.

1. *Is, eā, id, he, she, it, that*, referring to the former part of a sentence.

	Sing.				Plur.		
	M.	F.	N.		M.	F.	N.
Nom.	Is	eā	id		II	eae	eā
Acc.	Eum	eam	id		Eōs	eās	eā
Gen.	Ejus				Eōrum	eārum	eōrum
Dat.	Ei				Iis or eis		
Abl.	Eō	eā	eō		Iis or eis		

2. *Īdem, eādem, idem, the same.*

Nom.	Īdem	eādem	idem		Īdem	eādem	eādem
Acc.	Eundem	eandem	idem		Eōdem	eādem	eādem
Gen.	Ejusdem				Eōrundem	eārundem	eōrundem
Dat.	Eidem				Iidem or eisdem		
Abl.	Eōdem	eādem	eōdem		Iidem or eisdem		

3. *Ipsē, ipsā, ipsum, self, himself, herself, itself.*

Nom.	Ipsē	ipsā	ipsum		Ipsī	ipsae	ipsā
Acc.	Ipsum	ipsam	ipsum		Ipsōs	ipsās	ipsā
Gen.	Ipsius				Ipsōrum	ipsārum	ipsōrum
Dat.	Ipsī				Ipsīs		
Abl.	Ipsō	ipsā	ipsō		Ipsīs		

4. *Relative—Quī, quae, quōd, who or which.*

Nom.	Quī	quae	quōd		Quī	quae	quae
Acc.	Quem	quam	quōd		Quōs	quās	quae
Gen.	Cujus				Quōrum	quārum	quōrum
Dat.	Cui				Quībus or quīs		
Abl.	Quō	quā	quō		Quībus or quīs		

5. *Interrogative—Quīs or quī, quae, quīd or quōd, who ? which ? what ?*

Nom.	Quīs or quī	quae	quīd or quōd		Quī	quae	quae
Acc.	Quem	quam	quīd or quōd		Quōs	quās	quae
Gen.	Cujus				Quōrum	quārum	quōrum
Dat.	Cui				Quībus or quīs		
Abl.	Quō	quā	quō		Quībus or quīs		

The forms *quis* and *quīd* are used by themselves, without a Noun :  
as, *Quīs es ? who art thou ? Quīd est ? what is it ?* The  
forms *quī* and *quōd* are used interrogatively with a Noun : as,  
*Quī hōmo es ? what man art thou ? Quōd mārē, what sea ?*

RULE 10.—The Relative Pronoun agrees with the Antecedent in Gender, Number, and Person, but not in Case: as, *Felix est rex quem omnēs civēs laudant, Fortunate is the king whom all citizens praise.*

*Lēgit, (he, she, it) reads.*

*Lēgunt, (they) read.*

# EXERCISE XXIV.

**A.**—1. Amicum fidum habet; ei addictus est. 2. Sallustius est elegantissimus scriptor; ille ejus libros legit. 3. Qui amico in periculis adest, is verus amicus est.\* 4. Is sunt cives boni, qui reipublicae prosunt. 5. Ipse labor nobis jucundus est. 6. Fons omnium voluptatum in nobis ipsis est. 7. Melior pars tui ipsius immortalis est. 8. Non minor pugna erat cum mulieribus Cimbrorum quam cum Cimbris ipsis. 9. Idem dies erit initium vitae aeternae. 10. Non omnibus hominibus eadem prosunt.

\* In translating this sentence, begin with *is verus amicus est*.

1. He has a faithful friend; he will never injure him. 2. My brother himself is a most elegant writer. 3. (He) who gives honours to the, bad is hurtful to the state.\* 4. The wives of the Cimbrians were themselves brave. 5. The same (things) injure some, do good to others. 6. (He) who is hurtful to the commonwealth is hurtful to himself.\* 7. The same (things) are not pleasing to all (men). 8. Demosthenes himself was not always pleasing to his (fellow) citizens. 9. Cicero is a faithful friend; I am devoted to him. 10. Cicero is a most elegant writer; they read his books.

\* In sentences 3 and 6 begin with *qui*, and afterwards use *is*: see Latin sentences No. 3.

**B.**—1. Quis habet exercitum? Quis est dux? 2. Cujus est equus? Cujus sunt arma? 3. Quae civitas habet optimas leges? 4. Quod animal est maximum et validissimum? 5. Quorum animalium sunt vires maximae? 6. Qui color pulcherrimus est? 7. Qui orator optimus et dulcissimus est? 8. Quorum arma sunt optima? 9. Cui dat (*does he give*) coronam? 10. Quod tempus felicius est quam praesens?

1. Which constellation is the most beautiful? 2. Which poet is the sweetest? 3. Who is he? what has he? 4. Who gives the book to thee? 5. To whom does he give the greatest praise? 6. Whose (*gen. sing.*) is the victory? Whose (*gen. pl.*) is the booty? 7. Which tax is the greatest? 8. Which king has the greatest taxes? 9. What animal is more sagacious (prudent) than the elephant? 10. What animal is more rapacious than the lion?

## XVIII.—THE VERB.

Latin Verbs have two Voices :

I. ACTIVE.

II. PASSIVE.

Verbs have two Parts :

I. FINITE.

II. INFINITE.

I. THE VERB FINITE has Three Moods :

(1.) The INDICATIVE MOOD.

(2.) The SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

(3.) The IMPERATIVE MOOD.

II. THE VERB INFINITE consists of Verbal Nouns and Adjectives :

(1.) The INFINITIVE, which is a Verbal Noun.

(2.) The PARTICIPLE, which is a Verbal Adjective.

(3.) The SUPINE, } which are Verbal Nouns.

(4.) The GERUND, }

Verbs have SIX TENSES :

I. Three expressing unfinished action :

Present.

Imperfect.

Future Simple.

II. Three expressing finished action :

Perfect.

Pluperfect.

Future Perfect.

*Obs* The Perfect has the meaning of both a Present-Perfect and of an Indefinite-Past : thus, *amāvi* signifies, *I have loved*, and *I loved*.

Verbs have two NUMBERS, Singular and Plural, and three PERSONS in each number.

Latin Verbs are arranged in four Classes, called CONJUGATIONS, distinguished by the final letter of the Stem, which is seen in the Infinitive Active. The Stem of

Infinitive.

I. The First Conjugation ends in **A** : .. .. as, *amā-rē*, to love.

II. The Second " " **E** : .. .. as, *mōnē-rē*, to advise.

III. The Third " " { **a Consonant** } as, { *rēg-ērē*, to rule.

or **U** : } as, { *lu-ērē*, to pay.

IV. The Fourth " " **I** : .. .. as, *audī-rē*, to hear.

The Present Indicative, the Perfect Indicative, the Present Infinitive, and the Supine are called the *Principal Parts* of the Verb ; because it is necessary to know these in order to conjugate a Verb.



## XIX.—FIRST OR A CONJUGATION.—ACTIVE VOICE.

Āmo, āmāvi, āmātum, āmārē, —to love. Stem : āma-.

## VERB FINITE.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## 1. PRESENT TENSE.

<i>Sing.</i> Āmo, " I love, or am loving	<i>Plur.</i> Ām-āmūs, We love, or are loving
Ām-ās, " thou lovest, or art loving	Ām-ātīs, ye love, or are loving
Ām-āt, he loves, or is loving,	Ām-ant, they love, or are loving.

## 2. IMPERFECT TENSE.

<i>Sing.</i> Ām-ābam, I was loving	<i>Plur.</i> Ām-ābāmūs, We were loving
Ām-ābās, thou wast loving	Ām-ābātīs, ye were loving
Ām-ābāt, he was loving.	Ām-ābant, they were loving.

## 3. FUTURE-SIMPLE TENSE.

<i>Sing.</i> Ām-ābo, I shall love	<i>Plur.</i> Ām-ābīmūs, We shall love
Ām-ābīs, thou wilt love	Ām-ābītīs, ye will love
Ām-ābīt, he will love.	Ām-ābunt, they will love.

## 4. PERFECT TENSE.

<i>Sing.</i> Ām-āvi, I have loved, or I loved	<i>Plur.</i> Ām-āvimūs, We have loved, or we loved
Ām-āvistī, thou hast loved, or thou lovedst	Ām-āvistīs, ye have loved, or ye loved
Ām-āvīt, he has loved, or he loved.	Ām-āverunt, } they have loved, or they loved.
	or ām-āvērē }

## 5. PLUPERFECT TENSE.

<i>Sing.</i> Ām-āvēram, I had loved	<i>Plur.</i> Ām-āvērāmūs, We had loved
Ām-āvērās, thou hadst loved	Ām-āvērātīs, ye had loved
Ām-āvērāt, he had loved.	Ām-āvērant, they had loved.

## 6. FUTURE-PERFECT TENSE.

<i>Sing.</i> Ām-āvēro, I shall have	<i>Plur.</i> Ām-āvērimūs, We shall have
Ām-āvērīs, thou wilt have	Ām-āvērītīs, ye will have
Ām-āvērīt, he will have.	Ām-āvērint, they will have.

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT TENSE.

<i>Sing.</i> Ām-ā, Love thou.	<i>Plur.</i> Ām-ātē, Love ye.
-------------------------------	-------------------------------

## FUTURE TENSE.

<i>Sing.</i> Ām-āto, Thou shalt or must love	<i>Plur.</i> Ām-ātōtē, Ye shall or must love
Ām-āto, he shall or must love.	Ām-anto, they shall or must love.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.\*

## 1. PRESENT TENSE.

<i>Sing.</i>	<b>Ām-em,</b>	<i>I may love</i>	<i>Plur.</i>	<b>Ām-ēmūs,</b>	<i>We may love</i>
	<b>Ām-ēs,</b>	<i>thou mayst love</i>		<b>Ām-ētis,</b>	<i>ye may love</i>
	<b>Ām-ēt,</b>	<i>he may love.</i>		<b>Ām-ent,</b>	<i>they may love.</i>

## 2. IMPERFECT TENSE.

<i>ing.</i>	<b>Ām-ārem,</b>	<i>I might love</i>	<i>Plur.</i>	<b>Ām-ārēmūs,</b>	<i>We might love</i>
	<b>Ām-ārēs,</b>	<i>thou mightst love</i>		<b>Ām-ārētis,</b>	<i>ye might love</i>
	<b>Ām-ārēt,</b>	<i>he might love.</i>		<b>Ām-ārent,</b>	<i>they might love.</i>

## 3. PERFECT TENSE.

<i>S.</i>	<b>Ām-āverim,</b>	<i>I may</i>	<i>P.</i>	<b>Ām-āverimūs,</b>	<i>We may</i>
	<b>Ām-āveris,</b>	<i>thou mayst</i>		<b>Ām-āverētis,</b>	<i>ye may</i>
	<b>Ām-āverit,</b>	<i>he may</i>		<b>Ām-āverint,</b>	<i>they may</i>

## 4. PLUPERFECT TENSE.

<i>S.</i>	<b>Ām-āvissem,</b>	<i>I should</i>	<i>P.</i>	<b>Ām-āvissemūs,</b>	<i>We should</i>
	<b>Ām-āvissēs,</b>	<i>thou wouldst</i>		<b>Ām-āvissētis,</b>	<i>ye would</i>
	<b>Ām-āvissēt,</b>	<i>he would</i>		<b>Ām-āvissent,</b>	<i>they would</i>

\* The 1st and 3rd Persons of the Present Subjunctive are often used with a kind of Imperative sense: *āmem*, let me love; *āmēt*, let him love; *āmēmūs*, let us love. Concerning the translation of the Subjunctive Mood in general, see p. 47.

## VERB INFINITIVE.

## INFINITIVES.

PRES. and	}	Ām-ārē,	to love.
IMP.			
PERF. and	}	Ām-āvissē,	{ to have loved.
PLUP.			
FUTURE.	}	Ām-ātūrūs essē.	{ to be about to love.

## GERUND.

<i>Gen.</i>	<b>Ām-andī,</b>	<i>of loving</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<b>Ām-andō,</b>	<i>for loving</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<b>Ām-andum,</b>	<i>loving</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<b>Ām-andō,</b>	<i>by loving.</i>

## SUPINES.

<b>Ām-ātum,</b>	<i>to love.</i>
<b>Ām-ātū,</b>	<i>in loving, or to be loved.</i>

## PARTICIPLES.

<i>PRESENT.</i>	<b>Ām-ans, -antis,</b>	<i>loving.</i>
<i>FUTURE.</i>	<b>Ām-ātūrūs (ā, um),</b>	<i>about to love.</i>

*Obs.* **Āmātūrūs** may be conjugated with all the tenses of *sum*: *as*, *āmātūrūs sum*, *I am about to love*; *āmātūrūs eram*, *I was about to love*, &c. This is called the *Active Periphrastis Conjugation*.

*NOTE.*—In all the Perfect Tenses *vi* and *ve* may be omitted before *s* and *r*: *as*,

<i>āmāvistī</i>	<i>becomes</i>	<i>āmastī</i>	<i>āmāvēro</i>	<i>becomes</i>	<i>āmūro</i>
<i>āmāvistis</i>		<i>āmastis</i>	<i>āmāvēram</i>		<i>āmāram</i>
<i>āmāvērunt</i>		<i>āmārunt</i>	<i>āmāvērim</i>		<i>āmārim</i>
<i>but āmāvērē</i>	<i>does not become</i>	<i>āmāvērem</i>			<i>āmāsem</i>
<i>āmārē,</i>	<i>which would be con-</i>	<i>āmāvissē</i>			<i>āmāssē</i>
<i>founded with the Present Infin.</i>					

## XX.—SECOND OR E CONJUGATION.—ACTIVE VOICE.

Mōneo, mōnuī, mōnītum, mōnērē,—to advise. Stem: mōne-.

## VERB FINITE.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## 1. PRESENT TENSE.

S. Mōn-eo,	<i>I advise, or am advising</i>	P. Mōn-ēmūs,	<i>We advise, or are advising</i>
Mōn-ēs,	<i>thou advisest, or art advising</i>	Mōn-ētīs,	<i>ye advise, or are advising</i>
Mōn-ēt,	<i>he advises, or is advising.</i>	Mōn-ent,	<i>they advise, or are advising.</i>

## 2. IMPERFECT TENSE.

S. Mōn-ēbam,	<i>I was advising</i>	P. Mōn-ēbāmūs,	<i>We were advising</i>
Mōn-ēbās,	<i>thou wast advising</i>	Mōn-ēbātīs,	<i>ye were advising</i>
Mōn-ēbāt,	<i>he was advising.</i>	Mōn-ēbant,	<i>they were advis- ing.</i>

## 3. FUTURE-SIMPLE TENSE.

S. Mōn-ēbo,	<i>I shall advise</i>	P. Mōn-ēbīmūs,	<i>We shall advise</i>
Mōn-ēbīs,	<i>thou wilt advise</i>	Mōn-ēbītīs,	<i>ye will advise</i>
Mōn-ēbīt,	<i>he will advise.</i>	Mōn-ēbunt,	<i>they will advise.</i>

## 4. PERFECT TENSE.

S. Mōn-uī,	<i>I have advised, or I advised</i>	P. Mōn-uīmūs,	<i>We have advised, or we advised</i>
Mōn-uistī,	<i>thou hast advised, or advisedst</i>	Mōn-uistīs,	<i>ye have advised, or ye advised</i>
Mōn-uīt,	<i>he has advised, or he advised.</i>	Mōn-uērunt,	<i>they have advised, or -uērē, } or they advised.</i>

## 5. PLUPERFECT TENSE.

S. Mōn-uēram,	<i>I had advised</i>	P. Mōn-uērāmūs,	<i>We had advised</i>
Mōn-uērās,	<i>thou hadst advised</i>	Mōn-uērātīs,	<i>ye had advised</i>
Mōn-uērāt,	<i>he had advised.</i>	Mōn-uērant,	<i>they had advised.</i>

## 6. FUTURE-PERFECT TENSE.

S. Mōn-uēro,	<i>I shall</i>	P. Mōn-uērīmūs,	<i>We shall</i>
Mōn-uērīs,	<i>thou wilt</i>	Mōn-uērītīs,	<i>ye will</i>
Mōn-uērīt,	<i>he will</i>	Mōn-uērint,	<i>they will</i>
	<i>have</i>		<i>have</i>
	<i>advised.</i>		<i>advised.</i>

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT TENSE.

S. Mōn-ē,	<i>Advise thou.</i>	P. Mōn-ētē,	<i>Advise ye.</i>
-----------	---------------------	-------------	-------------------

## FUTURE TENSE.

S. Mōn-ēto,	<i>Thou shalt or must advise</i>	P. Mōn-ētōtē,	<i>Ye shall or must advise</i>
Mōn-ēto,	<i>he shall or must advise.</i>	Mōn-ēnto,	<i>they shall or must advise.</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

1. PRESENT TENSE.

S. <b>Mōn-eam,</b>	<i>I may advise</i>	P. <b>Mōn-eāmūs,</b>	<i>We may advise</i>
<b>Mōn-eās,</b>	<i>thou mayst advise</i>	<b>Mōn-eātīs,</b>	<i>ye may advise</i>
<b>Mōn-eāt,</b>	<i>he may advise.</i>	<b>Mōn-eant,</b>	<i>they may advise.</i>

2. IMPERFECT TENSE.

S. <b>Mōn-ērem,</b>	<i>I might advise</i>	P. <b>Mōn-ērēmūs,</b>	<i>We might advise</i>
<b>Mōn-ērēs,</b>	<i>thou mightst advise</i>	<b>Mōn-ērētīs,</b>	<i>ye might advise</i>
<b>Mōn-ērēt,</b>	<i>he might advise.</i>	<b>Mōn-ērent,</b>	<i>they might advise.</i>

3. PERFECT TENSE.

S. <b>Mōn-uērim,</b>	<i>I may</i>	P. <b>Mōn-uērimūs,</b>	<i>We may</i>
<b>Mōn-uēris,</b>	<i>thou mayst</i>	<b>Mōn-uēritīs,</b>	<i>ye may</i>
<b>Mōn-uērit,</b>	<i>he may</i>	<b>Mōn-uērint,</b>	<i>they may</i>

4. PLUPERFECT TENSE.

S. <b>Mōn-nissem,</b>	<i>I should</i>	P. <b>Mōn-nissēmūs,</b>	<i>We should</i>
<b>Mōn-nissēs,</b>	<i>thou wouldst</i>	<b>Mōn-nissētīs,</b>	<i>ye would</i>
<b>Mōn-nissēt,</b>	<i>he would</i>	<b>Mōn-nissent,</b>	<i>they would</i>

VERB INFINITE.

INFINITIVES.

PRES. and	} <b>Mōn-ērē,</b>	<i>to advise.</i>
IMP.		
PERF. and	} <b>Mōn-nissē,</b>	{ <i>to have</i>
PLUP.		
FUTURE.	} <b>Mōn-itūrūs</b>	{ <i>to be about</i>
	<b>essē,</b>	<i>to advise.</i>

SUPINES.

<b>Mōn-itum,</b>	<i>to advise.</i>
<b>Mōn-itū,</b>	<i>in advising, or</i>
	<i>to be advised.</i>

GERUND.

Gen. <b>Mōn-eādī,</b>	<i>of advising</i>
Dat. <b>Mōn-endō,</b>	<i>for advising</i>
Acc. <b>Mōn-endum,</b>	<i>advising</i>
Abl. <b>Mōn-endō,</b>	<i>by advising.</i>

PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT. <b>Mōn-ens, -entis,</b>	<i>advis-</i>
	<i>ing.</i>
FUTURE. <b>Mōn-itūrūs,</b>	<i>(ā, um),</i>
	<i>about to advise.</i>

(Obs. **Mōnitūrūs** may be conjugated with all the tenses of sum: as, *moniturūs sum, I am about to advise*; *moniturūs eram, I was about to advise*, &c. This is called the *Active Periphrastic Conjugation*.

## XXI.—THIRD OR CONSONANT AND U CONJUGATION.— ACTIVE VOICE.

**Rēgo, rexī, rectum, rēgērē,—to rule. Stem : rēg-.**

### VERB FINITE.

#### INDICATIVE MOOD.

##### 1. PRESENT TENSE.

<i>S. Rēg-o, I rule, or am Rēg-is, thou rulest, or art Rēg-īt, he rules, or is</i>	} <i>ruling</i>	<i>P. Rēg-imūs, We rule, or are Rēg-itīs, ye rule, or are Rēg-unt, they rule, or are</i>	} <i>ruling</i>
--	-----------------	--	-----------------

##### 2. IMPERFECT TENSE.

<i>S. Rēg-ēbam, I was ruling, Rēg-ēbās, thou wast ruling Rēg-ēbāt, he was ruling.</i>		<i>P. Rēg-ēbāmūs, We were ruling Rēg-ēbātīs, ye were ruling Rēg-ēbant, they were ruling.</i>
---	--	--

##### 3. FUTURE-SIMPLE TENSE.

<i>S. Rēg-am, I shall rule Rēg-ēs, thou wilt rule Rēg-ēt, he will rule.</i>		<i>P. Rēg-ēmūs, We shall rule Rēg-ētīs, ye will rule Rēg-ent, they will rule.</i>
---	--	---

##### 4. PERFECT TENSE.

<i>S. Rex-i, I have ruled, or I ruled Rex-istī, thou hast ruled, or thou ruledst Rex-īt, he has ruled, or he ruled.</i>		<i>P. Rex-imūs, We have ruled, or we ruled Rex-istīs, ye have ruled, or ye ruled Rex-ērunt or rex-ērē, they have ruled, or they ruled.</i>
---	--	--

##### 5. PLUPERFECT TENSE.

<i>S. Rex-eram, I had ruled Rex-erās, thou hadst ruled Rex-erāt, he had ruled.</i>		<i>P. Rex-erāmūs, We had ruled Rex-erātīs, ye had ruled Rex-erant, they had ruled.</i>
--	--	--

##### 6. FUTURE-PERFECT TENSE.

<i>S. Rex-ēro, I shall have ruled Rex-erīs, thou wilt have ruled Rex-erīt, he will have ruled.</i>		<i>P. Rex-erimūs, We shall have ruled Rex-eritīs, ye will have ruled Rex-erint, they will have ruled.</i>
--	--	---

#### IMPERATIVE MOOD.

##### PRESENT TENSE.

<i>S. Rēg-ē, Rule thou.</i>		<i>P. Rēg-itē, Rule ye.</i>
-----------------------------	--	-----------------------------

##### FUTURE TENSE.

<i>S. Rēg-ito, Thou shalt or must rule Rēg-ito, he shall or must rule.</i>		<i>P. Rēg-itōtē, Ye shall or must rule Rēg-unto, they shall or must rule.</i>
--	--	---

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

1. PRESENT TENSE.

S. Rēg-am,	<i>I may rule</i>	P. Rēg-āmūs,	<i>We may rule</i>
Rēg-ās,	<i>thou mayst rule</i>	Rēg-ātis,	<i>ye may rule</i>
Rēg-āt,	<i>he may rule.</i>	Rēg-ant,	<i>they may rule.</i>

2. IMPERFECT TENSE.

S. Rēg-ērem,	<i>I might rule</i>	P. Rēg-ērēmūs,	<i>We might rule</i>
Rēg-ērēs,	<i>thou mightst rule</i>	Rēg-ērētis,	<i>ye might rule</i>
Rēg-ērēt,	<i>he might rule.</i>	Rēg-ērent,	<i>they might rule.</i>

3. PERFECT TENSE.

S. Rex-ērim,	<i>I may</i>	P. Rex-ērīmūs,	<i>We may</i>
Rex-ēris,	<i>thou mayst</i>	Rex-ēritis,	<i>ye may</i>
Rex-ērit,	<i>he may</i>	Rex-ērint,	<i>they may</i>

4. PLUPERFECT TENSE.

S. Rex-issem,	<i>I should</i>	P. Rex-issēmūs,	<i>We should</i>
Rex-issēs,	<i>thou wouldst</i>	Rex-issētis,	<i>ye would</i>
Rex-issēt,	<i>he would</i>	Rex-issent,	<i>they would</i>

VERB INFINITE.

INFINITIVES.

PRES. and	}	Rēg-ērē,	<i>to rule.</i>
IMP.			
PERF. and	}	Rex-issē,	<i>to have</i>
PLUP.			
FUTURE.	}	Rex-tūrūs	<i>to be about</i>
		essē,	<i>to rule.</i>

SUPINES.

Rex-tum,	<i>to rule</i>
Rex-tū,	<i>in ruling, or to be ruled.</i>

GERUND.

Gen. Rēg-endī,	<i>of ruling</i>
Dat. Rēg-endō,	<i>for ruling</i>
Acc. Rēg-endum,	<i>ruling</i>
Abl. Rēg-endō,	<i>by ruling.</i>

PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT. Rēg-ens, -entis,	<i>ruling</i>
FUTURE. Rex-tūrūs (ā, um),	<i>about to rule.</i>

*Obs. Rectūrūs* may be conjugated with all the tenses of *sum*: *us, rectūrūs sum, I am about to rule; rectūrūs eram, I was about to rule, &c.* This is called the *Active Periphrastic Conjugation*.

## XXII.—FOURTH OR I CONJUGATION.—ACTIVE VOICE.

Audio, audīvī, auditum, audiō, —to hear. Stem : audi-.

## VERB FINITE.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## 1. PRESENT TENSE.

S. Aud-io, <i>I hear, or am</i>	} <i>hearing</i>	P. Aud-imūs, <i>We hear, or are</i>	} <i>hearing</i>
Aud-is, <i>thou hearest, or art</i>		Aud-itīs, <i>ye hear, or are</i>	
Aud-īt, <i>he hears, or is</i>		Aud-iunt, <i>they hear, or are</i>	

## 2. IMPERFECT TENSE.

S. Aud-iēbam, <i>I was hearing</i>	P. Aud-iēbāmūs, <i>We were hearing</i>
Aud-iēbās, <i>thou wast hearing</i>	Aud-iēbātīs, <i>ye were hearing</i>
Aud-iēbāt, <i>he was hearing</i>	Aud-iēbant, <i>they were hearing</i>

## 3. FUTURE-SIMPLE TENSE.

S. Aud-iam, <i>I shall hear</i>	P. Aud-iēmūs, <i>We shall hear</i>
Aud-iēs, <i>thou wilt hear</i>	Aud-iētīs, <i>ye will hear</i>
Aud-iēt, <i>he will hear</i>	Aud-ient, <i>they will hear</i>

## 4. PERFECT TENSE.

S. Aud-ivī, <i>I have heard, or</i>	P. Aud-ivimūs, <i>We have heard,</i>
<i>I heard</i>	<i>or we heard</i>
Aud-ivistī, <i>thou hast heard,</i>	Aud-ivistīs, <i>ye have heard, or</i>
<i>or thou heardst</i>	<i>ye heard</i>
Aud-ivīt, <i>he has heard, or</i>	Aud-ivērunt, <i>they have heard,</i>
<i>he heard.</i>	<i>or -ivērē, } or they heard.</i>

## 5. PLUPERFECT TENSE.

S. Aud-ivēram, <i>I had heard</i>	P. Aud-ivērāmūs, <i>We had heard</i>
Aud-ivērās, <i>thou hadst heard</i>	Aud-ivērātīs, <i>ye had heard</i>
Aud-ivērāt, <i>he had heard.</i>	Aud-ivērant, <i>they had heard.</i>

## 6. FUTURE-PERFECT TENSE.

Aud-ivēro, <i>I shall</i>	} <i>have</i>	P. Aud-ivērimūs, <i>We shall</i>	} <i>have</i>
Aud-ivērīs, <i>thou wilt</i>		Aud-ivēritīs, <i>ye will</i>	
Aud-ivērīt, <i>he will</i>		Aud-ivērint, <i>they will</i>	

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT TENSE.

S. Aud-i, <i>Hear thou.</i>	P. Aud-itē, <i>Hear ye.</i>
-----------------------------	-----------------------------

## FUTURE TENSE.

S. Aud-ito, <i>Thou shalt or must</i>	P. Aud-itōtē, <i>Ye shall or must</i>
<i>hear</i>	<i>hear</i>
Aud-itō, <i>he shall or must</i>	Aud-iunto, <i>they shall or must</i>
<i>hear.</i>	<i>hear.</i>

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## 1. PRESENT TENSE.

S. Aud-iam,	<i>I may hear</i>	P. Aud-iāmūs,	<i>We may hear</i>
Aud-iās,	<i>thou mayst hear</i>	Aud-iātis,	<i>ye may hear</i>
Aud-iāt,	<i>he may hear.</i>	Aud-iant,	<i>they may hear.</i>

## 2. IMPERFECT TENSE.

S. Aud-irem,	<i>I might hear</i>	P. Aud-irēmūs,	<i>We might hear</i>
Aud-irēs,	<i>thou mightst hear</i>	Aud-irētis,	<i>ye might hear</i>
Aud-irēt,	<i>he might hear.</i>	Aud-irent,	<i>they might hear.</i>

## 3. PERFECT TENSE.

S. Aud-ivērim,	<i>I may</i>	P. Aud-ivērimus,	<i>We may</i>
Aud-ivēris,	<i>thou mayst</i>	Aud-ivēritis,	<i>ye may</i>
Aud-ivērit,	<i>he may</i>	Aud-ivērint,	<i>they may</i>

## 4. PLUPERFECT TENSE.

S. Aud-ivissē,	<i>I should</i>	P. Aud-ivissēmūs,	<i>We should</i>
Aud-ivissēs,	<i>thou wouldst</i>	Aud-ivissētis,	<i>ye would</i>
Aud-ivissēt,	<i>he would</i>	Aud-ivissent,	<i>they would</i>

## VERB INFINITE.

## INFINITIVES.

PRES. and IMP.	{ Aud-irē,	<i>to hear.</i>
PERF. and PLUP.	{ Aud-ivissē,	<i>{ to have heard.</i>
FUTURE.	{ Aud-itūrūs	<i>{ to be about</i>
	{ essē,	<i>{ to hear.</i>

## SUPINES.

Aud-itum,	<i>to hear.</i>
Aud-itū,	<i>in hearing, or to be heard.</i>

## GERUND.

Gen. Aud-iendī,	<i>of hearing</i>
Dat. Aud-iendō,	<i>for hearing</i>
Acc. Aud-iendum,	<i>hearing</i>
Abl. Aud-iendō,	<i>by hearing.</i>

## PARTICIPLES.

PRESENT.	Aud-iens, -entis,
	<i>hearing.</i>
FUTURE.	Aud-itūrūs (ā, um),
	<i>about to hear.</i>

*Obs.* Audītūrūs may be conjugated with all the tenses of sum: as, auditūrūs sum, *I am about to hear*; auditūrūs eram, *I was about to hear*, &c. This is called the *Active Periphrastic Conjugation*.

NOTE.—In all the Perfect Tenses *v* is frequently omitted before *e* and *i*. The two *ii* are often contracted into *i*: as,

audivisti becomes	{ audixisti or	audivēram becomes	audixeram
	audisti	audivērim	audixerim
audivistis	{ audixistis	audivissē	{ audixissē or
	or audistis		audissem
audivit	audixit	audivissē	{ audixissē or
audivērunt	audixerunt		audixissē.
audivēro	audixero		



## FIRST CONJUGATION.—ACTIVE VOICE.

## EXERCISE XXV.

*The Present, Imperfect, and Future-Simple Tenses, Indicative.*

**A.**—1. Ego te laudabam, tu me vituperabas. 2. Ego te laudabo, tu me vituperabis. 3. Bonos semper laudabo, improbos semper vituperabo. 4. Si virtutem amabitis, omnes boni vos amabunt. 5. Dum nos placidus somnus recreabat, vos vigilabatis. 6. Quum milites urbem intrabant, omnes cives timoris pleni erant. 7. Hieme in urbe habitamus, aestate autem in hortis habitabimus. 8. Probitate, non fraude amicos parabis. 9. Graeci partem praedae Diis dabant. 10. Multi homines aedificant domos, in quibus non habitabunt.

1. He was building a house in the city. 2. I shall always praise the good; I shall always find-fault-with the bad. 3. The Romans gave the greatest honours to good citizens. 4. By virtue they are-getting to themselves (*sibi*) a renowned name. 5. While the soldiers were refreshing themselves, the enemy (*pl.*) were awake. 6. We (*nos*) build houses; others will dwell in them. 7. The general will give the booty to the soldiers. 8. You (*sing.*) find-fault-with yourself (*te*), I (*do*) not find-fault-with you. 9. All persons praise diligence and honesty. 10. While the citizens were watching, the soldiers were preparing their arms.

*The Perfect, Pluperfect, and Future-Perfect Tenses, Indicative.*

**RULE 11.**—When two Nouns refer to the same person or thing, they are said to be in *Apposition*, and are put in the same case: as, *Rōmulus rex, Romulus, the king.*

**B.**—1. Ego ambulavi, tu vigilavisti, ventus flavit. 2. Ego ambulaveram, tu vigilaveras, ventus flaverat. 3. Ego te laudavero, tu me vituperaveris, frater judicaverit. 4. Praeceptores meos semper amavi. 5. Romani Corinthum, opulentam Graeciae urbem, expugnauerunt. 6. Quum milites urbem intraverant, omnes cives timoris pleni erant. 7. Si unum castigaveris centum emendabis. 8. Si animum virtutibus ornaveris, semper beatus eris. 9. Quum exercitus urbem oppugnavit, nos jam emigraveramus. 10. Quum hostes agros vastaverint, urbem oppugnabunt.

1. The Romans assaulted the city. 2. The soldiers laid-waste the lands (*agros*) and assaulted the city. 3. Cicero, the orator, got for himself a renowned name. 4. They had adorned the city (of)

Corinth with most splendid buildings. 5. When the army has (*fut. perf.*) laid-waste the lands, the general will assault the city. 6. When thou hast improved (*fut. perf.*) thy life, thou wilt have gained for thyself (*dative*) true praise. 7. I have built for myself a splendid house; I have gained very many friends. 8. I have praised you (*sing.*), not found-fault-with you (*sing.*). 9. The army had entered the city and had laid-waste all (things). 10. If thou hast gained for thyself true friends, thou art happy.

### Imperative Mood.

NOTE.—Not in prohibitions is always *NE*.

C.—1. Amato patrem et matrem! 2. Omnes homines ama! 3. Mores vestros mutare, amici! 4. Diligenter cura, amice, valetudinem tuam! 5. Amate litteras, o pueri! 6. Discipulus amato præceptores! 7. Laudatote probos homines, vitupératote improbos! 8. Omnes homines amato Deum! 9. Ne nomen muta; muta mores.

1. Enter (*pl.*), O friends! 2. Improve (*pl.*) those ill manners of yours,\* scholars! 3. O my son, love (thy) mother! 4. Change not this law, citizens. 5. Praise thou the just and good (*pl.*). 6. Change not (your) friends. 7. While the soldiers are fighting, the citizens must watch. 8. Good and upright citizens must be at-the-head-of the commonwealth. 9. Get not to thyself a name by guilt.

\* Translate *those-of-yours*, by *istos*.

### THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

The Indicative Mood speaks of a thing without any condition or doubt: as, *aedifico dómum*, *I am building a house*; *hábítábo in eâ*, *I shall dwell in it*.

The Subjunctive Mood speaks of a thing with some condition or doubt: as, [*aedifico dómum*] *út in eâ hábitem*, [*I am building a house*], *in order that I may dwell in it*. Here there is no doubt about the act of *building*; but whether the person building will *dwell* in the house or not is uncertain, and depends upon circumstances.

The translation of the Subjunctive Mood with *may* and *might* is only an approximation to its meaning. Very often it has to be rendered in English by the corresponding tense of the Indicative Mood, as in the whole of Exercise E.

NOTE.—The Rule for the sequence of tenses in the Subjunctive Mood is given on p. 95.

**RULE 12.**—The Conjunctions *ut, that in-order-that*, and *nē, lest, in-order-that-not*, are constructed with the Subjunctive Mood.

*The Present and Imperfect Tenses, Subjunctive.*

**D.**—1. Laudat puerum, *ut* litteras amet. 2. Laudavit puerum, *ut* litteras amaret. 3. Omnes parentes optant, *ut* filii litteras diligenter tractent. 4. Saepe majores nostri dimicaverunt, *ut* patriam suam liberarent. 5. Amo te, *ut* me redames. 6. Amavi te, *ut* me redamares. 7. Dux imperavit *ut* milites stationes suas servarent. 8. Ita judicat iudex justus, *ut* in omni re rectam conscientiam servet. 9. Heri ambulabam, *ut* tristem animum exhilararem. 10. Exercitus noster pugnabat, *ne* urbem hostes expugnarent.

1. I often walked in the fields that I might refresh my mind. 2. Who does not fight that he may preserve his country? 3. They were fighting that they might preserve their freedom. 4. He chastises the boy in-order-that he may improve him. 5. He was chastising the boy in-order-that he might improve him. 6. We fight in-order-that the enemy (*pl.*) may not (*ne*) lay-waste our lands. 7. The husbandmen were preparing arms in-order-that the soldiers might not enter their lands. 8. We prepare (our) arms that we may save the city. 9. We often walked in the garden in order that we might refresh ourselves (*nos*). 10. We were building and were adorning dwelling-places, in-order-that others might dwell in them.

**RULE 13.**—*Quin* is used with the Subjunctive Mood after *nōn dūbīto, I do not doubt*, *nēmo dūbītāt, no one doubts*; *quīs dūbītāt? who doubts?* *nōn est dūbīum, it is not doubtful*, or, *there is no doubt*; and is translated in English by *that*.

After such expressions as these, the Subjunctive must be translated into English by the corresponding tense of the Indicative: as, *nēmo dūbītāt quin sit justum, no one doubts that it is just*.

*The Perfect and Pluperfect Tenses, Subjunctive.*

**E.**—1. Non dubito, quin milites nostri hostes superaverint. 2. Non dubitabam, quin milites nostri hostes superavissent. 3. Non dubito, quin milites nostri hostes superaturi sint.\* 4. Quis dubitat, quin bonos semper laudaverimus? 5. Non est dubium, quin fidem semper servaveritis. 6. Nemo dubitabat quin hostes urbem expugnassent. 7. Non est dubium, quin malos semper vituperaverimus. 8. Nemo dubitabat, quin Hannibal fortissime pugnasset.

\* The *Périphrastic Conjugation*, consisting of the Future Participle in *turus* with the Verb *sum*, denotes intention or futurity. See p. 39, *Obs.*

9. Non est dubium, quin terror omnium civium animos occupaverit.  
 10. Non erat dubium, quin terror omnium civium animos occupavisset.

In the following Exercise the verbs in *Italics* are to be rendered in Latin by the corresponding Tenses of the Subjunctive.

1. There was no doubt that, the enemy *had entered* the city.  
 2. There is no doubt that our soldiers *have fought* bravely. 3. I do not doubt that *ye have* always *praised* the good. 4. There is no doubt that our (men) *overcame* the enemy. 5. There was no doubt that they *had prepared* arms. 6. Who doubts that, the enemy *have prepared* arms? 7. I have no doubt that our soldiers *have taken-by-storm* the city. 8. Who doubts that our men *fought* bravely? 9. There is no doubt that *he has improved* his manners. 10. Who doubts that a good citizen will fight (*pres. subj.*) for (prō with abl.) his native-land?

### *Infinitive Mood and Participles.*

RULE 14.—The latter of two verbs is put in the Infinitive Mood: as, Caesar hostēs sup̄erārē pōtest, *Caesar is able to overcome the enemy.*

Pōtest, (*he, she, it*) *is able.*

Possunt, (*they*) *are able.*

F.—1. Milites urbem expugnare possunt. 2. Caesar sibi amicos parare potest. 3. Naturam mutare difficile est. 4. Errare humanum est. 5. Luscina cantans animos nostros delectat. 6. Hostes adventant expugnaturi urbem nostram.

1. Caesar is able to take-by-storm the city. 2. Our (men) are able to overcome the enemy. 3. It is difficult to change bad manners. 4. It is easy to overcome the enemies. 5. The general entered the city, carrying (his) sword. 6. They were walking in the garden, singing and adorning themselves with flowers.

## SECOND CONJUGATION.—ACTIVE VOICE.

### EXERCISE XXVI.

#### *Indicative and Imperative Moods.*

A.—1. Ego te monebam, tu fiebas. 2. Ego te monebo, tu fies. 3. Arbores vere florent. 4. Tempus omnia opera hominum delet. 5. Romani primis temporibus parebant regibus. 6. Gaudebam quod tu valebas. 7. Præceptor gaudebat, quod vos ejus præceptis parebatis. 8. Tibi placebas, aliis displicebas. 9. Omnes boni legibus divinis semper parebunt. 10. Vires vestras semper exercete, pueri!

1. *We* (nos) shall rejoice, *you* (vos) will weep. 2. The young-man obeys not the laws of the commonwealth. 3. Weep not, O my sons; the commonwealth rejoices. 4. A good king is not always pleasing to his citizens. 5. I rejoice, because the state flourishes. 6. The same (things) do not always please the same persons. 7. The commonwealth was flourishing. 8. The good citizens were rejoicing; the bad were weeping. 9. Obey the laws of your country, citizens. 10. The enemy was destroying the houses.

**B.**—1. Graecia omnibus artibus floruit. 2. Multum iis debemus, qui nos virtutem docuerunt. 3. Fortes milites! laudem meruistis. 4. Cantus avium maximam nobis praeberunt voluptatem. 5. Bonae leges Solonis Atheniensibus placuerunt. 6. Divitiae multis hominibus nocuerunt. 7. Magistri vos linguam Latinam docuerunt. 8. Equites Caesaris Pompeium ejusque amicos terruerunt. 9. Haec civitas diu floruerat, quia semper legibus paruerat. 10. Tu nobis nocueras, quia temeritatem tuam non coercueras.

1. Rashness has often been hurtful to generals. 2. We owe very many-things to our parents. 3. Who taught you the Latin language, boy? 4. Curb the tongue; the tongue has been hurtful to very many (persons). 5. Cicero exhibited to his (fellow) citizens a memorable example of integrity. 6. Set (*praebeo*) a good example to thy (fellow) citizens. 7. Destroy ye not the city, soldiers! 8. Solon the Athenian furnished most excellent laws for his (fellow) citizens. 9. That man often curbs his tongue. 10. To whom do not the songs of birds afford pleasure?

### *Subjunctive and Infinitive Moods and Participles.*

**C.**—1. Curo ut pueri corpus exerceam. 2. Curabam ut pueri corpus exercerem. 3. Cura ut pueri corpus exerceas. 4. Curabam ut pueri corpus exerceres. 5. Nemo dubitat quin ego puerum semper bene monuerim. 6. Nemo dubitavit quin ego puerum semper bene monuissem. 7. Non dubito quin dux temeritatem militum coercuerit. 8. Non dubito, quin dux temeritatem militum coerciturus sit. 9. Miserum est habuisse, et nihil habere. 10. Bonis placuisse maxima laus est.

1. Who doubts that rashness has been hurtful to generals? 2. It is difficult to curb the tongue; it is more difficult to curb anger. 3. There is no doubt that to curb anger is most difficult. 4. There is no doubt that they entered the city weeping. 5. To do good to very many is true glory. 6. That tongue of yours (*iste*) is destined-to-hurt (*fut. part.*) yourself. 7. I will take care to\* set a good example to my children. 8. A son ought to obey (his) father. 9. There is no doubt that the laws of Solon were serviceable to the Athenians. 10. Who doubts that anger has hurt very many?

\* *Obs.* To set = *that I may set*: ut with Subjunctive. When the English Infinitive Mood expresses a purpose, it must be translated in Latin by ut and the Subjunctive.

## THIRD CONJUGATION.—ACTIVE VOICE.

## EXERCISE XXVII.

*Indicative and Imperative Moods.*

**A.**—1. Omnem hunc mundum Deus regit. 2. Hannibal magnam exercitum in Italiam ducet. 3. Semper dicam quod verum est. 4. Dum ego scribebam, tu legebas et frater pingebat. 5. Miles corpus pallio suo teget. 6. Hostes aciem instruebant. 7. Disce, puer! 8. Coelestia semper spectato, humana contemnito. 9. Vos, viri fortissimi, urbem templaque deorum defendetis. 10. Tu exercitum duces, multasque urbes expugnabis.

1. Hannibal will lead his army into the Roman territory (*agri, pl.*). 2. We were leading the army into the Roman territory. 3. We were defending the city and the temples of the gods. 4. I was writing; you were reading; (*my*) brother was painting. 5. A good citizen will never abandon the commonwealth. 6. The state defends us. 7. I will cover the bodies of the boys with (*my*) cloak. 8. Learn the song, boys; (*it*) is very beautiful (*pulcher*). 9. Brave men despise death and danger. 10. Tell\* me (*dat.*), (*my*) son; what has hurt you?

**B.**—1. Tarquinius Priscus Romam urbem muris ciuit. 2. Xerxes, Persarum rex, Hellespontum ponte iunxit. 3. Imperator exercitum duxit, multasque urbes expugnavit. 4. Cicero multas pulcherrimas orationes scripserat. 5. Cicero conjurationem Catilinae detexerat. 6. Simulac litteras scripserimus, ambulabimus. 7. Incendium totam fere urbem absumpserat. 8. Camillum triumphantem albi traxerunt equi. 9. Xerxes, Persarum rex, innumeras copias contraxit. 10. Vix Caesar aciem instruxerat, quum hostes in unum locum convolaverunt.

1. The fire consumed the third part of the city. 2. The general led a great army into Italy. 3. The Cimbri brought-together innumerable forces. 4. Caesar arranged his line-of-battle. 5. Caesar threw a bridge across the river (*say, joined the river by a bridge*). 6. As soon as I have written (*fut. perf.*) the letter, I will take-a-walk. 7. We discovered the conspiracy of Catiline. 8. I defended the commonwealth (*when*) a young man. 9. White horses had drawn Camillus triumphing. 10. We have despised human (*things*) (*neut. pl.*).

\* The verbs dico, dūco, fīcio, drop the final *e* in the imperative mood: hence dic, tell thou; duc, lead thou; fac, do thou.

*Subjunctive and Infinitive Moods and Participles.*

C.—1. Hannibal magnum exercitum in Italiam ducit, ut cum Romanis in hac terra pugnet. 2. Hannibal magnum exercitum in Italiam duxit, ut cum Romanis in hac terra pugnaret. 3. Cura ut pueri animum excolas. 4. Curabam ut pueri animum excoleres. 5. Nemo dubitat quin ego puerum diligenter corroxi. 6. Nemo dubitabat quin ego puerum diligenter correxissem. 7. Narra nobis, quid parentes scripserint. 8. Quis dubitat, quin hostes urbem obsidione cincturi sint. 9. Difficile est regere hominum animos. 10. Emere facilius est quam solvere.

1. I will take care to cultivate (*ut* and *Subj.*) the boy's mind. 2. There is no doubt that he has carefully cultivated his mind. 3. Take care to be well (*ut* and *Subj.*). 4. Who doubts that it is very difficult to rule the minds of men? 5. Who doubts that we have obeyed the laws? 6. Caesar drew together his forces with-the-intention-of-assaulting (*fut. part.*) the town. 7. White horses drew the chariot of Camillus (when) triumphing. 8. It is difficult to learn many things. 9. There is no doubt that we ought always to be learning (*pres. inf.*). 10. I will take care to correct (*ut* and *Subj.*) the boys.

## FOURTH CONJUGATION.—ACTIVE VOICE.

## \* EXERCISE XXVIII.

*Indicative and Imperative Moods.*

A.—1. Mors finiet nostram vitam. 2. Leones non reperitis in Gallia. 3. Discipulos diligentes non puniemus. 4. Persae castra muniebant et custodiebant. 5. Dum tu dormiebas, ego te custodiebam. 6. Scio multas res, quas olim nesciebam. 7. Dum tu dormies, ego te custodiam. 8. Praeceptor puerorum mentes erudit. 9. Liberi parentibus obediunt. 10. Qui Deo obedit, etiam hominibus obedit.

1. The soldiers were fortifying the camp. 2. Cornelia trained her children carefully. 3. My son, obey thy mother. 4. While the citizens were keeping-guard, the soldiers were sleeping. 5. We will keep-guard, and you shall sleep. 6. Now I know these things; yesterday I was-ignorant-of them. 7. You will not easily find a lion in Europe. 8. Death puts-an-end-to all the hopes of this life. 9. Carefully train your children; praise the good; punish the bad. 10. Thou shalt not bury (*fut. imper.*) a dead man within (in) the city.

**B.**—1. Natura Italiam Alpibus munivit. 2. Cicerō domum suam muniverat et firmaverat. 3. Magister puniebat eos discipulos, qui non obederant. 4. Vincite eos, qui non obediverunt. 5. Claram nocem hujus avis non audivisti? eam non audiui. 6. Servi domini sepeliverunt. 7. Vix milites castra muniverant, quum Caesar aciem instruxit. 8. Quum milites castra muniverint, dormient. 9. Natura oculos membranis tenuissimis vestivit. 10. Parentes mei pauperem hunc puerum nutriverant.

1. A good father will nurture, clothe, (and) train-up his children. 2. Who did not hear that very clear (*superl.*) song of the nightingale? 3. Nature has fortified the earth with mountains. 4. They bound the men with the hardest chains. 5. Lictor, bind the man! 6. Very delicate membranes clothe the eyes. 7. Punish thou the bad; give honour to the good; in-that-way thou wilt be serviceable to the commonwealth. 8. He will bind the citizens with the strongest (*validissimus*) chains. 9. That cruel mother did not nurture her own children. 10. Bind not the man, soldier! he is a Roman citizen.

*Subjunctive and Infinitive Moods and Participles.*

**C.**—1. Curo ut pueri mentem erudiam. 2. Curabam; ut pueri mentem erudirem. 3. Obedit aliis, ut sibi quoque alii obediant. 4. Obediebam aliis, ut mihi quoque alii obedirent. 5. Nemo dubitat quin ego puerum gnaviter custodi(v)erim. 6. Nemo dubitabat quin puerum gnaviter custodi(v)isses. 7. Non dubito quin longinquitas temporis dolorem tuum mollitura sit. 8. Milites urbem custodire debent. 9. Nihil scire turpe est. 10. Venio auditurus, quid pater scripserit.

1. There is no doubt that length of time will assuage (*Periphrastic Conjugation*) your grief. 2. It is easy to exercise the body; it is difficult to train the mind. 3. Who doubts that the father carefully trained the mind of his son? 4. I will take pains to assuage (*ut* and *Subj.*) the pain of the wound. 5. I have no doubt that he is going-to-train-up (*Periphrastic Conjugation*) the boy most carefully. 6. To punish is not to train-up. 7. He bound the men with chains, that they might learn to obey. 8. It is easy to obey the feelings (*animus*\*). 9. There is no doubt that length of time assuages both grief and anger (*dolorem iramque*). 10. (He) who knows not (*nescio*) (how) to obey, knows not (how) to command.

\* Use the Singular.



## XXIII.—FIRST OR A CONJUGATION.—PASSIVE VOICE.

Āmōr, āmātūs sum or fui, āmārī,—to be loved. Stem: āma-.

## VERB FINITE.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## 1. PRESENT TENSE.

S. Ām-ōr,	I am loved	P. Ām-āmūr,	We are loved
Ām-ārīs or	thou art loved	Ām-āmīnī,	ye are loved
Ām-ātūr,	he is loved.	Ām-antūr,	they are loved.

## 2. IMPERFECT TENSE.

S. Ām-ābār,	{ I was being loved	P. Ām-ābāmūr,	{ We were being loved
Ām-ābārīs or	{ thou wast being loved	Ām-ābāmīnī,	{ ye were being loved
Ām-ābātūr,	{ he was being loved.	Ām-ābantūr,	{ they were being loved.

## 3. FUTURE-SIMPLE TENSE.

S. Ām-ābōr,	I shall be loved	P. Ām-ābīmūr,	We shall be loved
Ām-ābērīs or	thou wilt be loved	Ām-ābīmīnī,	ye will be loved
Ām-ābītūr,	he will be loved.	Ām-ābuntūr,	they will be loved.

## 4. PERFECT TENSE.

S. Ām-ātūs sum	{ I have been loved, or fui, or was loved	P. Ām-āti sūmūs	{ We have been loved, or were loved
Ām-ātūs ēs	{ thou hast been loved, or wast loved	Ām-āti estīs	{ ye have been loved, or were loved
Ām-ātūs est	{ he has been loved, or fuit, or was loved.	Ām-āti sunt,	{ they have been loved, or were loved.

## 5. PLUPERFECT TENSE.

S. Ām-ātūs ēram	{ I had been loved	P. Ām-āti ērāmūs	{ We had been loved
or fuēram,		or fuērāmūs,	
Ām-ātūs ērās	{ thou hadst been loved	Ām-āti ērātīs	{ ye had been loved
or fuērās,		or fuērātīs,	
Ām-ātūs ērāt	{ he had been loved.	Ām-āti ērant	{ they had been loved.
or fuērāt,		or fuērant,	

## 6. FUTURE-PERFECT TENSE.

S. Ām-ātūs ēro	{ I shall have been loved	P. Ām-āti ērīmūs	{ We shall have been loved
or fuēro,		or fuērīmūs,	
Ām-ātūs ērīs	{ thou wilt have been loved	Ām-āti ērītīs	{ ye will have been loved
or fuērīs,		or fuērītīs,	
Ām-ātūs ērīt	{ he will have been loved.	Ām-āti ērint	{ they will have been loved.
or fuērīt,		or fuērint,	

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

## PRESENT TENSE.

S. **Ām-ārē,** *Be thou loved.* | P. **Ām-āmīnī,** *Be ye loved.*

## FUTURE TENSE.

S. **Ām-ātōr,** *Thou must be loved*  
**Ām-ātōr,** *he must be loved.* | P. **Ām-antōr,** *{ They must be loved.*

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

## 1. PRESENT TENSE.

S. **Ām-ēr,** *I may be loved* | P. **Ām-ēmūr,** *We may be loved*  
**Ām-ērīs** or *thou mayst be* | **Ām-ēmīnī,** *ye may be loved*  
**ām-ērē,** *loved*  
**Ām-ētūr,** *he may be loved.* | **Ām-entūr,** *they may be loved.*

## 2. IMPERFECT TENSE.

S. **Ām-ārēr,** *I might be loved* | P. **Ām-ārēmūr,** *We might be loved*  
**Ām-ārērīs** or *thou mightst be* | **Ām-ārēmīnī,** *ye might be loved*  
**ām-ārērē,** *loved*  
**Ām-ārētūr,** *he might be loved.* | **Ām-ārentūr,** *they might be loved.*

## 3. PERFECT TENSE.

S. **Ām-ātūs sim** *I may have been* | P. **Ām-āti sīmūs** *We may have*  
or **fuērīm,** *loved* | or **fuērīmūs,** *been loved*  
**Ām-ātūs sis** *thou mayst have* | **Ām-āti sitīs** *ye may have*  
or **fuērīs,** *been loved* | or **fuērītīs,** *been loved*  
**Ām-ātūs sit** *he may have been* | **Ām-āti sint** *they may have*  
or **fuērīt,** *loved.* | or **fuērīnt,** *been loved.*

## 4. PLUPERFECT TENSE.

S. **Ām-ātūs essem** *I should have* | **Ām-āti essēmūs** *We should have*  
or **fuissēm,** *been loved* | or **fuissēmūs,** *been loved*  
**Ām-ātūs essēs** *thou wouldst* | **Ām-āti essētīs** *ye would have*  
or **fuissēs,** *have been loved* | or **fuissētīs,** *been loved*  
**Ām-ātūs essēt** *he would have* | **Ām-āti essent** *they would have*  
or **fuissēt,** *been loved.* | or **fuissent,** *been loved.*

## VERB INFINITIVE.

## INFINITIVES.

PRES. and IMP. **Ām-ārī,** *to be loved.*  
PERF. and PLUP. **Ām-ātūs (a, um) essē** or **fuissē,** *to have been loved.*  
FUTURE. **Ām-ātum irī** (not declined), *to be about to be loved.*

## PARTICIPLES.

PERFECT. **Ām-ātūs (a, um),** *loved or having been loved.*  
GERUNDIVE. **Ām-andūs (a, um),** *meet to be loved.*

## XXIV.—SECOND OR E CONJUGATION.—PASSIVE VOICE.

Mōneor, mōnītūs sum or fui, mōnēri, —to be <sup>advised</sup>. Stem: mōne-.

## VERB FINITE.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## 1. PRESENT TENSE.

S. Mōn-eor,	I am advised	P. Mōn-ēmūr,	We are advised
Mōn-ēris or	} thou art advised	Mōn-ēmīnī,	ye are advised
mōn-ērē,		Mōn-entūr,	they are advised.
Mōn-ētūr,	he is advised.		

## 2. IMPERFECT TENSE.

S. Mōn-ēbār,	{ I was being ad- vised	P. Mōn-ēbāmūr,	{ We were being advised
Mōn-ēbāris or	{ thou wast being advised	Mōn-ēbāmīnī,	{ ye were being advised
mōn-ēbārē,		Mōn-ēbantūr,	
Mōn-ēbātūr,	{ he was being ad- vised.		{ they were being advised.

## 3. FUTURE-SIMPLE TENSE.

S. Mōn-ēbōr,	{ I shall be ad- vised	P. Mōn-ēbīmūr,	{ We shall be ad- vised
Mōn-ēbōris or	{ thou wilt be ad- vised	Mōn-ēbīmīnī,	{ ye will be ad- vised
mōn-ēbōrē,		Mōn-ēbuntūr,	
Mōn-ēbītūr,	{ he will be ad- vised.		{ they will be ad- vised.

## 4. PERFECT TENSE.

S. Mōn-ītūs sum	I have been ad- vised, or was advised	P. Mōn-ītī sūmūs	We have been ad- vised, or were advised
or fui,		or fuimūs,	
Mōn-ītūs ēs	thou hast been advised, or wast advised	Mōn-ītī estīs	ye have been ad- vised, or were advised
or fuistī,		or fuistīs,	
Mōn-ītūs est	he has been ad- vised, or was advised.	Mōn-ītī sunt,	they have been advised, or were advised.
or fuist,		fuērunt, or fuērē,	

## 5. PLUPERFECT TENSE.

S. Mōn-ītūs ēram	{ I had been ad- vised	Mōn-ītī ērāmūs	{ We had advised
or fuēram,	{ thou hadst been advised	Mōn-ītī ērātīs	{ ye had been advised
Mōn-ītūs ērās		Mōn-ītī ērant	
or fuērās,		or fuērant,	
Mōn-ītūs ērāt	{ he had been ad- vised.		{ they had been advised.
or fuērāt,			

## 6. FUTURE-PERFECT TENSE.

S. Mōn-ītūs ēro	{ I shall have been advised	P. Mōn-ītī ērimūs	{ We shall have been advised
or fuēro,	{ thou wilt have been advised	Mōn-ītī ēritīs	{ ye will have been advised
Mōn-ītūs ēris		Mōn-ītī ērunt	
or fuēris,		or fuērint,	
Mōn-ītūs ērit	{ he will have been advised.		{ they will have been advised.
or fuērit,			

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

S. Mön-ärë, *Be thou advised.* | P. Mön-ëmîni, *Be ye advised.*

FUTURE TENSE.

S. Mön-ëtör, *Thou must be advised*  
Mön-ëtör, *he must be advised.* | P. Mön-entör, *{ They must be advised.*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

1. PRESENT TENSE.

S. Mön-eär, *{ I may be advised*  
Mön-eäris or *{ thou mayst be advised*  
mön-eärë, *{ he may be advised.*  
Mön-eätür, *{*

P. Mön-eämür, *{ We may be advised*  
Mön-eämîni, *{ ye may be advised*  
Mön-eantür, *{ they may be advised.*

2. IMPERFECT TENSE.

S. Mön-ërër, *{ I might be advised*  
Mön-ërëris or *{ thou mightst be advised*  
mön-ërërë, *{ he might be advised.*  
Mön-ërëtür, *{*

P. Mön-ërëmür, *{ We might be advised*  
Mön-ërëmîni, *{ ye might be advised*  
Mön-ërentür, *{ they might be advised.*

3. PERFECT TENSE.

S. Mön-îtüs sim *{ I may have been advised*  
or fuërim, *{*  
Mön-îtüs sis *{ thou mayst have been advised*  
or fuëris, *{*  
Mön-îtüs sît *{ he may have been advised.*  
or fuërit, *{*

P. Mön-îtî simûs *{ We may have been advised*  
or fuërimûs, *{*  
Mön-îtî sitîs *{ ye may have been advised*  
or fuëritîs, *{*  
Mön-îtî sint *{ they may have been advised.*  
or fuërint, *{*

4. PLUPERFECT TENSE.

S. Mön-îtüs essem *{ I should have been advised*  
or fuissëm, *{*  
Mön-îtüs essës *{ thou wouldst have been advised*  
or fuissës, *{*  
Mön-îtüs essët *{ he would have been advised.*  
or fuissët, *{*

P. Mön-îtî essëmûs *{ We should have been advised*  
or fuissëmûs, *{*  
Mön-îtî essëtîs *{ ye would have been advised*  
or fuissëtîs, *{*  
Mön-îtî essent *{ they would have been advised.*  
or fuissent, *{*

VERB INFINITE.

INFINITIVES.

PRES. and IMP. Mön-ëri, *to be advised.*  
PERF. and PLUP. Mön-îtîs (a, um) essë or fuissë, *to have been advised.*  
FUTURE. Mön-îtum iri (not declined), *to be about to be advised.*

PARTICIPLES.

PERFECT. Mön-îtüs (a, um), *advised, or having been advised.*  
GERUNDIVE. Mön-ëndüs (a, um), *meet to be advised.*

## XXV.—THIRD OR CONSONANT AND U CONJUGATION. PASSIVE VOICE.

**Rēgōr, rectus sum or fui, rēgī,—to be ruled. Stem: rēg-.**

### VERB FINITE.

#### INDICATIVE MOOD.

##### 1. PRESENT TENSE.

<i>S. Rēg-ōr,</i>	<i>I am ruled</i>	<i>P. Rēg-imūr,</i>	<i>We are ruled</i>
<i>Rēg-ērīs or</i>	<i>thou art ruled</i>	<i>Rēg-imīnī,</i>	<i>ye are ruled</i>
<i>rēg-ērē,</i>		<i>Rēg-untūr,</i>	<i>they are ruled.</i>
<i>Rēg-itūr,</i>	<i>he is ruled.</i>		

##### 2. IMPERFECT TENSE.

<i>S. Rēg-ēbār,</i>	<i>I was being ruled</i>	<i>P. Rēg-ēbāmūr,</i>	<i>We were being ruled</i>
<i>Rēg-ēbārīs or</i>	<i>thou wast being ruled</i>	<i>Rēg-ēbāmīnī,</i>	<i>ye were being ruled</i>
<i>rēg-ēbārē,</i>		<i>Rēg-ēbantūr,</i>	<i>they were being ruled.</i>
<i>Rēg-ēbātūr,</i>	<i>he was being ruled.</i>		

##### 3. FUTURE-SIMPLE TENSE.

<i>S. Rēg-ār,</i>	<i>I shall be ruled</i>	<i>P. Rēg-ēmūr,</i>	<i>We shall be ruled</i>
<i>Rēg-ērīs or</i>	<i>thou wilt be ruled</i>	<i>Rēg-ēmīnī,</i>	<i>ye will be ruled</i>
<i>rēg-ērē,</i>		<i>Rēg-entūr,</i>	<i>they will be ruled.</i>
<i>Rēg-etūr,</i>	<i>he will be ruled.</i>		

##### 4. PERFECT TENSE.

<i>S. Rec-tūs sum</i>	<i>I have been ruled, or was ruled</i>	<i>Rec-tī sūmūs</i>	<i>We have been ruled, or were ruled</i>
<i>or fui,</i>		<i>or fuimūs,</i>	
<i>Rec-tūs es or</i>	<i>thou hast been ruled, or wast ruled</i>	<i>Rec-tī estīs</i>	<i>ye have been ruled, or were ruled</i>
<i>fuistī,</i>		<i>or fuistīs,</i>	
<i>Rec-tūs est or</i>	<i>he has been ruled, or was ruled.</i>	<i>Rec-tī sūnt,</i>	<i>they have been ruled, or were ruled.</i>
<i>fuit,</i>		<i>fuērunt, or fuērē,</i>	

##### 5. PLUPERFECT TENSE.

<i>S. Rec-tūs eram</i>	<i>I had been ruled</i>	<i>P. Rec-tī ērāmūs</i>	<i>We had been ruled</i>
<i>or fuēram,</i>		<i>or fuērāmūs,</i>	
<i>Rec-tūs erās</i>	<i>thou hadst been ruled</i>	<i>Rec-tī ērātīs</i>	<i>ye had been ruled</i>
<i>or fuērās,</i>		<i>or fuērātīs,</i>	
<i>Rec-tūs erāt</i>	<i>he had been ruled.</i>	<i>Rec-tī ērant</i>	<i>they had been ruled.</i>
<i>or fuērāt,</i>		<i>or fuērāt,</i>	

##### 6. FUTURE-PERFECT TENSE.

<i>S. Rec-tūs ero</i>	<i>I shall have been ruled</i>	<i>P. Rec-tī ērimūs</i>	<i>We shall have been ruled</i>
<i>or fuēro,</i>		<i>or fuērīmūs,</i>	
<i>Rec-tūs eris</i>	<i>thou wilt have been ruled</i>	<i>Rec-tī ēritīs</i>	<i>ye will have been ruled</i>
<i>or fuērīs,</i>		<i>or fuērītīs,</i>	
<i>Rec-tūs erit</i>	<i>he will have been ruled.</i>	<i>Rec-tī erunt</i>	<i>they will have been ruled.</i>
<i>or fuērīt,</i>		<i>or fuērīt,</i>	

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

S. Räg-ërë, *Be thou ruled.* | P. Räg-îmîni, *Be ye ruled.*

FUTURE TENSE.

S. Räg-îtör, *Thou must be ruled*  
Räg-îtör, *he must be ruled.* | P. Räg-untör, *They must be ruled.*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

1. PRESENT TENSE.

S. Räg-är, *I may be ruled* | P. Räg-âmür, *We may be ruled*  
Räg-âris or *thou mayst be* | Räg-âmîni, *ye may be ruled*  
räg-ârë, *ruled*  
Räg-âtür, *he may be ruled.* | Räg-antür, *they may be ruled.*

2. IMPERFECT TENSE.

S. Räg-ëör, *I might be ruled* | P. Räg-ërmür, *We might be ruled*  
Räg-ërëris or *thou mightst be* | Räg-ërmîni, *ye might be ruled*  
räg-ërëre, *ruled*  
Räg-ërëtür, *he might be ruled.* | Räg-ërentür, *they might be ruled.*

3. PERFECT TENSE.

S. Rec-tüs sim or *I may have been* | P. Rec-ti simüs, *We may have*  
fuërim, *ruled* | or fuërimüs, *been ruled*  
Rec-tüs sis or *thou mayst have* | Rec-ti sitis or *ye may have been*  
fuëris, *been ruled* | fuëritis, *ruled*  
Rec-tüs sit or *he may have been* | Rec-ti sint or *they may have*  
fuërit, *ruled.* | fuërint, *been ruled.*

4. PLUPERFECT TENSE.

S. Rec-tüs essem, *I should have been* | F. Rec-ti essëmüs, *We should have*  
or fuissëm, *ruled* | or fuissëmüs, *been ruled*  
Rec-tüs essës, *thou wouldst have* | Rec-ti essëtis, *ye would have*  
or fuissës, *been ruled* | or fuissëtis, *been ruled*  
Rec-tüs essët, *he would have been* | Rec-ti essent, *they would have*  
or fuissët, *ruled.* | of fuissent, *been ruled.*

VERB INFINITE.

INFINITIVES.

PRES. and IMP. Räg-i, *to be ruled.*  
PERF. and PLUP. Rec-tüs (a, um) essë or fuissë, *to have been ruled.*  
FUTURE. Rec-tum iri (not declined), *to be about to be ruled.*

PARTICIPLES.

PERFECT. Rec-tüs (a, um), *ruled or having been ruled.*  
GERUNDIVE. Räg-endüs (a, um), *meat to be ruled.*

## XXVI.—FOURTH OR I CONJUGATION.—PASSIVE VOICE.

*Audiōr, auditus sum or fui, audiri,—to be heard. Stem : audi-.*

## VERB FINITE.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

## 1. PRESENT TENSE.

<i>S. Aud-iōr,</i>	<i>I am heard</i>	<i>P. Aud-imūr,</i>	<i>We are heard</i>
<i>And-irīs or</i>	<i>} thou art heard</i>	<i>Aud-imīni,</i>	<i>ye are heard</i>
<i>aud-irē,</i>		<i>Aud-iuntūr,</i>	<i>they are heard.</i>
<i>Aud-itūr,</i>	<i>he is heard.</i>		

## 2. IMPERFECT TENSE.

<i>S. Aud-iēbār,</i>	<i>{ I was being</i>	<i>P. Aud-iēbāmūr,</i>	<i>{ We were being</i>
<i>Aud-iēbārīs or</i>	<i>heard</i>	<i>Aud-iēbāmīni,</i>	<i>heard</i>
<i>aud-iēbārē,</i>	<i>{ thou wast being</i>	<i>Aud-iēbāmīni,</i>	<i>{ ye were being</i>
	<i>heard</i>		<i>heard</i>
<i>Aud-iēbātūr,</i>	<i>{ he was being</i>	<i>Aud-iēbantūr,</i>	<i>{ they were being</i>
	<i>heard.</i>		<i>heard.</i>

## 3. FUTURE-SIMPLE TENSE.

<i>S. Aud-iār,</i>	<i>I shall be heard</i>	<i>P. Aud-iēmūr,</i>	<i>We shall be heard</i>
<i>Aud-iārīs or</i>	<i>{ thou wilt be</i>	<i>Aud-iēmīni,</i>	<i>ye will be heard</i>
<i>aud-iārē,</i>		<i>Aud-ientūr,</i>	<i>they will be heard.</i>
<i>Aud-iētūr,</i>	<i>he will be heard.</i>		

## 4. PERFECT TENSE.

<i>S. Aud-itūs sum</i>	<i>I have been</i>	<i>P. Aud-iti sūmūs</i>	<i>We have been</i>
<i>or fui,</i>	<i>heard, or was</i>	<i>or fuimūs,</i>	<i>heard, or were</i>
	<i>heard</i>		<i>heard</i>
<i>Aud-itūs es or</i>	<i>thou hast been</i>	<i>Aud-iti estīs</i>	<i>ye have been</i>
<i>fuisti,</i>	<i>heard, or wast</i>	<i>or fuistīs,</i>	<i>heard, or were</i>
	<i>heard</i>		<i>heard</i>
<i>Aud-itūs est</i>	<i>he has been</i>	<i>Aud-iti sunt,</i>	<i>they have been</i>
<i>or fuit,</i>	<i>heard, or was</i>	<i>fuērunt, or</i>	<i>heard, or were</i>
	<i>heard.</i>	<i>fuērē,</i>	<i>heard.</i>

## 5. PLUPERFECT TENSE.

<i>S. Aud-itūs ēram</i>	<i>I had been heard</i>	<i>P. Aud-iti ērāmūs</i>	<i>We had been</i>
<i>or fuēram,</i>	<i>} thou hadst been</i>	<i>or fuērāmūs,</i>	<i>heard</i>
<i>Aud-itūs ērās</i>		<i>Aud-iti ērātīs</i>	<i>ye had been</i>
<i>or fuērās,</i>	<i>heard</i>	<i>or fuērātīs,</i>	<i>heard</i>
<i>Aud-itūs ērāt</i>	<i>he had been</i>	<i>Aud-iti ērant</i>	<i>they had been</i>
<i>or fuērāt,</i>	<i>heard.</i>	<i>or fuērant,</i>	<i>heard.</i>

## 6. FUTURE-PERFECT TENSE.

<i>S. Aud-itūs ēro</i>	<i>I shall have been</i>	<i>P. Aud-iti ērimūs</i>	<i>We shall have</i>
<i>or fuēro,</i>	<i>heard</i>	<i>or fuērimūs,</i>	<i>been heard</i>
<i>Aud-itūs ēris</i>	<i>thou wilt have</i>	<i>Aud-iti ēritīs</i>	<i>ye will have</i>
<i>or fuēris,</i>	<i>been heard</i>	<i>or fuēritīs,</i>	<i>been heard</i>
<i>Aud-itūs ērit</i>	<i>he will have been</i>	<i>Aud-iti ērunt</i>	<i>they will have</i>
<i>or fuērit,</i>	<i>heard.</i>	<i>or fuērint,</i>	<i>been heard.</i>

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

PRESENT TENSE.

S. Aud-irē, Be thou heard. | P. Aud-imīnī, Be ye heard.

FUTURE TENSE.

S. Aud-itōr, Thou must be heard  
Aud-itōr, he must be heard. | P. Aud-iuntōr, They must be heard.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

1. PRESENT TENSE.

S. Aud-iār, I may be heard | P. Aud-iāmūr, We may be heard  
Aud-iāris or thou mayst be heard  
aud-iārē, } heard Aud-iāmīnī, ye may be heard  
Aud-iātūr, he may be heard. Aud-iantūr, they may be heard.

2. IMPERFECT TENSE.

S. Aud-irēr, I might be heard | P. Aud-irēmūr, We might be heard  
Aud-irēris or thou mightst be heard  
aud-irērē, } heard Aud-irēmīnī, ye might be heard  
Aud-irētūr, he might be heard. Aud-irentūr, they might be heard.

3. PERFECT TENSE.

S. Aud-itūs sim I may have been heard | P. Aud-iti sīmūs We may have  
or fuērim, } been heard  
Aud-itūs sis thou mayst have  
or fuēris, } been heard Aud-iti sitīs ye may have  
Aud-itūs sit he may have been heard  
or fuērīt, } heard Aud-iti sint they may have  
or fuērint, } been heard.

4. PLUPERFECT TENSE.

S. Aud-itūsessem I should have been heard | P. Aud-iti essēmūs We should have  
or fuissem, } been heard  
Aud-itūs essēs thou shouldst have  
or fuissēs, } been heard Aud-iti essētīs ye would have  
Aud-itūs essēt he would have  
or fuissēt, } been heard Aud-iti essent they would have  
or fuissent, } been heard.

VERB INFINITE.

INFINITIVES.

PRES. and IMP. Aud-irī, to be heard.  
PERF. and PLUP. Aud-itūs (a, um) esse or fuissē, to have been heard.  
FUTURE. Aud-itum irī (not declined), to be about to be heard.

PARTICIPLES.

PERFECT. Aud-itūs (a, um), heard or having been heard.  
GERUNDIVE. Aud-iendūs (a, um), meet to be heard.



## FIRST CONJUGATION.—PASSIVE VOICE.

RULE 15.—A proposition in the active voice may also be expressed by the passive voice, the accusative being changed into the nominative, and the nominative into the ablative. If the ablative denotes a living being, the preposition *ā* or *ab* is prefixed. Thus *māgister puerum laudāt*, *the master praises the boy*, becomes in the passive, *puer ā māgistrō laudātūr*, *the boy is praised by the master*.

## EXERCISE XXIX.

**A.**—1. Multi milites in proelio vulnerabantur. 2. Pueri attentī a fratribus laudabantur. 3. Troja a Graecis expugnata est. 4. Leges egregiae a Lycurgo datae sunt. 5. Duces exercitus nostri, in proelio vulnerati sunt. 6. Antiocho regi pax a Romanis data est. 7. Fugari et superari dulcis non est. 8. Puer bene educātor. 9. Puer, bene educatus, omnibus placet. 10. Quā rex urbem intravit, omnium civium domus floribus ornatae erant.

1. The good (men) are praised; the bad are blamed. 2. He was severely wounded. 3. In the first battle the Romans were overcome. 4. Immense forces had been raised (parē) by the enemy. 5. The temple of Vesta was built by Numa Pompilius. 6. Antiochus was overcome by the Roman general. 7. The town was assaulted. 8. The city was not taken-by-storm by Hannibal. 9. It is a small-thing to be adorned with gold and silver. 10. The whole land (ager) was laid-waste by the enemy.

**B.**—1. Pater curat ut ego bene edūcer. 2. Pater curabat, ut ego bene educarer. 3. Curo, ut puer bene educetur. 4. Curabam, ut puer bene educaretur. 5. Non dubito quin hostes a militibus nostris superati sint. 6. Non dubitabam, quin hostes a militibus nostris superati essent. 7. Nemo dubitat quin urbs ab hostibus expugnata sit. 8. Nemo dubitabat, quin urbs ab hostibus expugnata esset. 9. Exercitus noster pugnāt, ut urbs servetur. 10. Exercitus noster pugnabat, ut urbs servaretur.

1. Cornelia took-care that her children should be well educated. 2. Who doubts that the boy has been carefully educated? 3. I will take-care that the girl may be adorned with good-qualities. 4. There is no doubt that the city has been assaulted. 5. To be put-to-flight is not always to be overcome. 6. Arms must be prepared (*Imper.*); the gates of the city must be strengthened (*Imper.*). 7. The general takes-care that the gates may be strengthened. 8. The good must not be blamed (*Imper.*); the bad must not be praised (*Imper.*)! 9. We were put to flight, but we were not overcome. 10. There is no doubt that Pompey was overcome by Caesar.

## SECOND CONJUGATION.—PASSIVE VOICE.

## EXERCISE XXX.

**A.**—1. Discipuli a magistro doceantur. 2. Amari major est laus quam timeri. 3. Fortis vir nullis periculis movebitur. 4. Nero ab omnibus Romanis timebatur. 5. Incolae illius urbis hostium adventu territi sunt. 6. Moniti sumus, ut diligentiores essemus. 7. Puer strenue exercetor. 8. Hostes territi in urbe manserunt. 9. Pueri in litterarum studiis gnaviter exerciti sunt. 10. Monemini ut diligentiores sitis.

1. The pupil is taught by the master. 2. The walls were destroyed. 3. The citizens had been terrified. 4. You have been taught by your father. 5. It is a great thing to be well taught. 6. All the citizens were terrified by his (ejus) arrival. 7. Nero was grievously feared (*imperf.*) by all the citizens. 8. It is not pleasant to be feared by the good; it is very-pleasant to be feared by the bad. 9. The bodies of the children must be actively exercised (*Imperf.*). 10. You had been warned, but you did not obey.

**B.**—1. Pater curat, ut ego strenue exercear. 2. Pater curabāt, ut ego strenue exercecer. 3. Curo, ut strenue exerceare. 4. Curabam, ut strenue exercecerere. 5. Curo ut puer strenue exerceatur. 6. Curabam ut puer strenue exerceceretur. 7. Nemo dubitat quin puer a me semper bene monitus sit. 8. Nemo dubitavit quin puer a me semper bene monitus esset. 9. Non est dubium quin milites subito periculo territi sint. 10. Non erat dubium quin milites subito periculo territi essent.

1. He was taking-care that his body might be vigorously exercised. 2. I will take-care that the boys are taught (*subj.*) carefully. 3. A good mother will take-care that her daughter is carefully taught. 4. I do not doubt that the whole city was terrified by his arrival. 5. There is no doubt that the citizens were alarmed by the sudden danger. 6. Let not the citizens be troubled (moved) by the arrival of the enemy. 7. (Our) father took-care that we might be carefully taught. 8. I have taken-care that my sons should (*pres. subj.*) be carefully taught. 9. Brave men will not be suddenly terrified. 10. Virtue is the most beautiful (*fem.*) of (all) things; take-care that it is diligently exercised (*pres. subj.*).

NOTE.—In all Tenses compounded of the Perfect Participle and the verb sum, the Participle agrees in Gender and Number with the subject of the verb: as,

Puer amātus est,	the boy was loved.
Puella amātā est,	the girl was loved.
Bellum amātum est,	war was loved.
Pueri amāti sunt,	the boys were loved.
Puellae amatae sunt,	the girls were loved.
Bellā amātā sunt,	Wars were loved.

̄  
THIRD CONJUGATION.—PASSIVE VOICE.

## EXERCISE XXXI.

**A.**—1. Omnis hic mundus a Deo regitur. 2. Respublica Romana a consilibus regebatur. 3. Ripae Rheni ponte junguntur. 4. Urbs muro cincta erat. 5. Graecia perversis suis consiliis afflicta est. 6. Si semper bene vixeris, ab omnibus diligere. 7. Quum urbs ab hostibus oppugnabatur, a civibus defendebatur. 8. Conjunctio Catilinae a Cicerone detecta est. 9. Multae fabulae a poetis fictae sunt. 10. Vix acies a Caesare instructa erat, quum hostes in unum locum convolaverunt.

1. Hannibal was conquered by Scipio. 2. The commonwealth was severely cast-down. 3. He was esteemed and was loved by all. 4. This story was invented by the poets. 5. The memory of the man will always be cherished (colo) by his fellow-citizens. 6. The conspiracy is discovered; the commonwealth is preserved. 7. You will be loved by many. 8. The town is being assaulted indeed (quidem), but it is not taken. 9. In that most celebrated (nobilis) battle Carthage was cast-down. 10. A bridge was thrown over the Rhine by Caesar. (Say, the river Rhine was joined with a bridge by Caesar.)

**B.**—1. Pater curat, ut ego probe excolar. 2. Pater curabat, ut ego probe excolerer. 3. Curo, ut puer probe excolatur. 4. Curabam, ut puer probe excoleretur. 5. Phaethon vehementer optat, ut patris curru vocatur. 6. Phaethon vehementer optavit, ut patris curru vereretur. 7. Dicit mihi, quid tibi a sorore scriptum sit.\* 8. Dixit mihi, quid tibi a sorore scriptum esset.\* 9. Puer probe excolitor. 10. Sapientes semper ratione regi student.

1. I will take-care that he may be rightly cultivated. 2. He took-care that the boy might be rightly cultivated. 3. We vehemently wish that the enemy may be conquered. 4. Cicero vehemently desired that all (things) might be discovered. 5. Let-us-be-zealous to be ruled by reason. 6. All are zealous to rule, not to be ruled. 7. Tell me (*dat.*) what (*quae, neuter plural*) was written (*perfect subj.\**) to thee. 8. He told me (*dat.*) what (*quae*) had been written (*pluperf. subj.\**). 9. The boy wishes that he may ride in the chariot. 10. The boy was wishing that he might ride in the chariot.

\* The rule for this use of the Subjunctive is given subsequently. See p. 95. The Indicative must be used in translating into English.

## FOURTH CONJUGATION.—PASSIVE VOICE.

## EXERCISE XXXII.

**A.**—1. Pueri a magistris erudiuntur. 2. Improbi homines a Deo puniuntur. 3. Bellum Punicum secundum finitum est a Scipione Africano. 4. Omnes dolores morte finiuntur. 5. Pisces in mari, aves in aëre a Deo nutriuntur. 6. Oculi tenuissimis membranis a natura vestiti sunt. 7. Veteres Britanniae incolae pellibus vestiebantur. 8. Corpora eorum, qui in pugna ceciderunt, sepeliuntur. 9. Urbes munitae ab hostibus non expugnabantur. 10. Non prius dormiimus, quam negotia vestra finita efunt (*prius quam*, before that).

1. The Britons used-to-clothe-themselves (*imperf. pass.*) with skins. 2. The cities had been fortified with stone (*adj.*) walls. 3. The sons of Tiberius Gracchus had been carefully trained by their mother. 4. The bodies were buried with the highest honours. 5. The generals were punished because they had not buried the bodies. 6. These two boys had been trained by their mother carefully. 7. The camp had not been fortified. 8. This life of-ours (*nostra*) will be found exceedingly-short (*superl.*). 9. When the city has been fortified (*fut. perf.*), the citizens will defend it. 10. The city is fortified and strengthened with guards.

**B.**—1. Pater curat, ut ego diligenter erudiar. 2. Pater curabat, ut ego diligenter erudirer. 3. Curo, ut diligenter erudiare. 4. Curabam, ut diligenter erudirer. 5. Curabam, ut puer bene educaretur, strenue exerceatur, probe excoleretur, diligenter erudiretur. 6. O puer, diligenter eruditor! 7. Bonus discipulus litterarum cognitione erudiri studet. 8. Homo eruditus non solum sibi, sed etiam aliis prodest. 9. Nemo dubitat, quin puer a me gnauiter custoditus sit. 10. Nemo dubitavit, quin puella a me gnauiter custodita sit.

1. The boys must be carefully trained (*Imperf.*). 2. Let not the boys be trained (*pres. subj.*) by wicked men. 3. I will take care that my son is carefully trained. 4. I took care that my son should not be trained by a wicked master. 5. There is no doubt that the boys have been carefully trained. 6. Who doubts that it is better to be trained by a good master than by a bad one? 7. Who doubts that Socrates was unjustly punished? 8. It is not disgraceful to be unjustly punished. 9. Take care that the boy is well trained. 10. Well trained boys love their master.

## XXVII.—THIRD CONJUGATION (WITH I IN CERTAIN TENSES).

Căpio, cēpi, captum, cāpērē,—to take. Stem: cāp- or cāpi-.

## I. ACTIVE VOICE.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

<i>Present.</i>	Cāp-io, <i>I take</i>	Cāp-īmūs, <i>We take</i>
	Cāp-īs, <i>thou takest</i>	Cāp-ītīs, <i>ye take</i>
	Cāp-īt, <i>he takes.</i>	Cāp-iunt, <i>they take.</i>
<i>Imperfect.</i>	Cāp-išbam,	<i>I was taking.</i>
<i>Future.</i>	Cāp-iam,	<i>I shall take.</i>

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

<i>Present.</i>	Cāp-iam,	<i>I may take.</i>
<i>Imperfect.</i>	Cāp-ērem;	<i>I might take.</i>

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

<i>Present.</i>	Cāp-ō,	<i>take thou.</i>
<i>Future.</i>	Cāp-ito,	<i>thou shalt or must take.</i>

## INFINITIVE.

<i>Present.</i>	Cāp-ērē,	<i>to take.</i>
-----------------	----------	-----------------

## PARTICIPLE.

<i>Present.</i>	Cāp-iens,	<i>taking.</i>
-----------------	-----------	----------------

## GERUND.

<i>Gen.</i>	Cāp-iendi,	<i>of taking.</i>
-------------	------------	-------------------

## II. PASSIVE VOICE.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

<i>Present.</i>	Cāp-īor, <i>I am taken</i>	Cāp-īmūr, <i>We are taken</i>
	Cāp-ēris, <i>thou art</i>	Cāp-īmīni, <i>ye are taken</i>
	or -ērē, <i>taken</i>	Cāp-iuntūr, <i>they are taken.</i>
	Cāp-ītūr, <i>he is taken.</i>	
<i>Future.</i>	Cāp-iār,	<i>I shall be taken.</i>
<i>Imperfect.</i>	Cāp-išbar,	<i>I was being taken.</i>

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

<i>Present.</i>	<b>Căp-iăr,</b>	<i>I may be taken.</i>
<i>Imperfect.</i>	<b>Căp-erēr,</b>	<i>I might be taken.</i>

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

<i>Present.</i>	<b>Căp-erē,</b>	<i>be thou taken.</i>
<i>Future.</i>	<b>Căp-îtôr,</b>	<i>thou must be taken.</i>

## INFINITIVE.

<i>Present.</i>	<b>Căp-i,</b>	<i>to be taken.</i>
-----------------	---------------	---------------------

NOTE.—The Perfect Tenses are not given, as their conjugation is quite regular: cēp-i, cēp-eram, cēp-ero, etc.

The Verbs conjugated like cāpio are:

fācio,	fēcī,	factum,	fācērē,	<i>to make.</i>
jācio,	jēcī,	jactum,	jācērē,	<i>to throw.</i>
fūgio,	fūgī,	fūgītum,	fūgērē,	<i>to flee.</i>
fōdio,	fōdī,	fōssum,	fōdērē,	<i>to dig.</i>
rāpio,	rāpī,	raptum,	rāpērē,	<i>to seize.</i>
pārio,	pēpērī,	partum,	pārērē,	<i>to bring forth.</i>
quātio, (no perfect,)	quātī,	quassum,	quātērē,	<i>to shake.</i>
cūpio,	cūpīvī,	cūpitum,	cūpērē,	<i>to desire.</i>
sāpio,	sāpīvī,	—	sāpērē,	<i>to savour of, be wise.</i>
lācio,	—	—	lācērē,	<i>to draw</i> } <i>only in com-</i>
spēcio,	—	—	spēcērē,	<i>to look</i> } <i>pounds.</i>

## EXERCISE XXXIII.

1. Urbs capitur; fugiunt cives, rapiuntur omnia. 2. Curabit dux strenuus ne milites sui fugiant. 3. Scribebam ego versus, tu pingebas, et frater in horto fodiebat. 4. Quis dubitat quin absurdum sit malos versus facere? 5. Poeta versus faciebat quum hostes urbem intrabant. 6. Ne fugiant milites, saepe tutius est pugnare quam fugere. 7. Non omnes eadem cupimus. 8. Curavit ut oratio sua Ciceronem saperet. 9. Quis dubitat quin milites bona nostra rapturi sint? 10. Ne facite absurda, cives! Sapite et iram coercete.

1. Birds make their nests in trees. 2. An eagle had made her nest in a tall tree. 3. We desire very many things which are not needful to us. 4. It is easy to make verses; it is not easy to make good (ones). 5. The enemy flee, and the camp is taken. 6. Flee not, soldiers! It is safer to fight than to flee. 7. We will dig in the earth, in order that we may find metals. 8. Men do not dig in the ground to (ut) find (*subj.*) pearls. 9. A strong wind was shaking the trees. 10. That whole oration savours of the poets (*acc.*).

*Deponent Verbs have a Passive form,*

- I. Hortār, hortātūs sum, hortārī, *to exhort*, like āmōr.  
 II. Vēreōr, vēritūs sum, vērerī, *to fear*, „ mōneōr.

	I.			II.		
	INDICATIVE MOOD.					
	{	Present.	Hort-ōr,	{	Vēr-ōr,	{
			Hort-ārīs	{	Vēr-ērīs	{
			(ārē),	{	(ērē),	{
			&c.	{	&c.	{
		Imperfect.	Hort-ābār,	{	Vēr-ābār,	{
		Future-Simple.	Hort-ābōr,	{	Vēr-ābōr,	{
	{	Perfect.	Hort-ātūs	{	Vēr-itūs	{
			sum,	{	sum,	{
			or I exhorted.	{	or I feared.	{
		Pluperfect.	Hort-ātūs	{	Vēr-itūs	{
			eram,	{	eram,	{
			I had exhorted.	{	I had feared.	{
	{	Future Perfect.	Hort-ātūs	{	Vēr-itūs	{
			ero,	{	ero,	{
			I shall have ex-	{	I shall have	{
			horted.	{	feared.	{
	{	Present.	Hort-ēr,	{	Vēr-eār,	{
			Hort-ērēr,	{	Vēr-ērēr,	{
			I may exhort.	{	I may fear.	{
		Imperfect.	Hort-ātūs	{	Vēr-itūs	{
			sim,	{	sim,	{
			I might exhort.	{	I might fear.	{
	{	Perfect.	Hort-ātūs	{	Vēr-itūs	{
			essim,	{	essim,	{
			I may have ex-	{	I may have	{
			horted.	{	feared.	{
		Pluperfect.	Hort-ātūs	{	Vēr-itūs	{
			essem,	{	essem,	{
	{		I should have	{	I should have	{
			exhorted.	{	feared.	{
	{	Present.	Hort-ārē,	{	Vēr-ārē,	{
			exhort thou.	{	fear thou.	{
		Future.	Hort-ātōr,	{	Vēr-ētōr,	{
			thou shalt or	{	thou shalt or	{
			must exhort.	{	must fear.	{
	{			{		{
				{		{
				{		{
				{		{
				{		{
				{		{
	{	PRES. & IMPERF.	Hort-ārī,	{	Vēr-ārī,	{
			to exhort.	{	to fear.	{
		PERF. & PLUP.	Hort-ātūs	{	Vēr-itūs	{
			essē,	{	essē,	{
			to have exhorted.	{	to have feared.	{
		Future.	Hort-ātūrūs	{	Vēr-itūrūs	{
	{		essē,	{	essē,	{
			to be about to	{	to be about to	{
			exhort.	{	fear.	{
	{	Present.	Hort-ans,	{	Vēr-ens,	{
			exhorting.	{	fearing.	{
		Future.	Hort-ātūrūs,	{	Vēr-itūrūs,	{
			about to exhort.	{	about to fear.	{
		Perfect.	Hort-ātūs,	{	Vēr-itūs,	{
			having exhorted.	{	having feared.	{
	{	Gerundive.	Hort-andūs,	{	Vēr-endūs,	{
			meet to be ex-	{	meet to be feared.	{
			horted.	{		{
	{	Supines.	Hort-ātum,	{	Vēr-itum,	{
			to exhort.	{	to fear.	{
			Hort-ātū,	{	Vēr-itū,	{
			to be exhorted.	{	to be feared.	{
		Gerund.	Hort-andī,	{	Vēr-endī,	{
			of exhorting.	{	of fearing.	{
	{		&c.	{	&c.	{
				{		{
				{		{
				{		{
				{		{
				{		{

Besides the Passive forms, the Deponents have the two Active Participles, the Supines, and the Gerunds.

Deponents are the only Latin Verbs that have a Perfect Participle Active: as, hortātūs, *having exhorted*.

but an *Active* meaning.

III. Lōquōr, lōcūtūs sum, lōquī, to *peak*, like rēgōr.

IV. Partīōr, partītūs sum, partīrī, to *divide*, ., audiōr.

III.			IV.			
Present.	Lōqu-ōr,	{ I speak, or am speaking.	Part-iōr,	{ I divide, or am dividing.	INDICATIVE MOOD.	
	Lōqu-ēris (ērē),		Part-iris (irē),			
	&c.	&c.	&c.	&c.		
	Imperfect.	Lōqu-ēbār,	{ I was speaking.	Part-iēbār,		{ I was dividing.
	Fut.-Simple.	Lōqu-ār,		Part-iār,		
Perfect.	Lōcū-tūs sum,	{ I have spoken, or I spoke.	Part-itūs sum,	{ I have divided, or I divided.		
Pluperfect.	Lōcū-tūs ēram,		Part-ītūs ēram,			
Fut. Perfect.	Lōcū-tūs ēro,	{ I shall have spoken.	Part-itūs ēro,	{ I shall have divided.		
Present.	Lōqu-ār,	{ I may speak.	Part-iār,	{ I may divide.	SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.	
Imperfect.	Lōqu-ērēr,	{ I might speak.	Part-irēr,	{ I might divide.		
Perfect.	Lōcū-tūs sim,	{ I may have spoken.	Part-itūs sim,	{ I may have divided.		
Pluperfect.	Lōcū-tūs essem,	{ I should have spoken.	Part-ītūs essem,	{ I should have divided.		
Present.	Lōqu-ērē,	{ speak thou.	Part-irē,	{ divide thou.	INFLECTIVE.	
Future.	Lōqu-ītōr,	{ thou shalt or must speak.	Part-ītōr,	{ thou shalt or must divide.		
Pres. & Imp.	Lōqu-ī,	{ to speak.	Part-irī,	{ to divide.	INFINITIVE.	
Perf. & Plup.	Lōcū-tūs essē,	{ to have spoken.	Part-itūs essē,	{ to have divided.		
Future.	Lōcū-tūrūs essē,	{ to be about to speak.	Part-ītūrūs essē,	{ to be about to divide.		
Present.	Lōqu-ens,	{ speaking.	Part-iens,	{ dividing.	PARTICIPLES.	
Future.	Lōcū-tūrūs,	{ about to speak.	Part-ītūrūs,	{ about to divide.		
Perfect.	Lōcū-tūs,	{ having spoken.	Part-ītūs,	{ having divided.		
Gerundive.	Lōqu-endūs,	{ meet to be spoken.	Part-iendūs,	{ meet to be divided.		
SUPINES.	Lōcū-tum,	{ to speak.	Part-ītum,	{ to divide.		
	Lōcū-tū,	{ to be spoken.	Part-ītū,	{ to be divided.		
GERUND.	Lōqu-endī,	{ of speaking.	Part-iendī,	{ of dividing.		
	&c.	&c.	&c.	&c.		

The Gerundive, and occasionally the Perf. Participle, are the only forms in the Deponent that ever have a passive meaning.

Intransitive Deponents have no Supine in *u* and no Gerundive.



## EXERCISE XXXIV.

*Deponent Verbs of the First Conjugation.*

1. Admiramur cantum avium illarum. 2. Admiramini Dei potentiam. 3. Animalia quaedam vocem humanam imitantur. 4. Caesar milites hortatus est, ut fortiter pugnarent. 5. Hannibal Alpes superare conatus est. 6. Hortabor patrem ut pueri mentem probe excolat. 7. Quid meditaris, carissime amice? 8. Contemplor pulchram hanc imaginem. 9. Venerare Deum, venerare parentes. 10. Tum demum beatus eris, quum aspernatus eris voluptatem.

1. Who does not admire the song of the nightingale? 2. Meditate on these things. 3. Observe (carefully) this beautiful image. 4. It does good to the mind to contemplate lofty things. 5. Contemplate, citizens, the examples of the ancients! 6. Then at length, will ye be happy when ye have learnt (*fut. perf.*) to despise pleasure. 7. I will encourage the boy to (ut) contemplate those things. 8. Attempt great things; thou wilt do great things. 9. I will take care that my son may admire those things (*ea, n. pl.*) which are fit-to-be-admired. 10. There is no doubt that the Romans admired Cicero.

## EXERCISE XXXV.

*Deponent Verbs of the Second Conjugation.*

RULE 16.—Verbs signifying *to remember, to forget, to pity*, are in Latin commonly followed by the Genitive.

1. Veremini, O pueri, senectutem! 2. Darius Alexandro magnam partem Asiae pollicitus est. 3. Plinius scribit: nunc pueri omnia sciunt, neminem verentur, imitantur neminem. 4. Tuebimur miseros, quorum agros vastavistis. 5. Incolae hoc facinus fatebuntur. 6. Comites, qui salutem regis tuiti erant, maximum praemium acceperunt. 7. Scelerum suorum recordabuntur. 8. Reus facinus confessus est. 9. Jucundum est mare a terra intueri. 10. Semper miserorum hominum miserebimur.

1. We reverence the power of God. 2. Guard the king, soldiers! 3. Confess the truth (true things), boy; it is better to be punished than to deceive. 4. Look-into these things carefully. 5. The general has promised rewards to the soldiers. The generals have promised rewards to the soldiers. 6. He has confessed the crime, and will be punished. 7. It is pleasant to call-to-mind past dangers. 8. Ye will call-to-mind these things, citizens, when I am cast forth (*fut. perf.*) from the city. 9. Have-pity-on the accused (man), judges! 10. He reverences the gods.

## EXERCISE XXXVI.

*Dependent Verbs of the Third Conjugation.*

**RULE 17.**—*Ūtor, fruor, vescor, fungor*, govern the Ablative Case. To these add *pōtior*, *I obtain-possession-of* (4 Conj.).

**A.**—1. Si morimur, corpus tantum moritur, non animus. 2. Dux maximam adeptus est gloriam. 3. Cives, libertatem adepti, summa laetitia fruuntur. 4. Virtutis viam semper sequemur. 5. Cura ut bene moriaris. 6. Audi multa, loquere pauca. 7. Per multos annos pace usi sunt. 8. Lacte, caseo, carne vescuntur. 9. Munere tuo bene fungere! 10. Aliquando oculi non funguntur munere suo.

1. By this death he has obtained the freedom of his country. 2. By this death he has obtained immortal glory. 3. It is a small-thing to enjoy life; it is a great-thing to discharge the duties of life. 4. Take-care that you always follow (*subj.*) the path (way) of virtue. 5. You will enjoy all these good (things). 6. When the body has died (*fut. perf.*), then indeed shall we enjoy true life. 7. The Britons used-to-feed (*imperfect*) on milk, flesh, (and) cheese. 8. He used the greatest freedom in his oration. 9. Use riches, do not abuse (them). 10. Follow us; we will protect you.

**B.**—1. Sapienter utimini tempore. 2. Clarissimus hic dux consulatu functus est. 3. Qui nimis cupit honores, raro eos adipiscitur. 4. Caesar duas legiones ad Labienum proficisci iubet, ipse in Menapiorum fines profectus est. 5. Bellum gerimus, ut pace fruamur. 6. Alexander immortalitatis gloriam adeptus est. 7. Augustus omnes cives benigne alloquebatur. 8. Eodem die, quo Dianae templum deflagravit, Alexander Magnus natus est. 9. Regulus omnes cruciatus Poenorum fortiter passus est. 10. Hannibal milites adhortatus est, ut reminiscerentur pristinae virtutis suae, neve (*and not*) liberorum obliviscerentur.

1. Thou hast wisely discharged thine office-of-consul. 2. Generals often exhort their soldiers to (ut) remember their wives and children. 3. Remember (your) 'ancient valour, soldiers! 4. Caesar orders these two legions to set out. 5. It is a small thing to speak kindly (benigne) to (one's) fellow-citizens. 6. That most famous (nobilis) battle was fought near the lake Trasimenus. 7. Caesar himself set out for (into) the territories of the Menapii. 8. Now we have peace; shortly we shall carry-on war. 9. Regulus endured bravely the utmost tortures. 10. On the same day (see Latin No. 8), on which that most famous battle was fought, the poet Euripides was born.

## EXERCISE XXXVII.

*Dependent Verbs of the Fourth Conjugation.*

1. Milites belli fortunam experiuntur. 2. Epaminondas nunquam mentiebatur. 3. Senes multa experti sunt in longa vita. 4. Magnos viros virtute metimur, non fortuna. 5. Voluptas blanditur sensibus

nostris. 6. Frons, oculi, vultus saepe mentiuntur. 7. Marquinius Superbus potitus est regno. 8. Puniemini, quod mentiti estis. 9. Bellum civile in Italia orsum est. 10. Patres bona sua cum liberis partiuntur.

1. We will try the fortune of war. 2. The Romans often tried the fortune of war. 3. It is extremely-base (*superl.*) to lie. 4. We will share our goods with our children. 5. There is no doubt that the enemy (*pl.*) have-obtained-possession-of the city. 6. Let us try our valour; let us obtain-possession-of the camp of the enemy. 7. There is no doubt that pleasure wins-upon our senses. 8. We ought to measure men by (their) virtue, not by (their) fortune. 9. Very many (people) measure all things by fortune. 10. The consuls will measure (out) lands to the soldiers.

### XXIX.—PRÉPOSITIONS.

Of the Prepositions some govern the Accusative Case, some the Ablative, and some either the Accusative or Ablative.

#### I. With the Accusative alone.

<b>Ad,</b>	<i>to.</i>	<b>Ob,</b>	<i>on account of.</i>
<b>Adversus,</b>	<i>towards, against.</i>	<b>Pōnēs,</b>	<i>in the power of.</i>
<b>Adversum,</b>		<b>Pēr,</b>	<i>through.</i>
<b>Antē,</b>	<i>before.</i>	<b>Pōnē,</b>	<i>behind.</i>
<b>Apūd,</b>	<i>at, near.</i>	<b>Post,</b>	<i>after.</i>
<b>Circā, circum,</b>	<i>around.</i>	<b>Praetēr,</b>	<i>beside.</i>
<b>Circitēr,</b>	<i>about.</i>	<b>Prōpē,</b>	<i>near.</i>
<b>Cis &amp; citrā,</b>	<i>on this side of.</i>	<b>Proptēr,</b>	<i>on account of.</i>
<b>Contrā,</b>	<i>against, contrary to.</i>	<b>Secundum,</b>	<i>{ following, in accord- ance with.</i>
<b>Ergā,</b>	<i>towards (only of the</i>	<b>Suprā,</b>	
<b>Extrā,</b>	<i>outside of. [feelings].</i>	<b>Trans,</b>	<i>across.</i>
<b>Infrā,</b>	<i>below.</i>	<b>Ultrā,</b>	<i>on the farther side of.</i>
<b>Intēr,</b>	<i>between, among.</i>	<b>Versūs,</b>	<i>towards (only of place or direction).</i>
<b>Intrā,</b>	<i>inside of, within.</i>		
<b>Juxtā,</b>	<i>near, hard by, next to.</i>		

Versūs is put after the word it governs.

#### EXERCISE XXXVIII.

1. Exercitus hostium ad portas urbis venit. 2. Multi homines contra naturam vivunt. 3. Iudices secundum leges hunc hominem puniverunt. 4. Multae aves ante hiemem in alias terras migrant. 5. Hac aestate extra urbem habitabimus. 6. Romani trans Rhenum multa oppida vastaverunt. 7. Hoc bellum intra paucos dies finitum erit. 8. Vir sapiens non propter metum legibus parebit. 9. Rhodanus primo occidentem versus fuit. 10. Equitatum praeter fluminis ripas contra hostem ducit.

1. Hannibal led (his) army to the gates of the city. 2. Who doubts that it is contrary-to virtue to lie? 3. All these things are in-the-power-of the consuls. 4. The general led his army towards the river. 5. Very many birds migrate into Britain in the summer. 6. The river Rhone flows through the lake. 7. A good judge will judge in-accordance-with the laws. 8. We (nos) shall dwell within the city, but you (vos) will depart into the country (agri). 9. The camp of Hannibal was near the walls of the city. 10. The nightingale migrates across the sea in winter.

## II. With the Ablative alone.

<b>A, ab, or abs,</b>	by or from.	<b>Ex or ē,</b>	out of.
<b>Absquē (rare),</b>	without.	<b>Præ,</b>	before, in comparison with.
<b>Cōram,</b>	in the presence of.	<b>Prō,</b>	before, for, on behalf of.
<b>Cum,</b>	with.	<b>Sinē,</b>	without.
<b>Dē,</b>	down from, from, concerning.	<b>Tēnūs,</b>	reaching to, as far as.

Tēnūs is put after the word it governs.

## EXERCISE XXXIX.

1. Magna cum voluptate auium cantum audivimus. 2. A Ciccone liber de senectute scriptus est. 3. Rhenus agrum Helvetium a Germanis dividit. 4. Romani ex Gallia trans Rhenum veniunt. 5. Pro salute reipublicae et pro liberis pugnabimus. 6. Magna gloria nemini venit sine virtute. 7. Coram parentibus dixi quae scripseram. 8. Incolae urbis de pace legatos ad Caesarem miserunt. 9. Cato in senectute prae ceteris floruit. 10. Alexander omnes terras Oceano tenus vicit.

1. The songs of birds are heard with pleasure by all. 2. Cicero has written a very beautiful book concerning old age. 3. The ocean separates Britain from Gaul. 4. He said these things in-the-presence-of all the soldiers. 5. The general marched (duco) his army out of the city. 6. Before all others Demosthenes and Cicero are the most renowned orators. 7. There is no true glory without virtue. 8. Along with thee (tecum\*) we will depart into another land. 9. We are fighting for (pro) our country, for our wives, for our children. 10. He has said this in-the-presence-of his father.

## III. With the Accusative or Ablative.

<b>In, in, into.</b>	<b>Subter, under, beneath.</b>
<b>Sūb, up to, under, beneath; of time, about.</b>	<b>Clām, secretly, without the knowledge of.</b>
<b>Sūper, over.</b>	

*In* and *Sub* with the *Acc.* answer to the question *Whither?* with the *Abl.*, the question *Where?*

\* *Mecum, tecum, secum, nobiscum, vobiscum*, are used instead of *cum me, cum te*, etc.

## EXERCISE XL.

1. Multi homines in varias terras itinera faciunt. 2. In magno flumine magni capiuntur pisces. 3. In hortum meum non venisti, in urbe autem fuisti. 4. Sub terra est magna rerum utrium multitudo. 5. Equitatus hostium sub noctem in castra venit. 6. Plurimae aves sub hiemem in alias terras volant. 7. Pompeius in Aegypto sub oculis uxoris et liberorum mortuus est. 8. Caesar super Indos proferet imperium. 9. Super tabernaculum Darii imago solis fulgebat. 10. Etiam sub marmore et auro habitat servitus.

1. We were coming into the city; you were dwelling in it. 2. The camp of Hannibal was under the walls of Rome. 3. We were walking in the garden. 4. It is not pleasant to all to dwell in the city. 5. Large fishes are not caught in a small river. 6. The nightingale does not always remain in the same lands. 7. They slay Pompey beneath the very (ipse) eyes of his wife. 8. The Romans will extend their empire beyond the boundaries of Europe. 9. Beneath the earth (there) are many beautiful things. 10. Towards (versus) winter these birds migrate into other lands.

## XXX.—ADVERBS.

Adverbs are formed from Adjectives and Participles, by means of the terminations *-ē* and *-tēr*. Adverbs derived from Adjectives and Participles of the First and Second Declensions end in *-ē*, as *doctē*, *learnedly*, from *doctus*. Adverbs derived from Adjectives and Participles of the Third Declension end in *-tēr*, as *fortitēr*, *bravely*, from *fortis*.

The *Comparative* of the Adverb is the same as the Neuter Nominative Singular of the Comparative Adjective, and consequently ends in *iūs*.

The *Superlative* of the Adverb is formed from the Superlative of the Adjective by changing the final syllable of the latter into *ē*.

ADJECTIVES.		ADVERBS.			
		Positive.		Comparative.	Superlative.
doctus,	learned.	doctē,	learnedly,	doctius	doctissimē
liber,	free.	liberē,	freely.	liberius	liberrimē
pulcher,	beautiful.	pulchrē,	beautifully.	pulchrius	pulcherrimē
fortis,	brave.	fortitēr,	bravely.	fortius	fortissimē
similis,	like.	similitēr,	alike.	similius	simillimē
acer,	keen.	acritēr,	keenly.	acrius	acerrimē
felix,	lucky.	felicitēr,	luckily.	felicus	felicissimē
prudens,	prudent.	prudētēr,	prudently.	prudētius	prudētissimē

## ADVERBS.

Adverbs are irregular in their Comparison, if the Adjectives from which they are derived are also irregular.

ADJECTIVES.		ADVERBS.			
		Positive.		Comp.	Sup.
bōnus,	good.	bēnē,	well.	mēlius	optīmē
mālus,	bad.	mālē,	badly, ill.	pējus	pessimē
multus,	much, many.	multum,	much.	plūs	plūrimum
magnus,	great.	magnopērē,	greatly.	māgis	maximē
prōpinquus,	near.	prōpē,	near, nearly.	prōpius	proximē
(prō)	before.	—		prius	primum & [primō

## EXERCISE XLI.

**A.**—1. Germani cum Romanis fortiter pugnaverunt. 2. Milites audacius resistere ac fortius pugnare incipiunt. 3. Miles hostibus fortissime restitit. 4. Galli Italiam longe lateque vastaverunt. 5. Cice. Roscium audacissime defendit. 6. Judicem ii timere debent, qui male egerunt. 7. Deus mundum sapientissime regit. 8. Leones facilius vincuntur quam tigres. 9. Nunquam jucundius viximus quam nunc. 10. Orationes Demosthenis ab Atheniensibus attentissime audiebantur.

1. Fight bravely, soldiers; ye are fighting for your country. 2. Now we shall live most delightfully. 3. The Germans fought very bravely. 4. Hear the speech more attentively, citizens! 5. The Gauls laid waste the lands (ager) of the Romans far and wide. 6. Ye have acted most wisely, citizens! 7. Who doubts that the soldiers have fought most bravely? 8. In this matter (res) Cicero acted most prudently. 9. The Gauls were not easily conquered. 10. Who doubts that God rules the world most wisely?

**B.**—1. Non satis est vivere, debemus bene vivere. 2. Multum prodest juventuti libros veterum legere. 3. Eo tempore Cicero maxime omnium reipublicae profuit. 4. Quis reipublicae plus quam Cicero profuit? 5. Orator est (he is) magis quam poeta. 6. Hannibal, dux Poenorum, proxime ad urbem accessit. 7. Primum Latinam linguam discere incipiam. 8. Propius ad portas urbis accessit Hannibal quam Hasdrubal. 9. Pessime omnium egisti! bonos cives perdidisti; improbis bene fecisti. 10. Prius linguam Latinam quam Graecam didicit.

1. It is easy to write; it is not easy to write well. 2. (He) who does not read attentively, reads ill. 3. It was difficult to approach near to the gates. 4. Hannibal approached very-near to (ad) the gates of Rome. 5. There is no doubt that you have acted very-ill. 6. You have acted worse (pejus) than all the others. 7. It is not a great thing to write much, it is a very-great thing to write well. 8. First of all (things), reverence the celestial gods. 9. We have lived most pleasantly. 10. There is no doubt that to write well is extremely-difficult.

## XXXI.—IRREGULAR VERBS.

## 1. Possum, pōtui, possē, —to be able; can.

[Possum is compounded of **pōt** (pōtis, able) and **sum**, I am, the *t* in *pot* being changed into *s* before another *s*.]

INDICATIVE.		SUBJUNCTIVE.		INDICATIVE.		SUBJUNCTIVE.	
1. <i>Present.</i>				4. <i>Perfect.</i>			
S. Pos-sum		Pos-sim		S. Pōt-ui		Pōt-uērim	
Pōt-ēs		Pos-sīs		Pōt-vistī		Pōt-uērīs	
Pōt-est		Pos-sit		Pōt-uīt		Pōt-uērīt	
P. Pos-sūmūs		Pos-simūs		P. Pōt-uīmūs		Pōt-uērimūs	
Pōt-estīs		Pos-sitīs		Pōt-uistīs		Pōt-uērītīs	
Pos-sunt		Pos-sint		Pōt-uērunt (ērē)		Pōt-uērint	
2. <i>Imperfect.</i>				5. <i>Pluperfect.</i>			
S. Pōt-eram		Pos-sem		S. Pōt-uēram		Pōt-uissem	
Pōt-erās		Pos-sēs		Pōt-uērās		Pōt-uisēs	
Pōt-erāt		Pos-sēt		Pōt-uērāt		Pōt-uisēt	
P. Pōt-erāmūs		Pos-sēmūs		P. Pōt-uērāmūs		Pōt-uisēmūs	
Pōt-erātīs		Pos-sētīs		Pōt-uērātīs		Pōt-uisētīs	
Pōt-erant		Pos-sent		Pōt-uērant		Pōt-uisent	
3. <i>Future-Simple.</i>				6. <i>Future-Perfect.</i>			
S. Pōt-ero	(wanting.)			S. Pōt-nēro	(wanting.)		
Pōt-erīs				Pōt-nērīs			
Pōt-erīt				Pōt-nērīt			
P. Pōt-erīmūs				P. Pōt-nērīmūs			
Pōt-erītīs				Pōt-nērītīs			
Pōt-erunt				Pōt-nērint			

## INFINITIVE.

Pres. and Imp.—Possē. Perf. and Plup.—Pōtuissē. Future—wanting.  
(Participle pōtens, used only as Adjective, powerful.)

## EXERCISE XLII.

1. Ego possum legere, tu potes scribere, soror potest acu pingere.  
2. Tyrannus animum sapientis infringere non poterat. 3. Cur heri nobiscum ambulare non poteras? 4. Cura, ut possis aequo animo vitam relinquere. 5. Nemo dubitat, quin milites urbem defendere possint. 6. Mores tyranni ei amicos parare non potuerunt. 7. Non dubitamus, quin urbs a civibus defendi potuerit. 8. Vix Caesar milites e castris educere potuerat, quum hostes impetum fecerunt. 9. Quid melius hominibus dari potuit quam ratio? 10. Virtutis splendor nunquam obscurari poterit.

1. We are all able to be serviceable to (our) friends. 2. You will not be able to be a friend to all. 3. Hannibal was not able to

obtain-possession-of the city. 4. Cornelia was able to train her sons most wisely. 5. No one doubted that the soldiers were able to defend the city. 6. We cannot all be kings; we can all be good citizens. 7. You will not be able to read Sallust easily: he is a difficult author. 8. Caesar was able to conquer his enemies; he was not able to conquer envy. 9. Those wicked men will not be able to leave life with even mind. 10. Restrain (thy) tongue; so thou wilt be able to restrain also thy temper (animus).

2. **Vōlo, vōlūi, vellē**,—*to be willing, to wish.*

3. **Nōlo, nōlūi, nollē**,—*to be unwilling, not to wish* [non vōlo].

4. **Mālo, māluī, mallē**,—*to be more willing, to prefer, to have rather* [māgis vōlo].

INDICATIVE

1. Present.

<i>Sing.</i>	<b>Vōlo</b>	<b>Nōlo</b>	<b>Mālo</b>
	<b>Vis</b>	<b>Nōn vīs</b>	<b>Māvis</b>
	<b>Vult</b>	<b>Nōn vult</b>	<b>Māvult</b>
<i>Plur.</i>	<b>Vōlūmūs</b>	<b>Nōlūmūs</b>	<b>Mālūmūs</b>
	<b>Vultīs</b>	<b>Nōn vultīs</b>	<b>Māvultīs</b>
	<b>Vōlunt</b>	<b>Nōlunt</b>	<b>Mālunt</b>

2. Imperfect.

<i>Sing.</i>	<b>Vōl-ēbam</b>	<b>Nōl-ēbam</b>	<b>Māl-ēbam</b>
	<b>Vōl-ēbās</b>	<b>Nōl-ēbās</b>	<b>Māl-ēbās</b>
	<b>Vōl-ēbāt</b>	<b>Nōl-ēbāt</b>	<b>Māl-ēbāt</b>
<i>Plur.</i>	<b>Vōl-ēbāmūs</b>	<b>Nōl-ēbāmūs</b>	<b>Māl-ēbāmūs</b>
	<b>Vōl-ēbātīs</b>	<b>Nōl-ēbātīs</b>	<b>Māl-ēbātīs</b>
	<b>Vōl-ēbant</b>	<b>Nōl-ēbant</b>	<b>Māl-ēbant</b>

3. Future-Simple.

<i>Sing.</i>	<b>Vōl-am</b>	<b>Nōl-am</b>	<b>Māl-am</b>
	<b>Vōl-ēs</b>	<b>Nōl-ēs</b>	<b>Māl-ēs</b>
	<b>Vōl-ēt</b>	<b>Nōl-ēt</b>	<b>Māl-ēt</b>
<i>Plur.</i>	<b>Vōl-ēmūs</b>	<b>Nōl-ēmūs</b>	<b>Māl-ēmūs</b>
	<b>Vōl-ētīs</b>	<b>Nōl-ētīs</b>	<b>Māl-ētīs</b>
	<b>Vōl-ent</b>	<b>Nōl-ent</b>	<b>Māl-ent</b>

4. Perfect.

<i>Sing.</i>	<b>Vōl-uī</b>	<b>Nōl-uī</b>	<b>Māl-uī</b>
	<b>Vōl-uistī</b>	<b>Nōl-uistī</b>	<b>Māl-uistī</b>
	<b>Vōl-uīt</b>	<b>Nōl-uīt</b>	<b>Māl-uīt</b>
<i>Plur.</i>	<b>Vōl-uīmūs</b>	<b>Nōl-uīmūs</b>	<b>Māl-uīmūs</b>
	<b>Vōl-uistīs</b>	<b>Nōl-uistīs</b>	<b>Māl-uistīs</b>
	<b>Vōl-uērunt or -uērē</b>	<b>Nōl-uērunt or -uērē</b>	<b>Māl-uērunt or -uērē</b>



5. *Pluperfect.*

<i>Sing.</i>	Völ-uëram Völ-uërās Völ-uërāt	Nöl-uëram Nöl-uërās Nöl-uërāt	Mäl-uëram Mäl-uërās Mäl-uërāt
<i>Plur.</i>	Völ-uëramūs Völ-uërātīs Völ-uërant	Nöl-uëramūs Nöl-uërātīs Nöl-uërant	Mäl-uëramūs Mäl-uërātīs Mäl-uërant

6. *Future-Perfect.*

<i>Sing.</i>	Völ-uëro Völ-uërīs Völ-uërīt	Nöl-uëro Nöl-uërīs Nöl-uërīt	Mäl-uëro Mäl-uërīs Mäl-uërīt
<i>Plur.</i>	Völ-uërimūs Völ-uëritīs Völ-uërint	Nöl-uërimūs Nöl-uëritīs Nöl-uërint	Mäl-uërimūs Mäl-uëritīs Mäl-uërint

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

1. *Present.*

<i>Sing.</i>	Vël-im Vël-is Vël-it	Nöl-im Nöl-is Nöl-it	Mäl-im Mäl-is Mäl-it
<i>Plur.</i>	Vël-imūs Vël-itīs Vël-int	Nöl-imūs Nöl-itīs Nöl-int	Mäl-imūs Mäl-itīs Mäl-int

2. *Imperfect.*

<i>Sing.</i>	Vel-lem Vel-lēs Vel-lēt	Nol-lem Nol-lēs Nol-lēt	Mal-lem Mal-lēs Mal-lēt
<i>Plur.</i>	Vel-lēmūs Vel-lētīs Vel-lent	Nol-lēmūs Nol-lētīs Nol-lent	Mal-lēmūs Mal-lētīs Mal-lent

3. *Perfect.*

<i>Sing.</i>	Völ-uërim Völ-uërīs Völ-uërīt	Nöl-uërim Nöl-uërīs Nöl-uërīt	Mäl-uërim Mäl-uërīs Mäl-uërīt
<i>Plur.</i>	Völ-uërimūs Völ-uëritīs Völ-uërint	Nöl-uërimūs Nöl-uëritīs Nöl-uërint	Mäl-uërimūs Mäl-uëritīs Mäl-uërint

4. *Pluperfect.*

<i>Sing.</i>	Völ-uissēm Völ-uissēs Völ-uissēt	Nöl-uissēm Nöl-uissēs Nöl-uissēt	Mäl-uissēm Mäl-uissēs Mäl-uissēt
<i>Plur.</i>	Völ-uissēmūs Völ-uissētīs Völ-uissent	Nöl-uissēmūs Nöl-uissētīs Nöl-uissent	Mäl-uissēmūs Mäl-uissētīs Mäl-uissent

IMPERATIVE.

*Present.*

(wanting.)	Nöl-i Nöl-itě	(wanting.)
------------	------------------	------------

*Future.*

(wanting.)	Nöl-ito Nöl-ito Nöl-itötě Nöl-unto	(wanting.)
------------	---	------------

• INFINITIVE.

*Present and Imperfect.*

Vel-lě	Nol-lě	Mal-lě
--------	--------	--------

*Perfect and Pluperfect.*

Völ-uissě	Nöl-uissě	Mäl-uissě
-----------	-----------	-----------

PRESENT PARTICIPLE.

Völ-ens	Nöl-ens	(wanting.)
---------	---------	------------

EXERCISE XLIII.

**A.**—1. Ego volo legere, tu vis scribere, frater vult pingere. 2. Ego domi sedere nolo, tu ambulare non vis. 3. Tu ambulare mavis quam domi sedere. 4. Soror saltare mavult quam ambulare. 5. Oro te, ut mecum ludere velis. 6. Dic, cur me comitari nolis. 7. Orabam te, ut mecum ludere velles. 8. Nesciebam, cur me comitari nolles. 9. Si beati esse volumus, sorte nostra contenti esse debemus. 10. Si vis amari, ama!

1. We do not wish to walk in the fields; we prefer to remain at home. 2. We wished to read, you wished to write, (our) brother wished to paint. 3. I knew-not (how) to dance; I preferred to write and to read. 4. I wished to read; but my sister wished to sing and to dance. 5. If you wish to be happy, imitate the examples of good men. 6. Alexander wished to extend his empire beyond the Indi. 7. We do not all obtain those-things which we wish. 8. I had-rather (*pres.*) fight (*inf.*) against enemies than against envy. 9. Pompey was unwilling to depart from the city. 10. I entreat you to (ut) be willing to accompany me.

**B.**—1. Ego tibi prodesse malo quam obesse. 2. Non dubito, quin mihi prodesse malis quam obesse. 3. Non dubitabam, quin prodesse mihi malles quam obesse. 4. Amicus maluit diligi quam metui. 5. Secundum naturam volent vivere. 6. Cato esse quam videri bonus malebat. 7. Boni esse mavultis quam nobiles et divites. 8. Pythagoras Apollini hostiam immolare noluit. 9. Nolite dolori nimis indulgere. 10. Amici eadem velle debent.

1. I prefer to be good (rather) than to seem (so). 2. Do not\* deceive; do not\* lie; those things (res) very greatly injure friendship. 3. Epaminondas was unwilling to lie. 4. You wish the same things which I (wish). 5. We had-rather (*pres.*) be (*inf.*) useful to our country than be (*inf.*) rich. 6. A good man will prefer to be loved (rather) than to be feared. 7. I had-rather be loved by true friends than be rich. 8. The ancient Romans sacrificed very many victims to the gods. 9. Pythagoras was unwilling to indulge anger: he preferred to restrain it. 10. Be unwilling to follow bad examples, my son!

\* Say, *Be unwilling to . . . .* Compare No. 9 of the Latin sentences.

5. Fēro, tūli, ferrē, lātum,—to bear, carry, endure.

### I. ACTIVE VOICE.

INDICATIVE. SUBJUNCTIVE.		INDICATIVE. SUBJUNCTIVE	
1. Present.		4. Perfect.	
S. Fēr-o	Fēr-am	S. Tūl-i	Tūl-erim
Fēr-s	Fēr-ās	Tūl-isti	Tūl-eris
Fēr-t	Fēr-āt	Tūl-it	Tūl-erit
P. Fēr-imūs	Fēr-amūs	P. Tūl-imūs	Tūl-erimūs
Fēr-tis	Fēr-ātis	Tūl-istis	Tūl-eritis
Fēr-unt	Fēr-ant	Tūl-erunt or ērē	Tūl-erint
2. Imperfect.		5. Pluperfect.	
S. Fēr-ēbam	Fēr-rem	S. Tūl-ēram	Tūl-isse
Fēr-ēbās	Fēr-rēs	Tūl-ērās	Tūl-issēs
Fēr-ēbāt	Fēr-rēt	Tūl-ērāt	Tūl-issēt
P. Fēr-ēbāmūs	Fēr-rēmūs	P. Tūl-ērāmūs	Tūl-issēmūs
Fēr-ēbātis	Fēr-rētis	Tūl-ērātis	Tūl-issētis
Fēr-ēbant	Fēr-rent	Tūl-ērant	Tūl-issent
3. Future-Simple.		6. Future-Perfect.	
S. Fēr-am	(wanting.)	S. Tūl-ēro	(wanting.)
Fēr-ēs		Tūl-eris	
Fēr-ēt		Tūl-erit	
P. Fēr-ēmūs		P. Tūl-erimūs	
Fēr-ētis		Tūl-eritis	
Fēr-ent		Tūl-erint	

IMPERATIVE.	
Present.	Fēr
	Fēr-tē
Future	Fēr-to
	Fēr-to
	Fēr-tōtē
	Fēr-unto
INFINITIVE.	
Pres. and Imp.	Fēr-rē
Perf. and Plup.	Tūl-issē
Future.	Lātūrūs essē

PARTICIPLES.	
Present.	Fēr-ens
Future.	Lātūrūs (a, um
SUPINES.	
	Lātum
	Lātū
GERUND.	
Gen.	Fēr-endi
	&c.

II. PASSIVE VOICE.

INDICATIVE.		SUBJUNCTIVE.		INDICATIVE.		SUBJUNCTIVE.	
1. <i>Present.</i>				4. <i>Perfect.</i>			
S.	Fēr-ōr	Fēr-ār		S.	Lātūs sum	Lātūs sim	
	Fēr-ris, -rē	Fēr-āris, -ārē			Lātūs es	Lātūs sis	
	Fēr-tūr	Fēr-ātūr			Lātūs est	Lātūs sit	
P.	Fēr-īmūr	Fēr-āmūr		P.	Lāti sumūs	Lāti simūs	
	Fēr-īmīnī	Fēr-āmīnī			Lāti estis	Lāti sitis	
	Fēr-untūr	Fēr-antūr			Lāti sunt	Lāti sint	
2. <i>Imperfect.</i>				5. <i>Pluperfect.</i>			
S.	Fēr-ēbār	Fēr-rēr.		S.	Lātūs eram	Lātūs essem	
	Fēr-ēbāris, -ārē	Fēr-rēris, -rērē			Lātūs erās	Lātūs esSES	
	Fēr-ēbātūr	Fēr-rētūr			Lātūs erāt	Lātūs essēt	
P.	Fēr-ēbāmūr	Fēr-rēmūr		P.	Lāti erāmūs	Lāti essēmūs	
	Fēr-ēbāmīnī	Fēr-rēmīnī			Lāti erātis	Lāti essētis	
	Fēr-ēbantūr	Fēr-rentūr			Lāti erant	Lāti essent	
3. <i>Future-Simple.</i>				6. <i>Future-Perfect.</i>			
S.	Fēr-ār	(wanting.)		S.	Lātūs ēro	(wanting.)	
	Fēr-ēris, -ērē				Lātūs ēris		
	Fēr-ētūr				Lātūs ērit		
P.	Fēr-ēmūr			P.	Lāti ērimūs		
	Fēr-ēmīnī				Lāti ēritis		
	Fēr-entūr				Lāti ērunt		
IMPERATIVE.				INFINITIVE.			
<i>Present.</i>				<i>Pres. and Imp. Fer-ri</i>			
				<i>Perf. and Plup. Lātūs esse</i>			
				<i>Future. Lātum iri</i>			
<i>Future.</i>				PARTICIPLES.			
				<i>Perfect. Lātūs (a, um)</i>			
				<i>Gerundive. Fēr-endūs (a, um)</i>			

The Compounds of fēro are conjugated in the same way, e. g. :

Affēro (ad, fero),	attūli,	allātum,	afferrē,	bring to.
Aufēro (ab, fero),	abstūli,	ablātum,	auferrē,	carry away.
Effēro (ex, fero),	extūli,	elātum,	efferrē,	carry out.
Infēro (in, fero),	intūli,	illātum,	inferrē,	carry into.
Offēro (ob, fero),	obtūli,	oblātum,	offerrē,	present.
Perfēro (per, fero),	pertūli,	perlātum,	perferrē,	bear through,
Praefēro (prae, fero),	praetūli,	praelātum,	praeferrē,	prefer. [endure.]
Rēfēro (re, fero),	{rētūli rettūli}	rēlātum,	rēferrē,	bring back.

EXERCISE XLIV.

1. Senectus affert prudentiam. 2. Laudo vos, quod misero atque inopi auxilium fertis. 3. Ferre laborem consuetudo docet. 4. Nihil  
PR. L. I. G

potest praeferrī virtuti. 5. Curabamus, ut vobis auxilium ferremus. 6. Rex curabat, ut inopibus civibus auxilium ferretur. 7. Non omnis ager, qui seritur, fert fruges. 8. Agricola paupertatis onus patienter tulit. 9. Fer patienter laborem. 10. Milites in itineribus multas aerumnas pertulerunt.

1. Socrates bore hardships most patiently. 2. Learn thou to bear well pleasure and pain. 3. Cato bore old age excellently-well (*superl.* of bene). 4. There is no doubt that old age brings many sorrows with it (*secum*). 5. Caesar ordered two cohorts to bring assistance to the cavalry. 6. I have learned to bring assistance to the wretched. 7. A sailor ought to be able to bear patiently the hardships of the sea. 8. A good man is able to bear with even mind the hardships of life. 9. Who can endure the discourse of this unlearned man? 10. The Romans knew (how) to bear with even mind the greatest disasters.

6. *Ēo, ivi or ii, Irē, itum,—to go.*

INDICATIVE.		SUBJUNCTIVE.		INDICATIVE.		SUBJUNCTIVE.	
1. <i>Present.</i>				4. <i>Perfect.</i>			
S. <i>Ē-o</i>	<i>E-am</i>			S. <i>Ē-vī or</i>	<i>Ī-i</i>	<i>Ī-vērim or</i>	<i>Ī-ērim</i>
<i>Ī-s</i>	<i>E-ās</i>			<i>Ī-vistī</i>	<i>&amp;c.</i>	<i>Ī-vērīs</i>	<i>&amp;c.</i>
<i>Ī-t</i>	<i>E-āt</i>			<i>Ī-vīt</i>	<i>&amp;c.</i>	<i>Ī-vērīt</i>	<i>&amp;c.</i>
P. <i>Ī-mūs</i>	<i>E-āmūs</i>			P. <i>Ī-vimūs</i>	<i>&amp;c.</i>	<i>Ī-vērimūs</i>	<i>&amp;c.</i>
<i>Ī-tis</i>	<i>E-ātīs</i>			<i>Ī-vistīs</i>	<i>&amp;c.</i>	<i>Ī-vērītīs</i>	<i>&amp;c.</i>
<i>E-unt</i>	<i>E-ant</i>			<i>Ī-vērunt</i>	<i>&amp;c.</i>	<i>Ī-vērīnt</i>	<i>&amp;c.</i>
				<i>or Ī-vērē</i>			
2. <i>Imperfect.</i>				5. <i>Pluperfect.</i>			
S. <i>Ī-bam</i>	<i>Ī-rem</i>			S. <i>Ī-vērem or</i>	<i>Ī-vissem, Ī-issem,</i>		
<i>Ī-bās</i>	<i>Ī-rēs</i>			<i>Ī-ēram</i>	<i>or Ī-assem</i>		
<i>Ī-bāt</i>	<i>Ī-rēt</i>			<i>Ī-vērās</i>	<i>&amp;c.</i>	<i>Ī-vissēs</i>	<i>&amp;c.</i>
P. <i>Ī-bāmūs</i>	<i>Ī-rēmūs</i>			<i>Ī-vērāt</i>	<i>&amp;c.</i>	<i>Ī-vissēt</i>	<i>&amp;c.</i>
<i>Ī-bātīs</i>	<i>Ī-rētīs</i>			P. <i>Ī-vērāmūs</i>	<i>&amp;c.</i>	<i>Ī-vissēmūs</i>	<i>&amp;c.</i>
<i>Ī-bant</i>	<i>Ī-rent</i>			<i>Ī-vērātīs</i>	<i>&amp;c.</i>	<i>Ī-vissētīs</i>	<i>&amp;c.</i>
				<i>Ī-vērānt</i>	<i>&amp;c.</i>	<i>Ī-vissent</i>	<i>&amp;c.</i>
3. <i>Future-Simple.</i>				6. <i>Future-Perfect.</i>			
S. <i>Ī-bo</i>	(wanting.)			S. <i>Ī-vēro or</i>	<i>Ī-ēro</i>	(wanting.)	
<i>Ī-bīs</i>				<i>Ī-vērīs</i>	<i>&amp;c.</i>		
<i>Ī-bīt</i>				<i>Ī-vērīt</i>	<i>&amp;c.</i>		
P. <i>Ī-bīmūs</i>				P. <i>Ī-vērimūs</i>	<i>&amp;c.</i>		
<i>Ī-bītīs</i>				<i>Ī-vērītīs</i>	<i>&amp;c.</i>		
<i>Ī-bunt</i>				<i>Ī-vērīnt</i>	<i>&amp;c.</i>		

IMPERATIVE.

*Present.*

*Ī-tē*

*Future.*

*Ī-to*  
*Ī-to*  
*Ī-tōtē*  
*Ē-unto*

INFINITIVE.		PARTICIPLES.	
<i>Pres. and Imp.</i>	<i>Ī-rē</i>	<i>Present.</i>	<i>Ī-ens (Gen. ē-untis)</i>
<i>Perf. and Plup.</i>	<i>Ī-vissē, ĩzē, or issē</i>	<i>Future.</i>	<i>Ī-tūrus (ā, um)</i>
<i>Future.</i>	<i>Ī-tūrus essē</i>		
GERUND.		SUPINE.	
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>Ē-undi, &amp;c.</i>		<i>Ī-tum</i>

The Compounds of *ēo* are conjugated in the same way  
The following are the principal:—

<i>āb-ēo, āb-īi, āb-ītum,</i>	<i>to go away.</i>
<i>ād-ēo, &amp;c.</i>	<i>to go to.</i>
<i>cū-ēo, &amp;c.</i>	<i>to join together.</i>
<i>ex-ēo, &amp;c.</i>	<i>to go out.</i>
<i>in-ēo, intrō-ēo, &amp;c.</i>	<i>to go into, enter.</i>
<i>intēr-ēo, &amp;c.</i>	<i>to perish.</i>
<i>ob-ēo, &amp;c.</i>	<i>to meet; esp. to meet death; to die.</i>
<i>pēr-ēo, &amp;c.</i>	<i>to perish.</i>
<i>prae-ēo, &amp;c.</i>	<i>to go before.</i>
<i>praetēr-ēo, &amp;c.</i>	<i>to pass by.</i>
<i>rēd-ēo, &amp;c.</i>	<i>to return.</i>
<i>sūb-ēo, &amp;c.</i>	<i>to go up to.</i>
<i>trans-ēo, &amp;c.</i>	<i>to cross over.</i>

N.B. In the Compounds the form *īi* is used in preference to *iri*.

#### EXERCISE XLV.

1. Ego abeo, tu ex itinere redis. 2. Post mortem corpus interit, animus nunquam interibit. 3. Quum animi nostri ex corporibus exierint, non interibunt. 4. In pugna atrocissima multi fortissimi milites perierunt. 5. Curare debemus, ne vitam ignave transeamus. 6. Milites e castris redeuntes occisi sunt. 7. Socrates aequo atque hilari animo diem supremum obiit. 8. Magna pars militum fame et frigore interiit. 9. Alpes nemo unquam ante Hannibalem cum exercitu transierat. 10. Alexander adire ad Jovis oraculum statuit.

1. Very many (persons) spend (transeo) their life indolently. 2. Let us go-out (*pres. subj.*) from the camp; let us return (*pres. subj.*) into the city. 3. Cæsar threw a bridge over the river, in order that his soldiers might cross on foot (*pedibus*). 4. A brave man will meet his last day with even mind. 5. Fifteen thousand of the Romans perished in that sanguinary battle. 6. We ought all to be able to meet (our) last day with even mind. 7. After the battle very many perished of hunger (*abl.*) and cold (*abl.*). 8. Let us go-to (*pres. subj.*) the temples of the gods. 9. I pass-by very many things in silence. 10. Italy is fortified by the Alps, (those) most lofty mountains, which an army will not easily cross-over.

7. *Fiō, factūs sum, fiēri*,—to become, or be made, to happen.

INDICATIVE.		SUBJUNCTIVE.		INDICATIVE.		SUBJUNCTIVE.	
1. Present.				3. Future.			
S. <i>Fi-o</i>		<i>Fi-am</i>		S. <i>Fi-am</i>			(wanting.)
<i>Fi-s</i>		<i>Fi-ās</i>		<i>Fi-ēs</i>			
<i>Fi-t or fi-t</i>		<i>Fi-āt</i>		<i>Fi-ēt</i>			
P. [ <i>Fi-mūs</i> ]		<i>Fi-āmūs</i>		P. <i>Fi-ēmūs</i>			
[ <i>Fi-tīs</i> ]		<i>Fi-ātīs</i>		<i>Fi-ētīs</i>			
<i>Fi-unt</i>		<i>Fi-ant</i>		<i>Fi-ent</i>			
2. Imperfect.				4. Perfect.			
S. <i>Fi-ēbam</i>		<i>Fi-ēram</i>		<i>Factūs sum, &amp;c.</i>		<i>Factūs sim, &amp;c.</i>	
<i>Fi-ēbās</i>		<i>Fi-ērās</i>					
<i>Fi-ēbāt</i>		<i>Fi-ērēt</i>		5. Pluperfect.			
P. <i>Fi-ēbāmūs</i>		<i>Fi-ērēmūs</i>		<i>Factūs ēram, &amp;c.</i>		<i>Factūs essem, &amp;c.</i>	
<i>Fi-ēbātīs</i>		<i>Fi-ērētīs</i>		6. Future-Perfect.			
<i>Fi-ēbant</i>		<i>Fi-erent</i>		<i>Factūs ēro, &amp;c.</i>		(wanting.)	

IMPERATIVE.		INFINITIVE.	
Present.	<i>Fi, Fi-tē</i>	Pres. and Imp.	<i>Fi-ēri</i>
PARTICIPLES.		Perf. and Plup.	<i>Factūs essē</i>
Perfect.	<i>Factūs (a, um)</i>	Future.	<i>Factum iri</i>
Gerundive.	<i>Faciendūs (a, um)</i>		

*Fiō* is used as the Passive of *faciō*.

#### EXERCISE XLVI.

1. Nemo fit casu bonus. 2. Ex amico inimicus, ex inimico amicus fieri potest. 3. Senectute prudentior fis. 4. Nemo ignaviā immortalis factus est. 5. Deus dixit: fiat, et factus est mundus. 6. Apud veteres Romanos ex agricolis fiebant consules. 7. Themistoclis consilio factum est, ut Athenienses urbem relinquerent. 8. Onus quod bene fertur leve fit. 9. Quod factum est, infectum fieri non potest. 10. Qui noxium adjuvabit, fiet socius culpae.

1. No one becomes altogether-base (*superl.*) by chance. 2. This heavy burden was made light by patience. 3. There is no doubt that the heaviest griefs become lighter by patience. 4. Bear these things through, citizens: (things) done cannot be made undone. 5. In time our soldiers will be made more daring. 6. Two consuls were appointed (made). 7. There is no doubt that the danger has become more severe with time. 8. In the winter (*hibernus, adj.*) time the days become shorter and the nights longer. 9. In the time of Philip, the Athenians had become the allies of the Romans. 10. Do not assist a guilty-person; in-that-way you will become a partner in (= of) his fault.

## . 8. NEUTER-PASSIVE VERBS.

Besides *Fio* several other Intransitive Verbs form their Perfect tenses after the manner of Passives. The principal of these are the following:—

<i>Audeo, ausus sum, audēre,</i>	<i>to dare, venture.</i>
<i>Fido, fīsus sum, fidēre (usu. with Dat.),</i>	<i>to trust.</i>
<i>Gaudeo, gāvīsus sum, gaudēre,</i>	<i>to rejoice.</i>
<i>Sōleo, sōlītus sum, sōlēre,</i>	<i>to be accustomed.</i>

So too *coeno*, *to sup or dine*, often takes *coenātus sum*, and *jūro*, *to swear*, *jurātus sum*, instead of *coenāvi*, *jurāvi*. Such Verbs are called Semi-Deponents or Neuter-Passives.

NOTE.—The Future Infinitive of these Verbs is formed as in the Active voice : *ausūrūs essē*, &c. •

## EXERCISE XLVII.

1. Nonnullae aves prope ad domicilia hominum accedere audent. 2. Optimus ille vir mori ausus est; non autem mentiri. 3. Canes solebant currentes bibere in flumine Nilo. 4. Jam coenati eramus, et in horto ambulabamus. 5. Maxime gavisi sunt cives quod urbs servata erat. 6. In has leges jurati estis, et debetis jusjurandum vestrum conservare. 7. Solitus est Solon aliquid quotidie addiscere. 8. Multum gavisi sunt Romani quod Poenos navali praelio vicerant. 9. Caesar fīsus est rebus suis. 10. Gavīsus est consul quod illum tam fidelem socium repererat.

1. The ancient Britons were accustomed to clothe themselves with skins. 2. Some animals are accustomed to dwell both (et) in the water and on (in) land. 3. The Helvetii were accustomed to receive hostages, not to give (them). 4. The Romans rejoiced when Cicero returned to the city. 5. The general trusted to himself. 6. Dare to die, citizens! 7. When you return (*fut-perf.*), we shall already have dined. 8. All the magistrates had sworn to (*in* with *acc.*) the laws. 9. We ought to rejoice because the war has been brought-to-an-end (*finis*). 10. The whole city rejoiced that (*quod*) the conspiracy had been discovered.

---



## XXXII.—IMPERSONAL VERBS.

Impersonal Verbs are such as cannot have a Personal subject (I, thou, he), and are used only in the Third Person Singular.

The following are the principal Impersonal Verbs :—

## I. VERBS WHICH DENOTE MENTAL STATES.

<b>Dēcēt, dēcūt, dēcērē,</b>	<i>it is seemly, it becomes.</i>
<b>Dēdēcēt, dēdēcūt, dēdēcārē,</b>	<i>it is unseemly, unbecom- [coming.]</i>
<b>Lībēt, lībūt &amp; lībītum est, lībērē,</b>	<i>it pleases.</i>
<b>Licēt, licūt &amp; licitum est, licērē,</b>	<i>it is lawful, it is allowed.</i>
<b>Liquēt, liquērē,</b>	<i>it is clear.</i>
<b>Misērēt or misērētūr, misērītum est, misērērē,</b>	<i>it excites pity.</i>
<b>Ōportēt, oportuīt, oportērē,</b>	<i>it behoves; (one) ought.</i>
<b>Pigēt, pigūt &amp; pigītum est, pigērē,</b>	<i>it vexes.</i>
<b>Plācēt, placūt or placītum est, placērē,</b>	<i>it pleases.</i>
<b>Poenītēt, poenītuīt, poenītērē,</b>	<i>it causes sorrow, repents.</i>
<b>Pūdēt, pūdūt or pūdītum est, pūdērē,</b>	<i>it shames.</i>
<b>Taedēt, (pertaesum est,) taedērē,</b>	<i>it disgusts, wearies.</i>

The Persons are expressed in the following way :—

## INDICATIVE.

<b>Present.</b>	<b>Pūdēt mē,</b>	<i>it shames me, or I am ashamed.</i>
	<b>Pūdēt tē,</b>	<i>it shames thee, or thou art ashamed.</i>
	<b>Pūdēt eum,</b>	<i>it shames him, or he is ashamed.</i>
	<b>Pūdēt nōs,</b>	<i>it shames us, or we are ashamed.</i>
	<b>Pūdēt vōs,</b>	<i>it shames you, or ye are ashamed.</i>
	<b>Pūdēt eōs,</b>	<i>it shames them, or they are ashamed.</i>
<b>Imperfect.</b>	<b>Pūdēbāt mē, tē, eum, nōs, vōs, eōs,</b>	<i>it shamed me, thee, him, us, &amp;c., or I, thou, he, we, &amp;c., were ashamed.</i>
<b>Fut. Stmp.</b>	<b>Pūdēbīt mē, tē, eum, nōs, vōs, eōs,</b>	<i>it will shame me, thee, him, us, &amp;c., or I, thou, he, we, &amp;c., will be ashamed.</i>
<b>Perfect.</b>	<b>Pūdūit mē, tē, eum, &amp;c.,</b>	<i>I, thou, he, &amp;c., was ashamed.</i>
<b>Pluperfect.</b>	<b>Pūdērāt mē, tē, eum, &amp;c.,</b>	<i>I, thou, he, &amp;c., had been ashamed.</i>
<b>Fut. Perf.</b>	<b>Pūdūrīt mē, tē, eum, &amp;c.,</b>	<i>I, thou, he, &amp;c., will have been ashamed.</i>

And similarly for the Subjunctive Mood. The Imperative is not found; the Pres. of the Subjunctive being used instead; as, *pudeat tē, let it shame thee, or be ashamed!*

All these Verbs govern the subject in the Accusative Case, except *libet, licet, liquet*, and *placet*, which govern the Dative: as, *mihi libet, it pleases me; mihi licet, it is lawful for me, I am at liberty, &c.*

## II. VERBS WHICH DENOTE ATMOSPHERICAL PHENOMENA.

<b>Grandināt, āvīt, ārē.</b>	<i>it hails.</i>
<b>Ningīt, ninxīt, ningērē,</b>	<i>it snows.</i>
<b>Plūit, plūit or plūvīt, pluērē,</b>	<i>it rains.</i>
<b>Tōnāt, tōnuīt, tōnārē,</b>	<i>it thunders.</i>
<b>Lūcescīt, (illuxīt,) lūcescērē,</b>	<i>it becomes light.</i>
<b>Vespērascīt, vespērāvīt, vespērascērē,</b>	<i>evening comes on.</i>

## EXERCISE XLVIII.

1. Me pudet pocnitetque stultitiae meae. 2. Homines infamiae suae neque pudet neque taedet. 3. Nos oportet hoc facere. 4. Nobis non licebit castris exire. 5. Me civitatis morum piget taedetque. 6. Oratorem irasci minime decet. 7. Non libet mihi deplorare vitam. 8. Placuit Caesari, ut ad Ariovistum legatos mitteret. 9. Pueros decet tacere. 10. Si forte tonuerat, veteres tribuere volebant Jovi.

1. That wicked man (*acc.*) repents not of his crime (*scelus*). 2. What does it behove us to do? 3. It behoved you to maintain the laws. 4. It-is-unbecoming-in a citizen to deceive his fellow-citizens. 5. I am vexed and disgusted at the folly (*gen.*) of these men. 6. In the winter it seldom thunders; in the summer it seldom snows. 7. Evening-is-coming-on; let us go-out-from the fields and let us return to the city. 8. On the same day it thundered, hailed, snowed, (and) rained. 9. You may (it is allowed to you) go forth (*inf.*) from the city, citizens! 10. Dare to be free, Romans! it is allowed to all to die!

## PART II.

## SOME SYNTACTICAL RULES.

The pupil should repeat the Syntactical Rules already given:—

Page				Page				Page			
RULE 1	..	..	4	RULE 7	..	..	13	RULE 13	..	..	48
" 2	..	..	4	" 8	..	21	(22)	" 14	..	..	48
" 3	..	..	4	" 9	..	25	(26)	" 15	..	..	62
" 4	..	..	4	" 10	..	..	36	" 16	..	..	70
" 5	..	..	6	" 11	..	..	46	" 17	..	..	71
" 6	..	..	10	" 12	..	..	48				

## XXXIII.—THE ABLATIVE AFTER THE COMPARATIVE.

RULE 18.—After Adjectives in the Comparative degree *quam* may be omitted and the Ablative used instead of the Nominative or Accusative: as, *vilius argentum est auro*, *silver is more common than gold*.

## EXERCISE XLIX.

1. *Vilius argentum est auro, virtutibus aurum.* 2. *Deus major et potentior est cunctis.* 3. *Nihil est majus amicitia, nihil jucundius.* 4. *Homini Deus nihil mente praestabilius dedit.* 5. *Ignoratio futurorum malorum utilior esse videtur scientia.* 6. *Elephanto nulla belluarum prudentior est.* 7. *Tullus Hostilius non solum proximo regi dissimilis, sed ferocior etiam Romulo fuit.* 8. *Humana omnia inferiora sunt virtute.* 9. *Phidiae simulacris nihil est perfectius.* 10. *Sol major et splendidior est luna.*

1. What is brighter than the sun? What more excellent than virtue? 2. Who doubts that the sun is larger than the moon? 3. The earth is greater than the moon; the sun than the earth. 4. Silver and gold are brighter than iron. 5. The elephant is more sagacious than all (other) beasts. 6. There is no doubt that the knowledge of these things is better than the ignorance (of them). 7. Caesar was more powerful than all (the rest of) the citizens.

8. What is commoner than water? yet (autem) what is more useful? 9. Hatred is better than pretence of friendship. 10. No-one of the Athenians is more renowned than Socrates.

### XXXIV.—ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE.

RULE 19.—When a subordinate clause has a different subject from the subject of the principal clause, the English Verb in the subordinate clause is in Latin expressed by a Substantive and Participle in the Ablative Case. This construction is called the ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE: as, *sōlū ortō, Rōmāni hostēs vidērunt*, when the sun had risen [lit. the sun having risen] the Romans saw the enemy.

There is no Perfect Participle Active in Latin, except in the case of Deponent Verbs. But the English Perfect Participle Active may often be expressed by means of the Latin Perfect Participle Passive, in the Ablative Absolute: as, *Caesār, expōsitō exercitū, ad hostēs contendit*, Caesar, having landed the army [lit. the army having been landed], hastens against the enemy.

N.B. The pupil must carefully observe that it is not the Subject of the principal sentence, but the Accusative after the Verb which becomes the Ablative Absolute

#### EXERCISE I.

A.—1. Sole oriente, nox fugit. 2. Recuperatā pace, artes efflorescunt. 3. Alpius superatis, Hannibal in Italiam venit. 4. Labitur actas, nobis non sentientibus. 5. Pompeius, ineunte vero, bellum suscepit. 6. His paratis rebus, Caesar milites naves conscendere jubet. 7. Cognito hostium adventu, Caesar naves ex portu educit. 8. Caesar, exposito exercitu, ad hostes contendet. 9. Nivibus solutis, intumescere solent flumina. 10. Solon et Pisis-tratus, Servio Tullio regnante, vixerunt.

NOTE.—In the two following Exercises, the words which are to be expressed by the Ablative Absolute are put in italics.

1. When the sun rises (the sun rising), all (things) become brighter. 2. When the moon had risen, the night was made brighter. 3. When Cato was slain, the commonwealth perished. 4. When these things were done, Caesar orders his soldiers to embark. 5. Caesar, after he had overcome the Gauls, waged war with Pompeius. 6. Having heard these things, he led his army to the banks of the river. 7. Whilst Servius Tullius was king (Serv. Tull. being-king), the city was fortified with a wall of stone. 8: Having learned these things, he hastened into the territory of the enemy.

9. *Having thrown a bridge across the river (the river being joined by a bridge)*, he orders the soldiers to cross. 10. *Having disembarked his soldiers*, he began to lay waste the lands of the enemy.

**B.**—1. Bello Punico confecto, triumphavit Scipio cum summo honore. 2. Dario apud Arbelam victo, Alexander Asia potitus est. 3. His literis perlectis, consul comprehendī eos jubet. 4. Conjuratōne detecta, jam servata esse videbatur civitas. 5. Senatu convocato, Cicero literas recitat quas de conjuratione acceperat. 6. His rebus paratis, contendit Caesar maximis itinēribus in agros Helvetiorum. 7. Delectu habito, consul ad exercitum statim proficiscitur. 8. Catoŕe mortuoq, nulla jam erat respublica. 9. Caesare occiso, gravissime vexata est respublica bellō civili. 10. Proelio commisso, conantur Galli aciem Romanorūm perrumpere.

1. *Having learned these things*, Caesar orders his soldiers to embark immediately. 2. *Having learned their (eorūm) plan*, Caesar led his army into the territories of Cassivellaunus. 3. Caesar, *having sent forward his cavalry*, ordered the legions immediately to follow up. 4. Our men, *having slain many of (ex) the enemy*, returned to the camp. 5. Cassivellaunus, *having heard of this disaster*, sends ambassadors to (ad) Caesar concerning peace. 6. *Having extended (his) empire as far as the Indus*, Alexander returned towards the west. 7. *When this war is finished*, we shall be able to enjoy peace. 8. *(With) you (for) our leader*, we shall be safe. 9. *When old age is attained (adeptus\*)*, our bodies become more feeble. 10. *Having slain many of (ex) the enemy*, he led his army into winter quarters.

\* *Adeptus*, with a few other Perf. Participles of Deponent Verbs, is used both in an Active and Passive sense.

### XXXV.—THE ACCUSATIVE EXPRESSING DURATION OR EXTENT OF TIME, DISTANCE, AND DIMENSION.

**RULE 20.**—The answers to the questions, *How long? How far? How high? How deep? How broad? How old?* are put in Latin in the Accusative case: as, *sex et viginti annos regnāvit*, he reigned twenty-six years; *aggērem lātum pēdēs trēcentōs*, altum pēdēs quinquāgintā extruxērunt, they heaped up a mound 300 feet broad and 50 feet high.

The Accusative, answering the question *How long?* is called the accusative of duration of time.

#### EXERCISE LI.

1. Romulus septem et triginta annos regnavit. 2. Quaedam bestiolae unum diem vivunt. 3. Augustus septem horas dormiebat. 4. Troja decem annos a Graecis obsessa est. 5. Cato annos quinque et octoginta natus excessit e vita. 6. Dionysius annos quinque et

viginti natus dominatum occupavit. 7. Turris pedes ducentos alta est. 8. Saguntini aggerem duxerunt trecentos pedes longum et viginti pedes altum. 9. Hanno tria passuum millia ab ipsa urbe castra posuit. 10. Campus Marathon abest ab oppido Atheniensium circiter millia passuum decem.

1. Tarquinius Superbus, the seventh king of the Romans, reigned twenty four years. 2. They build a wall fifty feet high, and eight feet broad. 3. The walls of Athens were distant about four thousand paces (*gen.*) from the sea. 4. The towers were about a hundred feet high. 5. Socrates was put-to-death, aged seventy years. 6. Plato lived eighty one years. 7. It is not enough to have lived many years; it behoves (us) to have lived (them) well. 8. The city (of) Troy was besieged ten years on-account-of (ob) a single (unus) woman. 9. Socrates lived seventy years. 10. Some men live a hundred years.

### XXXVI.—CONSTRUCTION OF THE NAMES OF TOWNS.

RULE 21.—In answer to the question *Whither?* names of towns and small islands are put in the Accusative case without prepositions: as, Consul Rōmam profectus est, *the Consul set out for Rome.*

In like manner are used, dōmum (*to one's*) home; rūs, *to the country.*

In answer to the question *Whence?* names of towns and small islands are put in the Ablative case without prepositions: as, Consul Rōmā Athēnās profectus est, *the Consul set out from Rome to Athens.*

In like manner are used, dōmō, *from home*; rurē, *from the country.*

### EXERCISE LII.

1. Curius primus Rōnam elephantos quattuor duxit. 2. Pompeius Luceriā proficiscitur Canusium. 3. Lycurgus Cretam profectus est, ibique perpetuum exilium egit. 4. Aeschines cessit Athenis et se Rhodum contulit. 5. Legati Atheniensium Lacedæmonem profecti sunt, ut auxilium contra Persas peterent. 6. Acceptis mandatis, Roscius cum Lucio Caesare Capuam pervenit. 7. Alcibiades, maximis rebus gestis, domum reversus est. 8. Leonidas cum trecentis iis, quos eduxerat Spartā, se opposuit hostibus. 9. Tiberius domo cessit, et se rus contulit. 10. Alexander, Dario apud Arbelam victo, Babylonem profectus est.

1. In the summer I shall set out for Venusia. 2. He departed from Athens and returned to Rome. 3. We will go to Crete, you to Rhodes, but the others will remain in the city. 4. Caesar having done these things (*ablative absolute*), returned immediately home. 5. He departed from Rōme and set out for Luceria. 6. I will

betake myself to Lacedaemon; there I shall be safe. 7. Do not set out to the country. 8. The consuls had already arrived at Luceria (*acc.*). 9. The ambassadors of the Carthaginians came to Rome in-order-to (ut) seek-for peace. 10. Pompeius having been slain (*abl. absol.*), Caesar was unwilling to return immediately to Rome.

**RULE 22.**—In answer to the question *Where?* names of towns and small islands are put in the Genitive case, if the Noun be of the First or Second Declension and Singular; in all other cases in the Ablative without a preposition; as,

Rōmae Consules, Athēnis Archontes, Carthāgīnē Suffētēs, sive iudices, quōtannis creābantur, *At Rome Consuls, at Athens Archons, at Carthage Suffetes, or judges, were elected annually.*

Dionysius Cōrīnthi puēros docebat, *Dionysius taught boys at Corinth.*

In like manner are used hūmī, *on the ground*; dōmī, *at home*; rūri, *in the country*.

#### EXERCISE LIII.

1. Pompeius hiemare Dyrrachii et Apolloniae constituerat. 2. Delphis Apollinis oraculum fuit. 3. Cōxon plurimum Cypri vixit, Timotheus Lesbi. 4. Multos annos domi nostrae vixit. 5. Alexander Magnus Babylone morbo consumptus est. 6. Dionysius multos annos Corinthi vixit. 7. Horatius Venusiae natus est. 8. Catilina humi jacet. 9. Talis (*such*) Romae Fabricius, qualis (*as*) Aristides Athenis fuit. 10. Lycurgus Cretae perpetuum exilium egit.

1. Marius and Cicero were born at Arpinum. 2. Atticus, a friend of Cicero, lived many years at Athens. 3. Your friend lived many years at my house. 4. Dionysius, having been driven-out-of Syracuse, used-to-teach (*imperf.*) boys at Corinth. 5. Many apples and pears lay on the ground. 6. At Cannae a sanguinary battle was fought (committo) between the Romans and Hannibal. 7. I had-rather dwell\* at home than in the country. 8. Tiberius retired from Rome and lived in exile at Rhodes. 9. Very many great generals, few poets were born at Rome. 10. At Lacedaemon, both (et) boys and girls were most carefully trained up (*imperf.*).

\* Say, I prefer to dwell.

#### XXXVII.—THE ACCUSATIVE CASE AND INFINITIVE.

**RULE 23.**—The Accusative Case and the Infinitive are used:

- I. After words of *saying, hearing, seeing, feeling, perceiving, thinking, knowing*: as, histōriā narrāt Rōmam ā Rōmūlō conditam esse, *history relates that Rome was founded by Romulus*; sententiās calēre īgnem,

nivem esse albam, dulcē (esse) mēl, *we perceive that fire is hot, that snow is white, that honey is sweet.*

- II. After such expressions as nōtum est, *it is known* ;  
 • justum est, *it is just* ; vērissimilē est, *it is probable* ;  
 constāt, *it is agreed, it is certain, &c.* : as, constāt  
 Rōmam ā Rōmūlō conditam esse; *it is agreed that Rome was founded by Romulus.*

## EXERCISE LIV.

A.—1. Equitatum Caesaris advenire videmus. 2. Thales aquam dixit esse initium rerum. 3. Solon republicam praemis et poenis contineri dixit. 4. Nemo negabit mundum a Deo conservari. 5. Vox quondam audita est, Romam a Gallis captum iri. 6. Epaminondas animadvertibat, totum exercitum propter ducum imprudentiam peritum esse. 7. Pollicebaris te venturum esse. 8. Helvetii polliciti sunt se Caesari obsides dāturos (esse). 9. Videmus aves auctumno in alias terras migrare. 10. Scio haec vera esse.

1. We know that the sun is larger than the moon. 2. Caesar learns that the enemy are-gathering-together all their forces. 3. The oracle of Delphi said that Socrates was (*infin. pres.*) the wisest of all men. 4. We see that the flowers blossom forth. 5. We know that the body perishes, but that the soul is immortal. 6. Socrates thought (*imperf.*) that knowledge was more excellent than all (other) things. 7. Who has not heard that the Romans were conquered by Hannibal at (*apud*) Cannae? 8. We see that all things are done by the wisdom of God. 9. We know that the sun is very-far distant (*absum*) from the earth. 10. We promise that we will be faithful to you.

B.—1. Credibile est hominum causā factum esse mundum. 2. Verum est amicitiam nisi inter bonos esse non posse. 3. Traditum est Homerum caecum fuisse. 4. Hannibalem in Asia mortuum esse constat. 5. Bestiis rationem deesse manifestum est. 6. Omnes cives legibus parere aequum est. 7. Certum est liberos a parentibus amari. 8. Sororem tuam hac aestate reversuram esse non verisimile est. 9. Constat Romanos eodem anno duas urbes florentissimas, Carthaginem et Corinthum, delevisse. 10. Memoriae proditum est, Latonam confugisse Delum atque ibi Apollinem Dianamque peperisse.

1. It is just that you (should) punish me. 2. It is probable that the stars are suns. 3. It is true that we have been conquered. 4. It has been handed down to us that Socrates was the wisest of all the Greeks. 5. It is manifest that the world was not made by chance. 6. It is agreed amongst all writers that Romulus was (*perf.*) the first king of the Romans. 7. It is manifest that you make-a-mistake. 8. It is handed down (*perf.*) to us by the poets that a woman was the cause of the Trojan war. 9. It is certain that the soul ought to obey reason. 10. It is manifest that we shall be conquered unless we remain (*fut.-perf.*) in the city.



## XXXVIII.—DIRECT QUESTIONS.

**RULE 24.**—Questions are usually put in Latin with the help of Interrogative words or particles: *as*, *Quid agis?* *What are you doing?* *Putas-nē?* *Do you think?* *Non-nē putas?* *Do you not think?*

The principal Interrogative particles are *nē*, *num*, *utrum*, *ān*. Of these *nē* is always written as an enclitic like the Conjunction *que*. *Utrum* and *ān* are used only when two alternatives are spoken of; and *an* always with the second alternative.

*Nē* does not need to be expressed by any English word, as *Visnē?* *Do you wish?* *Nonnē putas?* *Do you not think?*

*Utrum* . . . *ān* may be translated by *whether* . . . *or*; as *Utrum sōl ān lūnā mājōr est?* *Whether is the sun or the moon the greater?*

*Num* has a negative force, as *Num itā putas = You don't think so, do you?* and is to be used when the answer *No* is looked for.

## EXERCISE LV.

**A.**—1. Estne voluptas summum bonum? 2. Nonne fuit Socrates antiquorum sapientissimus? 3. Nonne sol longo major est quam luna? 4. Num ita audes dicere? 5. Utrum est aurum gravius an argentum? 6. Utrum Socrates an Plato sapientior fuit? 7. Suntne haec vera bona? 8. Num tu has res melius quam magister tuus intelligis? 9. Nonne omnes discere oportet vitam tranquillo animo relinquere? 10. Num putas argentum et aurum cariora esse virtute et prudentiā?

1. Are these things true? 2. Do you believe that pain is the greatest evil? 3. Was not (begin with *nonne*) Pythagoras a very great (*summus*) philosopher? 4. You don't think that I am a liar, do you? 5. Is gold more excellent than wisdom? (No.) 6. Are you wiser than (your) father? (No.) 7. Whether is iron or gold more useful? 8. Is not (begin with *nonne*) iron far more useful than gold? 9. Whether do you prefer this or that? 10. Is not (begin with *nonne*) the world governed by the Divine wisdom?

**B.**—1. Nonne urbs Roma a Gallis capta et direpta est? 2. Nonne omnes consentiunt Scipionem primum fuisse virum? 3. Num audes dicere haec benevolō animo facta esse? 4. Utrum Romae an ruri hibernis mensibus manere mavis? 5. Utrum est turpitudine omnium malorum maximum an non? 6. Utrum haec benevolō an malevolō animo fecisti? 7. Utrum Cato an Caesar tibi praestantior et clarior vir esse videtur? 8. Utrum esse an videri bonus mavis?

9. Num audes dicere, Lucreti, hæc casu facta esse? tunc ita credis?  
 10. Estne verum, quod nonnulli dicunt, animos ex aliis (*corporibus*) in alia corpora migrare?

1. Is it true that the sun is made-of-fire? 2. Is not Plato the most eloquent of philosophers? 3. Are not Livy and Sallust most elegant writers? 4. Does it not do good to all to read the works [books] of that (*ille*) most excellent writer? 5. Are you so foolish that (*ut*) you should believe all these things to have been made by chance? 6. Is the body mortal? Is the soul immortal? 7. Are not the books of Plato full of these subjects (*res*)? 8. Is Sallust or Livy (begin with *utrum*) the more elegant writer? Are you able to answer? 9. Does it (*num*) become a philosopher to lament over his life? Does it not behove him to act bravely? 10. Do all the philosophers agree concerning these subjects?

### XXXIX.—INDIRECT QUESTIONS.

RULE 25.—Indirect questions are those which are quoted as having been asked, or are dependent upon some word expressing doubt, uncertainty, or wonder, in the former part of the sentence: as, *Rogābo quid factum sit, I will ask what has been done*; *Mirum est quac, fuerit causā, It is strange what the reason may have been*; *Vidēbo num redierit, I will see whether he has returned*. The dependent verb is always put in the Subjunctive Mood.

RULE 26.—The Tense of the Verb in the Subjunctive Mood is determined by that of the verb in the former part of the sentence upon which it depends. (1.) If the verb in the former clause expresses *Present* or *Future Time*, the verb in the dependent clause is put in the Present or Perfect Tense Subjunctive. (2.) If the verb in the principal clause expresses *Past Time*, the verb in the dependent clause is put in the Imperfect or Pluperfect Tense Subjunctive.

#### *Present, Perfect, and Future Time.*

PRESENT.	Scio quid agās,	<i>I know what you are doing.</i>
	Scio quid egēris,	<i>I know what you have done.</i>
	Scio quid actūrus sis,	<i>I know what you are going to do.</i>
	Cognōvi quid agās,	<i>I have learnt what you are doing.</i>
	Cognōvi quid egēris,	<i>I have learnt what you have done.</i>
	Cognōvi quid actūrus sis,	<i>I have learnt what you are going to do.</i>

Audiam quid agās,	<i>I shall hear what you are doing.</i>
Audiam quid egēris,	<i>I shall hear what you have done.</i>
Audiam quid actūrus sis,	<i>I shall hear what you are going to do.</i>

*Past Time.*

IMPERF.	Sciēbam quid agērēs,	<i>I knew what you were doing.</i>
	Sciēbam quid egissēs,	<i>I knew what you had done.</i>
	Sciēbam quid actūrus essēs,	<i>I knew what you were going to do.</i>
PERFECT.	Cognōvī quid agērēs,	<i>I learnt what you were doing.</i>
	Cognōvī quid egissēs,	<i>I learnt what you had done.</i>
	Cognōvī quid actūrus essēs,	<i>I learnt what you were going to do.</i>
PLUP.	Cognōvēram quid agērēs,	<i>I had learnt what you were doing.</i>
	Cognōvēram quid egissēs,	<i>I had learnt what you had done.</i>
	Cognōvēram quid actūrus essēs,	<i>I had learnt what you were going to do.</i>

The same Rule is applicable to the sequence of Tenses in the Subjunctive Mood universally. See Exercises xxv., xxvi., xxvii., xxviii. (the Subjunctive Mood).

N.B. In single Indirect Questions *whether* is generally expressed by *num*, which then ceases to have a negative force. In double Indirect Questions it is expressed either by *utrum* or *-ne*.

## EXERCISE LVI.

N.B. In the following examples the Subjunctive must in English be rendered by the Indicative.

A.—1. Rogo quid agatis. 2. Rogavit quid agerent. 3. Rogavit quid egissent. 4. Roga tu quid acturi sint. 5. Nescio quare me ex civitate expuleritis. 6. Cognoscere non potuit quantae essent hostium copiae. 7. Speculabimur quot homines in urbem ineant et quot exeant. 8. Dic mihi, Catilina, cur patriam prodere volueris. 9. Dic mihi, Blaese, ubi corpus abjeceris. 10. Chaerephon ex oraculo quaesivit quis omnium Graecorum sapientissimus esset.

1. I will ask how great the forces of the enemy are. 2. Xenophon inquired of (ex) the oracle what it behoved him to do. 3. I wish to learn where the camp of the enemy is. 4. I do-not-know what it behoves me to do. 5. Tell me, my son, what you are going to do. 6. The son was unwilling to tell what he was going-to-do. 7. Count how many darts have been thrown (*conjecio*) into the tent. 8. I will inquire which-of-the-two has conquered. 9. Socrates used-to-inquire (*imperf.*) what was just, what unjust. 10. It is a great thing to know what things are just, what unjust.

B.—1. Quaeram num omnia feliciter evenierint. 2. Jussit eos speculari num hostes ex castris exirent. 3. Visam num adventent

hostes. 4. Subdifficilis est quaestio num unquam novi amici sint veteribus anteponeñdi? 5. Rogavit nonne haec improba et infamia essent? 6. Rogabo num credat omnia casu facta esse? 7. Quaesivit ex oraculo Croesus, utrum ipse an Cyrus superaturus esset. 8. Saepe-numero quacerebant antiqui philosophi mortalisme esset animus an immortalis. 9. Num dubium est casune an consilio factus sit mundus? 10. Plane incertum est vicinthe hostes an victi sint.

1. Inquire of (*ex*) him whether he knows these things. 2. It is doubtful whether these things are true. 3. It is uncertain whether (*utrum* or *ne*) he is a good man or a wicked (one). 4. It is doubtful whether he deserve praise (*laudemne*) or blame. 5. He asked whether the dead felt cold and hunger. 6. I know not whether you are sleeping or waking. 7. I doubt whether he will return (*subj.-pres.*) immediately. 8. He asked whether the city was very strongly fortified. 9. This I ask you, whether you were or not (*nonne*) that (*ille*) night in the house of M. Laeca? 10. Do you doubt whether it behoves a good citizen to side with his country in time of danger?

#### XL.—ADDITIONAL EXERCISES ON THE SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD. •

RULE 27.—Besides *ut*, *nē*, and *quā* (see Ex. xxv., &c.), the Conjunctions *quō*, *that*, and *quōmīnūs*, *that not*, are constructed with the Subjunctive Mood.

1. *Ūt* = *that*, *in order that*, *granting that*, is used to express either a *purpose* or a *consequence*; as, *ēo ūt spectem lūdōs*, *I am going in order that I may look at the games*; *accidit ūt nōn dōmī essem*, *it happened that I was not at home*.

2. *Nē* = *that not*, is used to express a *purpose*, but not a mere consequence: as, *Haec faciō nē mē inimicum tibi pūtes*, *these things I do that you may not think me your enemy*; but, *sēquitur ūt haec nōn verā sint*, *it follows that these things are not true*.

*Obs.* After verbs of *fearing*, *ut* has the meaning of *that not*, and *nē* of *that*: as, *timēo ūt dux militēs ē castris educāt*, *I fear that the general will not lead the soldiers out of the camp*; *timēo nō dux militēs ē castris educāt*, *I fear that the general will lead the soldiers out of the camp*.

3. *Quā* is used after *negative propositions and propositions expressing doubt*: as, *dīcs nullūs est, quā littēras scribam*,

*there is no day that I do not write a letter ; nōn dūbīto quīn vērūm dixērīs, I do not doubt you have spoken the truth. (See Ex. xxv., C, &c.)*

4. Quō is used for ūt ēō, and signifies *that thereby, in order that, so that* : haec lex dātā est, quō mālēfīcī dētērrēntūr, *this law was given (enacted) that thereby evil-doers might be deterred* ; portās oppidī obstruxit, quō facilius impētum hostium rētardārēt, *he barricaded the gates of the town in order that he might more easily retard the attack of the enemy.*

5. Quōmīnūs, *that not*, is used after verbs of *hindering, preventing, resisting, &c.*, and must be frequently translated in English by *from* with a verbal substantive : as, aetās nōs non impēdit quōmīnūs littēras tractēmus, *age does not prevent us from cultivating literature.*

## EXERCISE LVII.

• A.—1. Enitar ut in omnibus rebus tibi prosim. 2. Hoc te rogo atque oro, ne rempublicam deseras. 3. Contendit Caesar maximis itineribus in fines Nerviorum ut consilia eorum praeveniret. 4. Magnopere tibi, suadeo ne improbis illis hominibus confidas. 5. Accidit ut milites impransi essent quum signum datum est. 6. Milites cohortatus est ut fortiter castra defenderent. 7. Nonne omnes cives oportet eniti ut reipublicae prosint? 8. Accidit ut inter Labienum et hostes esset flumen praealtum. 9. Sequitur ut non possim tibi confidere. 10. Enitar ne possis mihi diffidere.

1. I will strive-hard to (*ut*) persuade him. 2. It follows that pleasure is not the highest good. 3. I entreat you to (*ut*) learn to bear patiently bad fortune. 4. We ought to strive-hard that we may be serviceable to (*our*) native-country. 5. The Helvetii determined to depart from their own territories, in order that they might obtain-possession-of all Gaul. 6. Does it not follow that these things are unjust? 7. So it came to pass (*fit*) that out of (*them*) all, no one returned to the city. 8. The Helvetii have been so trained (*instituto*) by their ancestors that they are accustomed to receive hostages, not to give them. 9. I will strive earnestly that you may be able to think me a friend. 10. The Carthaginians sent ambassadors to Rome to (*ut*) beg-for peace.

N.B. In future the pupil will be left to himself to discover when the English infinitive denotes a purpose, and must therefore be translated with *ut*.

B.—1. Constituit Caesar pontem in flumine Rheno facere, quo copias suas transduceret. 2. Milites cohortatus est quo mortem fortius obirent. 3. Quid obstat quominus moenia statim oppugne-

mus? 4. Nullo modo introire possum quin me videant. 5. Nullo modo exire potuit quin eum viderent. 6. Minimum abest quin sim miserrimus. 7. Dies fere nullus est quin Satrius domum meam ventitet. 8. Facere non possum quin tibi dolores meos enarrem. 9. Quis dubitat quin omnes oporteat patriae suae adesse? 10. Recusare non possum quin me comiteris.

1. He resolved to carry a wall round the camp that (*quo*)\* the army might be more secure (*tutus*). 2. He fortified the camp that he might the more easily keep off the enemy. 3. There is no day that I do not hear many wonderful things. 4. Who can doubt that Hannibal was a very great (*summus*) general? 5. There was nobody who did not (*quin*) rejoice greatly. 6. I cannot but hope that we shall be conquerors. 7. Nobody is so brave but (*quin*) he sometimes feels fear. 8. We are preparing arms, not that (*ut*) we may attack others, but that (*quo*) we may better defend our country. 9. There was nothing wanting that I should be very wretched. 10. Our soldiers could not go forth from the camp but (*quin*) they were overwhelmed with missiles.

\* **Quo** is used in preference to **ut** when there is a comparative in the clause which it introduces.

**C.**—1. Per Trebonium stetit quominus oppido potirentur. 2. Me infirmitas valetudinis tenuit quominus ad ludos venirem. 3. Hiems prohibuit quominus a te literas haberemus. 4. Bibulum deterruerunt quominus domo exiret. 5. Deterrent me latrones quominus in illam partem urbis eam. 6. Quid tibi obstat quominus nobiscum adesses? 7. Quis audebit miseros prohibere quominus fleant? 8. Legem brevem esse oportet quo facilius ab imperitis teneatur. 9. Unum vereor ne senatus Pompeium nolit dimittere. 10. Quis est quin cernat quanta vis sit in sensibus?

1. It was owing to you (*per te stetit*) that we did not obtain possession of the town. 2. No weakness of health shall prevent me *from* coming to you. 3. Nothing ought to deter a citizen *from* siding with his country in time of danger. 4. They attempted to deter Cato *from* appearing (*adsum*) in the forum. 5. Nothing shall prevent me *from* siding with you. 6. Nobody can prohibit us *from* worshipping God. 7. Nothing ought to deter children *from* obeying their parents. 8. I fear that we may be cast out of the city. 9. I fear that we may *not* be able to defend ourselves and our country. 10. I cannot but think that Caesar was the greatest of the Romans.

## XLI.—USE OF THE SUPINES.

RULE 28.—The Supine in *um* is used after verbs of motion: as, *Lacedaemoniī Agēsilaū bellātum in Asiā miserunt, the Lacedaemonians sent Agesilaus into Asia to make war.*

The Supine in *ū* is used after many adjectives: as, *fācilis, easy, difficilis, difficult, dulcis, sweet, &c., and with fās est, it is lawful, nefās est, it is unlawful, ōpūs est, it is necessary: as, rēs difficilis factū est, the thing is difficult to be done.*

## EXERCISE LVIII.

1. *Ingens hominum multitudo in urbem convenit, ludos publicos spectatum.* 2. *Veientes, pacem petitem, oratores Romam mittunt.* 3. *Aedui legatos ad Caesarem mittunt, rogatum auxilium.* 4. *Milites pabulatum et aquatum longius progressi erant.* 5. *Divitiacus Romam ad senatum venit, auxilium postulat.* 6. *Athenienses miserunt Delphos consultum, quidnam facerent de rebus suis.* 7. *Pira dulcia sunt gustatu.* 8. *Difficile dictu est.* 9. *Quod optimum factu videbitur, facies.* 10. *Nefas est dictu, miseram fuisse Fabii Maximi senectutem.*

1. We will set out for Rome, to look-at the games. 2. Croesus sent ambassadors to Delphi to inquire concerning the fortune of the war. 3. Chaerephon went-to (adeo) Delphi to ask who was (*subj.*) the wisest of men. 4. The general dismissed the soldiers to forage and get-water. 5. These things are very difficult to be done. 6. Very many things are easier to be said than done. 7. Old wines are not always sweet to taste (*supine in u*). 8. The Romans sent ambassadors to Carthage to inquire concerning Hannibal and the Saguntines. 9. It would be impious to say that the life of a good man can be miserable. 10. We have come to consult you (as to) what may be best to be done.

## XLII.—USE OF THE GERUND.

RULE 29.—The Gerund is a Neuter Verbal Noun, governing the same case as the Verb from which it comes. It corresponds to the English Verbal Nouns in *ing*; as *writing, walking.*

It is declined in the Singular only, and is not used in

the Nominative case, the Present of the Infinitive taking the place of the Nominative: as,

*Nom.* Lēgere pulchrā carminā suāve est, *reading (to read) beautiful poems is delightful.*

*Gen.* Ars puerōs educandī difficilis est, *the art of educating boys is difficult.*

*Dat.* Scribendō op̄eram dāt, *he devotes his care to writing.*

*Acc.* Nātūs ad agendum, *born for acting.*

*Abl.* Littērās tractandō mens acūtūr, *the wits are sharpened by dealing with letters.*

*Obs.* The Accusative Case of the Gerund is used only with Prepositions; otherwise the Present Infinitive is used: as, *disco natāre, I learn swimming.*

## EXERCISE LIX.

1. Saepissime pernicioſa est, plura habendi cupiditas. 2. Vehementer ardebat juvenis studio omnia cognoscendi et experiendi. 3. Quidam canes vendendi gratia comparantur. 4. Beate vivendi studiosi sumus omnes. 5. Aqua marina haud utilis est bibendo. 6. Mores puerorum se inter ludendum detegunt. 7. Hominis mens discendo et cogitando alitur. 8. Caesari dare jucundissimum erat. 9. Inter bibendum de variis rebus colloquebamur. 10. Quid potest esse jucundius quam inter ambulandum libere de variis rebus colloqui?

1. Very many persons burn with the desire of having more (*pl.*). 2. Epaminondas was eager-after hearing (*gen.*). 3. All are not zealous of living well. 4. He got together very many horses and (que) dogs for-the-sake-of hunting. 5. Do not attempt to obtain friends by flattering. 6. Do not attempt to preserve your life by lying. 7. Bodies are nourished by eating and drinking. 8. The soul is nourished by thinking (*cogito*), feeling, acting. 9. Conversing (*infin.*) about (de) these things is most delightful. 10. It is becoming in a youth (*acc.*) to burn with a zeal for knowledge (*gen. of gerund*).

## XLIII.—USE OF THE GERUNDIVE.

**RULE 30.**—The Gerundive is a Passive Verbal Adjective: as, *scribendus, a, um, to be written, necessary or fit to be written.*

The Gerundive may be conjugated with all the tenses of sum: as, *amandus sum, I am to be loved, or I ought to be loved; amandus eram, I was to be loved, or I ought to have been loved, &c.* This is called the *Passive Periphrastic Conjugation*.

When the Verb from which the Gerundive comes governs an Accusative Case, the Gerundive agrees with the Nomi-



native Case of its Noun: as, *scribenda est mihi epistola*, *a letter must be or ought to be written by me, or I must or ought to write a letter.*

The person by whom the thing is to be done is put in the Dative (see preceding example).

## EXERCISE LX.

1. Diligenter sunt emendandi puerorum mores. 2. Sapientia non solum paranda est nobis, sed etiam fruenda. 3. Prae omnibus rebus adhibenda est prudentia. 4. Agenda est omnibus aetas non sine periculis. 5. Ciceroni in arduis temporibus gerenda erat respublica. 6. Strenue nobis excolenda sunt corpus, mens, animus. 7. Habendus est delectus, comparandae sunt naves. 8. Non sunt ea nobis contemnenda; sunt diligentissime providenda. 9. Prae omnibus aliis observandi et colendi sunt pueris parentes. 10. Utrum amandi an tinendi reges sunt?

1. Virtue must be cultivated. 2. Who doubts that the gods are to be feared? 3. A parent (*dat.*) ought so (*ita*) to train-up (*his*) son that he may obey the laws of virtue. 4. Those persons are to be admired who have dared to die for (*pro*) their-country. 5. (We) must preserve the state; (we) must crush the conspiracy. 6. Virtue must not only be cultivated, but also loved. 7. These things must not be passed over by us (*dat.*). 8. Before (*prae*) all other things (*res*) the war must be carried on vigorously. 9. We (*dat.*) ought to read the orators and poets. 10. A man (*dat.*) should not despise death.

**RULE 31.**—But when the Verb from which the Gerundive comes is intransitive or governs any other Case than the Accusative, the Gerundive is used impersonally in the Nominative Case Singular Neuter. The Object is put in the case which the Verb governs, and the Subject in the Dative Case: as, *obtemporandum est nobis (dative) virtutis praeceptis (dative)*, *we must obey the lessons of virtue*: *cuique (dative) utendum est iudicio suo (ablative)*, *each one must use his own judgment.*

**N.B.** The Dative of the Agent is not always expressed.

## EXERCISE LXI.

1. Omnibus moriendum est. 2. Ita bellandum est ut pax peti videatur. 3. Mihi utendum est iudicio meo. 4. Nobis quoque ingrediendum est istuc quo pervenisti. 5. Ita nobis vivendum est ut ad mortem parati simus. 6. Non longius progrediendum est, commilitones, ne commeatibus nostris intercludamur. 7. Non

dubium est quin bono civi legibus sit obtemperandum. 8. Proficiscendum mihi erat illo ipso die. 9. Magnopere est curandum ne nobis consilium defuisse videatur. 10. Cognoscendum est quid de illo homine factum sit.

1. Must (we) not (nonne) all die? 2. We must die bravely, fellow-soldiers! 3. Boys ought to strive-hard to please their parents. 4. We must strive with (our) utmost zeal that the commonwealth may be preserved. 5. We must not believe all men in everything. 6. We must set out immediately. 7. It is greatly to be desired that the war may be brought-to-an-end. 8. We must take great care (see No. 9 above) *that* we are *not* (ne) shut off from all help. 9. What must we do, citizens? Which-of-the-two (*dat.*) should we trust? 10. We ought so to learn as (ut) not immediately to forget.

## EXERCISE LXII.

N.B. The Gerundive is employed more frequently than the Gerund. The Gerund is chiefly used where an ambiguity would be occasioned by the use of the Gerundive: as, *studium plura cognoscendi*, the desire of learning more, rather than *studium plurium cognoscendorum*, which would leave it doubtful whether *things* or *men* were meant.

1. Bellum suscepit Catilina reipublicae delendae causa. 2. Timotheus erat civitatis regendae peritus. 3. Consilium iniit Catilina urbis incendendae. 4. Conservandae libertatis gratia initio creabantur consules. 5. Tiberius quasi ad firmandam valetudinem in Campaniam concessit. 6. Occupatus sum in litteris scribendis. 7. Studiosi solent esse juvenes equorum canumque alendorum. 8. Consilium inierunt Brutus et Cassius libertatis recuperandae. 9. Hostes in spem venerant potiendorum castrorum. 10. Oculis probe affectus est ad suum munus fungendum.

1. The Roman youth (*pl.*) were trained-up for (ad) managing the commonwealth. 2. Cicero formed a plan for crushing the conspiracy (*gen.*). 3. Nature has endowed (*instruo*) the mind with senses prepared for perceiving objects (*res*). 4. He burned with the desire of destroying his country. 5. Those wicked men formed a design of slaying the consul. 6. Virtue is especially (*maxime*) discerned in despising pleasure. 7. The first book is written (*perf.*) on-the-subject-of (de) despising death. 8. The utmost pleasure is derived (*cipio*) from (ex) reading books. 9. A husbandman ought (*oportet*) to devote himself to cultivating his lands. 10. Cicero devoted himself with the utmost zeal to preserving the commonwealth.

## A SHORT SYNTAX.

### A RECAPITULATION OF THE RULES ALREADY GIVEN.

#### First Concord.

§ 1. A Verb agrees with its Nominative case in Number and Person: as, *puellā currit, the girl runs; puellae currunt, the girls run.*

#### Second Concord.

§ 2. An Adjective agrees with its Noun in Gender, Number, and Case: as, *servus timidus, a timid slave; puellā timidā, a timid girl; parvum oppidum, a small town.*

#### Third Concord.

§ 3. The Relative Pronoun agrees with the Antecedent in Gender, Number, and Person, but not in Case: as, *Felix est rex quem omnēs civēs laudant; Fortunate is the king whom all citizens praise.*

#### Apposition.

§ 4. When two Nouns refer to the same person or thing, they are put in the same case by *Apposition*: as, *Rōmulus, rex Rōmānōrum, Romulus, king of the Romans.*

#### Nominative Case.

§ 5. The Nominative case denotes the Subject.—When two Nouns in Latin are connected by *sum, fīo, vidēor, vōcōr*, and similar Verbs, they are put in the same case: as, *Britanniā est insulā, Britain is an island.*

#### Accusative Case.

§ 6. The Accusative case denotes the Object.—Transitive Verbs govern the Accusative: as, *āquilā alās habēt, the eagle has wings.*

§ 7. The answers to the questions, *How long? How far? How high? How deep? How broad? How old?* are put in the Accusative: as, *sex et viginti annōs regnāvīt, he reigned twenty-six years; aggērē lātum pēdēs trēcentōs, altum pēdēs quinquāgintā exstruxērunt, they heaped up a mound 300 feet broad and 50 feet high.*—The Accusative, answering the question *How long?* is called the Accusative of *duration of time.*

## Genitive Case.

§ 8. The latter of two Nouns is put in the Genitive when one is dependent upon the other: as, *Britanniā est insulā Eurōpae*, *Britain is an island of Europe.*

§ 9. Verbs signifying *to remember, to forget, to pity*, are commonly followed by the Genitive: as, *misērōrum hōinū misērōbimūr*, *we will pity the wretched men.*

## Dative Case.

§ 10. The Dative indicates the person who gains or receives anything: as, *magistēr cōlumbam pūērō dāt*, *the master gives a dove to the boy.*

## Ablative Case.

§ 11. The Ablative indicates—(1) The instrument or means by which something is done: as, *dōmīnūs hastā servum occidīt*, *the lord kills the slave with a spear*

(2) The time when something is done or takes place: as, *noctēs hiēmē longae sunt*, *the nights are long in winter.*

§ 12. But when the Ablative indicates the place where, it is used with the Preposition *in*, *in*: as, *hostēs in plānitē ērant*, *the enemies were in the plain.*

§ 13. *Ūtōr, frūōr, vescōr, fungōr*, govern the Ablative: as, *sāpiētēr ūtīmīnī tempōrē*, *use time wisely.*

§ 14. When a subordinate clause has a different subject from the subject of the principal clause, the English Verb in the subordinate clause is in Latin often expressed by a Substantive and Participle in the Ablative Case. This construction is called the ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE: as, *sōlē ortō, Rōmānī hostēs vidērunt*, *when the sun had risen [lit. the sun having risen], the Romans saw the enemy.* (See also p. 89.)

## Construction of the Names of Towns.

§ 15. In answer to the question *Whither?* names of towns and small islands are put in the Accusative without prepositions: as, *Consul Rōmā prōfectus est*, *the Consul set out for Rome.*

§ 16. In answer to the question *Whence?* names of towns and small islands are put in the Ablative without prepositions: as, *Consul Rōmā Athēnās prōfectus est*, *the Consul set out from Rome to Athens.*

§ 17. In answer to the question *Where?* names of towns and small islands are put in the Genitive, if the Noun be of the First or Second Declension and Singular; in all other cases in the Ablative without a preposition; as, *Rōmae Consūlēs, Athēnis Archontes, Carthāginē Suffētēs, sive jūdices, quōtannis, creābantūr, At Rōmē Consuls, at Athēns Archons, at Carthage Suffetes, or judges, were elected annually; Diōnysius Cōrinthi puērōs docēbāt, Dionysius taught boys at Corinth.*

### Comparative Degree.

§ 18. The English word *than* after the Comparative is translated by the Latin *quam*: as, *aestātē diēs longiorēs sunt quam noctēs, in summer the days are longer than the nights.*

§ 19. The Ablative is also used after the Comparative instead of *quam* with the Nominative or Accusative: as, *viliūs argentum est aurō, silver is more common than gold.*

### Indicative Mood.

§ 20. The Indicative Mood speaks of a thing without any condition or doubt: as, *aedifico dōmum, I am building a house; habitābo in eā, I shall dwell in it.*

### Subjunctive Mood.

§ 21. The Subjunctive Mood speaks of a thing with some condition or doubt: as, [*aedifico dōmum*] *ut in eā habitēm, [I am building a house] in order that I may dwell in it.* Here there is no doubt about the act of *building*; but whether the person building will *dwell* in the house or not is uncertain and depends upon circumstances.

§ 22. The Conjunctions *ut, that, in order that,* and *nē, that not,* are construed with the Subjunctive: as, *eo ut spectem ludōs, I am going in order that I may look at the games; haec facio nē me inimicum tibi putēs, these things I do that you may not think me your enemy.*

§ 23. The Conjunction *quā* is used with the Subjunctive after *negative propositions and propositions expressing doubt*: as, *dies nullus est, quā litteras scribam, there is no day that I do not write a letter; nō dubito quā verum dixeris, I do not doubt that you have spoken the truth.*

§ 24. The Conjunction *quō* is used for *ut* *eo* with the

Subjunctive, and signifies *that thereby, in order that, so that*: *haec lex datā est, quō mālēfici dēterrērentūr, this law was given (enacted) that thereby evil-doers might be deterred.*

§ 25. The Conjunction *quōmīnūs*, *that not*, is used with the Subjunctive after verbs of *hindering, preventing, resisting, &c.*, and must be frequently translated in English by *from* and a verbal substantive: as, *aetās nōs non impēdit quōmīnūs littērās tractēmūs, age does not prevent us from cultivating literature.*

§ 26. The Subjunctive is used in an Indirect Question; that is, a question quoted as having been asked, or one dependent upon some word expressing doubt, uncertainty, or wonder, in the former part of the sentence: as, *Rōgābo quid factum sit, I will ask what has been done*; *Mirum est quae fuerit causā, It is strange what the reason may have been*; *Vidēbo num rēdiērīt, I will see whether he has returned.*

NOTE.—The Rule for the sequence of tenses in the Subjunctive Mood is given on pp. 95, 96.

### The Infinitive.

§ 27. The latter of two verbs is put in the Infinitive: as, *Caesūr hostēs supērārē pōtest, Caesar is able to overcome the enemy.*

§ 28. The Accusative Case and the Infinitive are used:

I. After words of *saying, hearing, seeing, feeling, perceiving, thinking, knowing*: as, *histōriā narrāt Rōmam ā Rōmūlō conditam essē, history relates that Rome was founded by Romulus*: *sentimūs calērē ignem, nāvem essē albam, dulcē (essē) mēl, we perceive that fire is hot, that snow is white, that honey is sweet.*

II. After such expressions as *nōtum est, it is known*; *justum est, it is just*; *vērīsīmīlē est, it is probable*; *constāt, it is agreed, it is certain, &c.*: as, *constāt Rōmam ā Rōmūlō conditam essē, it is agreed that Rome was founded by Romulus.*

### The Supines.

§ 29. The Supine in *um* is used after verbs of motion: as, *Lācēdaemōniī Agēsīlāum bellātum in Āsiam mīsērunt, the Lacedaemonians sent Agesilaus into Asia to make war.*

The Supine in *ū* is used after many adjectives: as, *fācīlis,*

*easy*, *difficilis*, *difficult*, *dulcis*, *sweet*, &c., and with *fās est*, *it is lawful*, *nēfās est*, *it is unlawful*, *opus est*, *it is necessary*: as, *rēs difficilis factū est*, *the thing is difficult to be done*.

### The Gerund.

§ 30. The Gerund is a Neuter Verbal Noun, governing the same case as the Verb from which it comes. It corresponds to the English Verbal Nouns in *ing*; as *writing*, *walking*.

It is declined in the Singular only, and is not used in the Nominative case, the Present of the Infinitive taking the place of the Nominative: as,

<i>Nom.</i>	<i>Lēgere pulchrā carminā suāve est,</i>	<i>reading (to read) beautiful poems is delightful.</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>Ars puerōs educandī difficilis est,</i>	<i>the art of educating boys is difficult.</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>Scrībendō opēram dāt,</i>	<i>he devotes his care to writing.</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>Nātūs ad agendum,</i>	<i>born for acting.</i>
<i>Abf.</i>	<i>Littērās tractandō mēns acūtūr,</i>	<i>the wits are sharpened by dealing with letters.</i>

*Obs.* The Accusative Case of the Gerund is used only with Prepositions; otherwise the Present Infinitive is used: as, *disco natāre*, *I learn swimming*.

### The Gerundive.

§ 31. The Gerundive is a Passive Verbal Adjective: as, *scrībendus*, a, um, *to be written*, *necessary* or *fit to be written*.

When the Verb from which the Gerundive comes governs an Accusative Case, the Gerundive agrees with the Nominative Case of its Noun: as, *scrībenda est mihi epistolā*, *a letter must be or ought to be written by me*, or *I must or ought to write a letter*.

The person by whom the thing is *to be done* is put in the Dative (see preceding example).

§ 32. But when the Verb from which the Gerundive comes is intransitive or governs any other case than the Accusative, the Gerundive is used impersonally in the Nominative Case Singular Neuter. The Object is put in the case which the Verb governs, and the Subject in the Dative Case: as, *obtempērandum est nobis* (*dative*) *virtūtis praeceptis* (*dative*), *we must obey the lessons of virtue*: *cuiquo* (*dative*) *utendum est iudicio suo* (*ablative*), *each one must use his own judgment*.

N.B. The Dative of the Agent is not always expressed.

## APPENDIX.

## A. GREEK NOUNS.

## FIRST DECLENSION.

	Fem.	Masc.	Masc.
<i>Nom.</i>	Ēpītōm-ē, <i>abridg-</i> <i>ment.</i>	Aenē-ās (proper name)	Anchīs-ēs (proper name)
<i>Gen.</i>	Ēpītōm-ēs	Aenē-ae	Anchīs-ae
<i>Dat.</i>	Ēpītōm-ae	Aenē-ae	Anchīs-ae
<i>Acc.</i>	Ēpītōm-ēn	Aenē-an (am)	Anchīs-ēn (am)
<i>Voc.</i>	Ēpītōm-ē	Aenē-a	Anchīs-ē (ā, a)
<i>Abl.</i>	Ēpītōm-ē	Aenē-a	Anchīs-ē (ā).

## SECOND DECLENSION.

<i>Nom.</i>	Orphēus	Orphēus
<i>Gen.</i>	Orphēi, Orphēi	Orphēos
<i>Dat.</i>	Orphēō	Orphēi, Orphēi
<i>Acc.</i>	Orphēum	Orphēa
<i>Voc.</i>	Orphēu	Orphēu.
<i>Abl.</i>	Orphēō.	
<i>Nom.</i>	Dēlōs	Andrōgēōs
<i>Gen.</i>	Dēli	Andrōgēi, Andrōgēō
<i>Dat.</i>	Dēlō	Andrōgēō
<i>Acc.</i>	Dēlōn, Dēlum	Andrōgēōn, Andrōgēō
<i>Voc.</i>	Dēlē	Andrōgēōs
<i>Abl.</i>	Dēlō.	Andrōgēō.

*Obs.* Substantives in *ōs* sometimes form their Accusatives in *ōnā* : so, *Nom.* Athōs, *Acc.* Athōnā.

## THIRD DECLENSION.

	Sing.	Sing.
<i>Nom.</i>	Pēriclēś	Pallas
<i>Gen.</i>	Pēriclēś, Pēriclēi	Pallādīs, Pallādōs
<i>Dat.</i>	Pēriclēi	Pallādi
<i>Acc.</i>	Pēriclēś, Pēriclēā	Pallādem, Pallādā
<i>Voc.</i>	Pēriclēś, Pēriclēś, Pēriclē	Pallas
<i>Abl.</i>	Pēriclē.	Pallādē.
<i>Nom.</i>	Pārīs	Sapphō
<i>Gen.</i>	Pārīdīs, Pārīdōs	Sapphūs, Sapphōnīs
<i>Dat.</i>	Pārīdi	Sapphō, Sapphōnī
<i>Acc.</i>	Pārīdem, Pārīdā, Pārīn	Sapphō, Sapphōnem
<i>Voc.</i>	Pārī	Sapphō
<i>Abl.</i>	Pārīdē.	Sapphōnē.
	Sing.	Plur.
<i>Nom.</i>	chlāmýś, a cloak.	chlāmýdēs or -ēs
<i>Gen.</i>	chlāmýdīs, chlāmýdōs	chlāmýdum
<i>Dat.</i>	chlāmýdī	chlāmýdībūs
<i>Acc.</i>	chlāmýdem, chlāmýdā	chlāmýdēs, chlāmýdūs
<i>Abl.</i>	chlāmýdē.	chlāmýdībūs.



## B. THE GENDERS OF NOUNS.

## GENERAL RULES.

1. Males, Mountains, Months, Winds, and Rivers, are *Masculine*.

2. Females, Countries, Islands, Towns, and Trees, are *Feminine*.

3. Indeclinable Nouns, as, *fās*, *permitted by heaven*, *nōfās*, *not permitted by heaven*, *nīhil*, *nothing*, are *Neuter*.

4. Nouns denoting both the male and the female, as, *conjux*, *husband or wife*, are *Common*.

## SPECIAL RULES RELATING TO THE DECLENSIONS.

I. FIRST DECLENSION.—All Nouns of the First Declension are *Feminine*, unless they designate males: as, *nauta*, *a sailor*.

II. SECOND DECLENSION.—Nouns in *us* and *er* are *Masculine*; those in *um* are *Neuter*.

A few Nouns in *us* are *Feminine*: names of trees, as *mālus*, *an apple-tree*; also, *alvus*, *the belly*; *cōlus*, *a distaff*; *hūmus*, *the ground*; *vannus*, *a winnowing fan*; *arctus*, *the constellation Bear*; *carbāsus*, *fine flax*.

Three Nouns in *us* are *Neuter*: as, *vīrus*, *poison*; *vulgus*, *the multitude*; *pēlāgus*, *the (open) sea*.

III. THIRD DECLENSION.—Nouns of the Third Declension are *Masculine*, *Feminine*, or *Neuter*. Their gender must be learned by practice. But the following terminations indicate genders:—

1. *Masculine*.—(a) Nouns in *or* derived from verbs: as, *ām-or*, *love*, from *āmo*, *I love*.

(b) Nouns in *tor* derived from verbs: as, *āmā-tor*, *a lover*, from *āmo*, *I love*; *vic-tor*, *a conqueror*, from *vinco*, *I conquer*.

2. *Feminine*. — (a) Nouns in **io** and **tio** derived from verbs: as, audi-tio, *hearing*, from audio, *I hear*.
- (b) Nouns in **tūs** derived from Nouns: as, vir-tus, *manliness*, from vir, *a man*.
- (c) Nouns in **tās** derived from Nouns and Adjectives: as, cīvī-tas, *citizenship*, from cīvis, *a citizen*; crūdēlī-tas, *cruelty*, from crūdēlis, *cruel*.
- (d) Nouns in **tādo** derived from Adjectives: as, longī-tūdo, *length*, from longus, *long*.
- (e) Nouns in **trix** derived from Nouns in *tor*: as, vic-trix, *a female conqueror*, from vic-tor.
3. *Neuter*. — (a) Nouns in **e**: as, mārē, *the sea*.
- (b) Nouns in **mēn** derived from Verbs: as, flū-men, *a river*, from flu-ere, *to flow*.
- (c) Nouns in **ūs** and **ūr**: as, ōpus, *a work*; fulgur, *lightning*.

IV. **FOURTH DECLENSION**.—Nouns in **ūs** are Masculine: those in **u** are Neuter.

A few Nouns in **us** are Feminine: namely, tribus, *a tribe* (a division of the Roman people); ācus, *a needle*; porticus, *a portico*; dŏnus, *a house*; nŭrus, *a daughter-in-law*; ānus, *an old woman*; socrus, *a mother-in-law*; īdūs (*pl.*), *the Ides* (a division of the Roman month); mānus, *a hand*.

V. **FIFTH DECLENSION**.—All are Feminine except dīēs (*day*), which is either Masculine or Feminine in the Singular, and always Masculine in the Plural, and mēridiēs, *midday*, which is always Masculine.

## C. PERFECTS AND SUPINES.

## I. THE FIRST OR A CONJUGATION.

The Perfects and the Supines of the First Conjugation end regularly in *āvi*, *ātum* : *as*, *āmo*, *āmāvi*, *āmātum*, *āmāre*, *to love*. The following are exceptions :

Crēpo,	crēpui,	crēpītum,	crēpāre,	<i>to creak.</i>
Cūbo,	cūbui,	cūbītum,	cūbāre,	<i>to lie.</i>
Dōmo,	dōmui,	dōmītum,	dōmāre,	<i>to tame.</i>
Sōno, <sup>1</sup>	sōrui,	sōnītum,	sōnāre,	<i>to sound.</i>
Vēto,	vētui,	vētītum,	vētāre,	<i>to forbid.</i>
Tōno,	tōnui,	—	tōnāre,	<i>to thunder.</i>
Mico,	mīcui,	—	mīcāre,	<i>to glitter.</i>
Plico,	plīcui,	{plīcītum, plīcātum,}	plīcāre,	<i>to fold.</i>
Frīco,	frīcui,	frīctum,	frīcāre,	<i>to rub.</i>
Sēco, <sup>2</sup>	sēcui,	sectum,	sēcāre,	<i>to cut.</i>
Jūvo, <sup>3</sup>	jūvi,	jūtum,	jūvāre,	<i>to assist.</i>
Lāvo,	lāvi,	{lāvātum, lautum,}	lāvāre,	<i>to wash.</i>
Do,	dēdi,	dātum,	dāre,	<i>to give.</i>
Sto,	stēti,	statum,	stāre,	<i>to stand.</i>

NOTE.—*Future Participles*, as a general rule, are formed from the Supines ; but

- |         |     |            |
|---------|-----|------------|
| 1. Sōno | has | sōnātūrus. |
| 2. Sēco | „   | sēcātūrus. |
| 3. Jūvo | „   | jūvātūrus. |

## II. THE SECOND OR E CONJUGATION.

The Perfects and Supines of the Second Conjugation end regularly in *uī* and *itum* : *as*, *mōneo*, *mōnui*, *mōnītum*, *mōnēre*, *to advise*. The following are exceptions :—

1. Perfect—*ui*. Supine—*tum*.

Dōceo,	docui,	doctum,	dōcēre,	<i>to teach.</i>
Tēneo,	tēnui,	tentum,	tēnēre,	<i>to hold.</i>
Misceo,	miscui,	{mixtum, mistum,}	miscēre,	<i>to mix.</i>
Torreo,	torrui,	tostum,	torrēre,	<i>to roast.</i>
Sorbeo,	{sorbui, sorpsi,}		sorbēre,	<i>to suck up.</i>
Censeo,	censui,	censum,	censēre,	<i>to assess, think.</i>

2. Perfect—*ēvi*. Supine—*ētum*.

Dēleo,	dēlēvi,	dēlētum,	dēlēre,	<i>to blot out, destroy</i>
Fleo,	flēvi,	flētum,	flēre,	<i>to weep.</i>
Neo,	nēvi,	nētum,	nēre,	<i>to spin.</i>
{Pleo, only in composition.				
{Compleo,	complēvi,	complētum,	complēre,	<i>to fill up.</i>
Aboleo,	abolēvi,	abolētum,	abolēre,	<i>to abolish.</i>

3. Perfect—i (di). Supine—sum.

Prandeo,	prandi,	pransum,	prāndēre,	to breakfast.
Sēdeo,	sēdi,	sessum,	sēdēre,	to sit.
Video,	vidi,	visum,	vidēre,	to see.
Strideo,	stridi,	—	stridēre,	to creak.

With Reduplication in the Perfect Tenses.

Mordeo,	mōmordi,	morsum,	mōrdēre,	to bite.
Pendeo,	pēpendi,	pensum,	pendēre,	to hang.
Spondeo,	spōpondi,	sponsum,	spondēre,	to promise.
Tondeo,	tōtondi,	tonsum,	tondēre,	to shear.

4. Perfect—i (vi). Supine—tum.

Cāveo,	cāvi,	cautum,	cāvēre,	to guard oneself.
Fāveo,	fāvi,	fautum,	fāvēre,	to favour.
Fōveo,	fōvi,	fōtum,	fōvēre,	to cherish.
Mōveo,	mōvi,	mōtum,	mōvēre,	to move.
Vōveo,	vōvi,	vōtum,	vōvēre,	to vow.

Without Supine.

Pāveo,	pāvi,	—	pāvēre,	to fear.
Ferveo,	{ fervi,	—	fervēre,	to boil.
	{ ferui,			
Connīveo,	{ connīvi,	—	connīvēre,	to wink.
	{ connixi,			

5. Perfect—si. Supine—tum and sum.

Augeo,	auxi,	auctum,	augēre,	to increase.
Indulgeo,	indulsi,	indultum,	indulgēre,	to indulge.
Torqueo,	torsi,	tortum,	torquēre,	to twist.
Ardeo,	arsī,	arsum,	ardēre,	to blaze.
Haereo,	haesi,	haesum,	haerēre,	to stick.
Jūleo,	jussi,	jussum,	jūbēre,	to order.
Māneo,	mansi,	mansum,	mānēre,	to remain.
Mulceo,	mulsi,	mulsum,	mulcēre,	to stroke.
Mulgeo,	mulsi,	mulctum,	mulgēre,	to milk.
Rideo,	risi,	risum,	ridēre,	to laugh.
Suādeo,	suāsi,	suāsum,	suādēre,	to advise.
Tergeo,	tersi,	tersum,	tergēre,	to wipe.
Algeo,	alsi,	—	algēre,	} to be cold.
Frigeo,	frixi,	—	frigēre,	
Fulgeo,	fulsi,	—	fulgēre,	to shine.
Lūceo,	luxi,	—	lūcēre,	to be light.
Lūgeo,	luxi,	—	lūgēre,	to grieve.
Turgeo,	(tursi),	—	turgēre,	to swell.
Urgeo,	ursi,	—	urgēre,	to press.

6. The Neuter-Passives.

Audeo,	ausus sum,	—	audēre,	to dare.
Gaudeo,	gāvisus sum,	—	gaudēre,	to rejoice.
Sōleo,	sōlītus sum,	—	sōlēre,	to be accustomed.

### III. THE THIRD (CONSONANT OR U) CONJUGATION.

Verbs of the Third Conjugation are best classified according to the final consonants of the Stems.

#### 1. Verbs the Stems of which end in the Labials B, P.

(a). Perfect—*si*. Supine—*tum*.

NOTE.—*B* becomes *p* before *s* and *t*.

Carpō,	carpsi,	carptum,	carpēre,	to pluck.
Glūbo,	glupsi,	gluptum,	glūbēre,	to peel.
Nūbo,	nupsi,	nuptum,	nūbēre,	to marry.
Rēpo,	repsi,	reptum,	rēpēre,	to creep.
Scalpo,	scalpsi,	scalptum,	scalpēre,	to scratch.
Scribo,	scripsi,	scriptum,	scribēre,	to write.
Serpo,	serpsi,	serptum,	serpēre,	to crawl.

(b). Perfect—*ni*. Supine—*tum* or *itum*.

{ Cumbo,	incubui,	incubitum,	incumbēre,	to lie upon.
{ Incumbō,	strēpui,	strēpitum,	strēpēre,	to make a noise.

(c). Perfect—*i*. Supine—*tum* or wanting.

Rumpō,	rūpi,	ruptum,	rumpēre,	to burst.
Bībo,	bībi,	—	bībēre,	to drink.
Lambo,	lambi,	—	lambēre,	to lick.
Scābo,	scābi,	—	scābēre,	to scratch.

#### 2. Verbs the Stems of which end in the Gutturals C, G, H, Q, X.

(a). Perfect—*si*. Supine—*tum*.

NOTE.—*Cs* and *gs* become *x*. *G* becomes *s* before *t*.

Dīco,	dixi,	dictum,	dicēre,	to say.
Dūco,	duxī,	ductum,	dūcēre,	to lead.
Cōquo,	coxi,	coctum,	cōquēre,	to cook.
Cingo,	cinxi,	cinctum,	cingēre,	to surround.
{ (Fligo, not used,	—	—	—	to strike.)
{ Affligo,	affixi,	afflictum,	affligēre,	to strike to the ground.
Frigo,	frixi,	{ frictum, }	frigēre,	to parch, to fry.
		{ frixum, }		
Jungo,	junxi,	junctum,	jungēre,	to join.
Lingo,	linxi,	linctum,	lingēre,	to lick.
{ (Mungo, not used.)	—	—	—	—
{ Œmungo,	œmunxi,	œmunctum,	œmungēre,	to blow the nose.
Plango,	planxi,	plactum,	plangēre,	to beat.

Rēgo,	rexī,	rectum,	rēgēre,	to direct, rule.
Sugo,	suxī,	suctum,	sūgēre,	to suck.
Tēgo,	toxī,	tegtum,	tēgēre,	to cover.
{Tingo,	{tinxi,	{tinctum,	{tingēre,	{to dip.
{Tinguo,			{tinguēre,	
{Ungo,	{unxi,	{unctum,	{ungēre,	{to anoint.
{Unguo,			{unguēre,	
(Stinguo, not used.)				
{Exstinguo,	{exstinxi,	exstinctum,	exstinguēre,	to extinguish.
Trāho,	traxī,	tractum,	trāhēre,	to drag.
Vēho,	vexī,	vectum,	vēhēre,	to carry, to draw.
Ango,	anxi,		angēre,	to vex.
Ningit,	ninxit,		ningēre,	to snow.
Fingo,	finxi,	fictum,	figēre,	to form, to invent.
Pingo,	pinxi,	pictum,	pingēre,	to paint.
Stringo,	strinxī,	strictum,	stringēre,	to grasp.

## (b). Perfect—si. Supine—sum and xum.

Mergo,	mersi,	mersum,	mergēre,	to sink.
Spargo,	sparsi,	sparsum,	spargēre,	to scatter.
Tergo,	tersi,	tersum,	tergēre,	to wipe.
Figo,	fixi,	fixum,	figēre,	to fix.
Flecto,	flexi,	flexum,	flectēre,	to bend.
Necto,	nexi,	nexum,	nectēre,	to bind.
Pecto,	pexi,	pexum,	pectēre,	to comb.
Plocto,	plexi,	plexum,	plectēre,	to plait.

## (c). Perfect—i (with Reduplication). Supine—sum and tum.

Pango,	pēpīgi,	pactum,	pangēre,	to fix.
Parco,	pēperci,	parsum,	parcēre,	to spare.
Pungo,	pūpīgi,	punctum,	pungēre,	to prick.
Taugo,	tētīgi,	tactum,	tangēre,	to touch.
Disco,	dīdīci,		discēre,	to learn.
Posco,	pōposci,		poscēre,	to demand.

## (d). Perfect—i (with vowel of Stem lengthened).

Ago,	ēgi,	actum,	āgēre,	to do.
Frango,	frēgi,	fractum,	frangēre,	to break.
Ico,	īci,	ictum,	icēre,	to strike.
Lēgo,	lēgi,	lectum,	lēgēre,	to read.
Linquo,	līqui,	(lictum),	linquēre,	to leave.
Vinco,	vīci,	victum,	vincēre,	to conquer.

## (e). Perfect—ui. Supine—tum.

Texo,	texui,	textum,	texēre,	to weave.
-------	--------	---------	---------	-----------

## (f). Guttural Stem disguised.

Fluo,	fluxi,	fluctum,	fluēre,	to flow.
Struo,	struxi,	structum,	struēre,	to pile up.
Vivo,	vixi,	victum,	vivēre,	to live.

3. *Verbs the Stems of which end in the Dentals D, T.*(a). *Perfect—si. Supine—tum.*

NOTE.—*D* and *t* are generally dropped before *s*, but are sometimes changed into *s*.

Claudo,	clausi,	clausum,	claudere,	to shut.
Divido,	divisi,	divisum,	dividere,	to divide.
Laedo,	laesi,	laesum,	laedere,	to strike, to injure.
Ludo,	lusi,	lusum,	ludere,	to play.
Plaudo,	plausi,	plausum,	plaudere,	to clap the hands.
Rado,	rasi,	rasum,	radere,	to scrape.
Rodo,	rosi,	rosum,	rodere,	to gnaw.
Trudo,	trusi,	trusum,	trudere,	to thrust.
{Vado,	[compounds, -si, -sum]		vadere,	to go.
{Invado,	invasi,	invasum,	invadere,	to go against.
Cedo,	cessi,	cessum,	cedere,	to yield.
Mitto,	misi,	missum,	mittere,	to send.

(b). *Perfect with Reduplication.*

Cado,	cecidi,	casum,	cadere,	to fall.
Caedo,	cecidit,	caesum,	caedere,	to strike, to cut.
Pendo,	pependi,	pensum,	pendere,	to hang, to weigh.
Tendo,	tetendi,	{tensum,	{tendere,	to stretch.
		{tentum,		
Tundo,	tutudi,	{tunsium,	{tundere,	to beat.
		{tusum,		
Do in compos.,				to put.
Abdo,	abdidi,	abdutum,	abdere,	to put away, to hide.
Addo,	addidi,	additum,	addere,	to put to, to add.
Condo,	condidi,	conditum,	condere,	to put together, to build, conceal.
Dedo,	dedidi,	deditum,	dedere,	to put down, to surrender.
Edo,	edidi,	editum,	edere,	to put forth, to publish.
Indo,	indidi,	inditum,	indere,	to put on.
Perdo,	perdidi,	perditum,	perdere,	to ruin, to lose.
Prædo,	prædidi,	præditum,	prædere,	to betray.
Reddo,	reddidi,	redditum,	reddere,	to put back, to restore.
Subdo,	subdidi,	subditum,	subdere,	to put under, to substitute.
Trado,	tradidi,	traditum,	tradere,	to put across, to deliver.
Crædo,	crædidi,	cræditum,	crædere,	to believe.
Vendo,	vendidi,	venditum,	vendere,	to sell.
Sisto,	stiti,	statum,	sistere,	to cause to stand.

(c). *Perfect—i. Supine—sum.*

Accendo,	accendi,	accensum,	accendere,	to set on fire.
Cudo,	cudi,		cudere,	to hammer.

Ēdo,	ēdi,	ēsūm,	ēdere,	to eat.
(Fendo, not used,				to strike.)
Dēfendo,	dēfendi,	dēfensūm,	dēfendere,	to ward off, to de-
				fend.
Offendo,	offendi,	offensūm,	offendere,	to strike against, to
				assault.
Fundo,	fūdi,	fūsūm,	fundere,	to pour.
Incendo,	incendi,	incensūm,	incendere,	to burn.
Mando,	mandi (rare),	mansūm,	mandere,	to chew.
Pando,	pandi,	{ pansum or passum,	pandere,	to spread.
Præhendo,	præhendi,	præhensūm,	præhendere,	to grasp.
Scando,	scandi,	scansūm,	scandere,	to climb.
{ Strido,	stridi,		stridere,	to creak.
{ Strideo,				
Verto,	verti,	versūm,	vertere,	to turn.
Fido,	fidi,	fissūm,	findere,	to cleave.
Scindo,	scidi,	scissūm,	scindere,	to tear.
{ Frendo,		frossūm,	frendere,	to gnash the teeth.
{ Frendeo,		frēsūm,		

## (d). Other Forms.

Mæto,	messui,	messum,	mætære,	to move.
Pæto,	{ pētivi or pētī,	{ pētītum,	pætære,	to seek.
Sido,	{ sēdi (rarely) sidi,	—	sidære,	to sit down.
Sterto,	stertui,	—	stertære,	to snore.
Fido,	fisis sum,	—	fidære,	to trust.

## 4. Verbs the Stems of which end in the Liquids L, M, N.

## (a). Perfect—ui. Supine—ītum or tum.

Ālo,	ālui,	{ ālītum or altum,	ālære,	to nourish.
Cōlo,	cōlui,	cultum,	cōlære,	to till.
Consūlo,	consūlui,	consultum,	consulære,	to consult.
Mōlo,	mōlui,	mōlītum,	mōlære,	to grind.
Occūlo,	occūlui,	occultum,	occilære,	to conceal.
Vōlo,	vōlui,	—	velle,	to wish.
Frēmō,	frēmui,	frēmītum,	frēmære,	to roar.
Gēmō,	gēmui,	gēmītum,	gēmære,	to groan.
Trēmō,	trēmui,	—	trēmære,	to tremble.
Vōmō,	vōmui,	vōmītum,	vōmære,	to vomit.
Gigno,	gēnui,	gēnītum,	gignære,	to produce.

## (b). Perfect with Reduplication.

Fallo,	fēfelli,	falsum,	fallære,	to deceive.
Pello,	pēpāli,	pulsum,	pellære,	to drive.
Cāno,	cēcīni,	cantum,	cānære,	to sing.



(c). *Perfect—si. Supine—tum.*

Cōmo,	comp̄si,	comptum,	cōm̄ere,	to adorn.
Dēmo,	demp̄si,	demptum,	dēm̄ere,	to take away.
Prōmo,	prom̄psi,	promptum,	prōm̄ere,	to take forth.
Sūmo,	sum̄psi,	sumptum,	sūm̄ere,	to take up.
Temno,	temp̄si,	temptum,	temn̄ere,	to despise.

(d). *Other Forms.*

Percello,	perc̄t̄li,	perculsum,	percell̄ere,	to strike down.
Psallo,	psalli,	—	psall̄ere,	to play on a stringed instrument.
Vello,	velli,	vulsum,	vell̄ere,	to pluck.
Tollo,	sust̄t̄li,	sublātum,	toll̄ere,	to raise up.
Ēmo,	ēm̄i,	emptum,	ēm̄ere,	to take or buy.
Prēmo,	pressi,	pressum,	prēm̄ere,	to press.
Līno,	lēvi or livi	lītum,	līn̄ere,	to smear.
Sīno,	sīvi,	sītum,	sīn̄ere,	to permit.

5. *Verbs the Stems of which end in the Liquid R.*

Cerno,	crēvi,	crētum,	cern̄ere,	to sift, to divide.
Serno,	sprēvi,	sprētum,	spern̄ere,	to despise.
Sterno,	strāvi,	strātum,	stern̄ere,	to strew.
Gērō,	gessi,	gestum,	gēr̄ere,	to carry.
Ūro,	ussi,	ustum,	ūr̄ere,	to burn.
Curro,	cūcurri,	cursum,	curr̄ere,	to run.
Fēro,	tūli,	lātum,	fer̄ere,	to bear, carry.
Quaero,	quaesīvi,	quaesītum,	quaer̄ere,	to seek.
Sēro,	sēvui,	sertum,	sēr̄ere,	to put in rows, to plait.
Sēro,	sēvi,	sātum,	sēr̄ere,	to sow.
Tēro,	trīvi,	tritum,	tēr̄ere,	to rub.
Verro,	verri,	versum,	verr̄ere,	to sweep.

6. *Verbs the Stems of which end in S, X.*

Depso,	depsui,	depstum,	deps̄ere,	to knead.
Pinso,	{ pinsui,	{ pinsītum,	{ pins̄ere,	to pound.
	{ pinsi,	{ pinsum,		
Piso,	—	ps̄stum,	pis̄ere,	to pound.
Viso,	visi,	—	vis̄ere,	to visit.
Pōno,	pōsui,	pōsītum,	pōn̄ere,	to place.
Arcesso,	arcessīvi,	arcessītum,	arcess̄ere,	to send for.
Cāpesso,	cāpessīvi,	cāpessītum,	cāpess̄ere,	to take in hand.
Fācesso,	fācessi,	fācessītum,	fācess̄ere,	to make, to cause.
Lācesso,	lācessīvi,	lācessītum,	lācess̄ere,	to provoke.

7. *Verbs the Stems of which end in U, V.**Perfect—i. Supine—tum.*

Ācuo,	ācui,	ācūtum,	ācūere,	to sharpen.
Arguo,	argui,	argūtum,	argūere,	to prove.

Imbuo,	imbui,	imbūtum,	imbuere,	to soak.
Induo,	indui,	indūtum,	induere,	to put on.
Exuo,	exui,	exūtum,	exuere,	to put off.
Mīnuo,	mīnui,	rnīnūtum,	mīnuere,	to lessen.
Rūo,*	ruī,	rūtum,	ruere,	to rush.
Spuo,	spui,	spūtum,	spuere,	to spit.
Stātuo,	stātui,	stātūtum,	stātuere,	to set up.
Suo,	sui,	sūtum,	suere,	to sew.
Tribuo,	tribui,	tribūtum,	tribuere,	to distribute
Lāvo,	lāvi,	lautum,	lāvère,*	to wash.
(See also 1 Conj.)		lōtum,		
Solvo,	solvi,	sōlūtum,	solvère,	to loosen.
Volvo,	volvi,	vōlūtum,	volvère,	to roll.
Congruo,	congrui,	—	congruere,	to agree.
Luo,†	lui,	—	luere,	to atone.
(Nuo,				to nod.)
Abnuo,	abnui,	—	abnuere,	to refuse.
Annuo,	annui,	—	annuere,	to assent.
Mētno,	mētui,	—	mētuere,	to fear.
Pluit,	{ pluit or pluuit }	—	pluere,	to rain.
Sternuo,	sternui,	—	sternuere,	to sneeze.
rūo, Fut. Participle ruitūrus. † lūo, Fut. Participle luitūrus.				

### 8. Verbs the Present Tense of which ends in *sco*.

Verbs ending in *sco* are *Inceptive*; that is, denote the beginning of an action. They are formed from Verbs, Nouns, and Adjectives. Inceptives formed from Verbs have the Perfects of the Verbs from which they are derived, but usually no Supines as, *incālesco*, *incālui*, *incālescere*, to grow warm, from *cāleo*, *cālui*, *cālere*, to be warm. The following Inceptives are exceptions and have Supines:—

Ābōlesco,*	ābōlēvi,	ābōlītum,	ābōlescere,	to grow out of use.
Ādōlesco,*	ādōlēvī,	ādultum,	ādōlescere,	to grow up.
Exōlesco,*	exōlēvi,	exōlītum,	exōlescere,	to grow old.
Cōalesco,	cōālui,	cōālītum,	cōālescere,	to grow together.
(ālo)				
Concūpisco,	concūpīvi,	concūpītum,	concūpiscere,	to desire.
(cūpio)				
Convālesco,	convālui,	convālītum,	convālescere,	to grow strong.
(vāleo)				
Exardesco,	exarsi,	exarsum,	exardescere,	to take fire.
(ardeo)				
Invētērasco,	invētērāvi,	invētērātum,	invētērascere,	to grow old.
(invētēro)				
Rēvivisco,	rēvixi,	rēvictum,	rēviviscere,	to come to life again.
(vīvo)				
Scisco,	scīvi,	scitum,	sciscere,	to seek to know, to enact
(scio)				

\* Ābōlesco, ādōlesco, exōlesco are formed from an obsolete verb ōleo, to grow.

Inceptives formed from Nouns and Adjectives have either Perfects in *ui* and no Supines, or they want both Perfects and Supines: as,

Consenesco, consēnui, (sēnex)	—	consēnescēre, to grow old.
Ingrāvesco, (grāvis)	—	ingrāvescēre, to grow heavy.
Jūvenesco, (jūvenis).	—	jūvescēre, to grow young.
Mātūresco, mātūrui, (mātūrus).	—	mātūrescēre, to grow ripe.
Obmūtesco, obmūtui, (mūtus)	—	obmūtescēre, to grow dumb.

The following Verbs in *sco* are derived from forms no longer in use, and are therefore treated as underived Verbs:—

Cresco,	crētum,	crescēre,	to grow.
Glisco,		gliscēre,	to swell.
Hisco,		hiscēre,	to gape.
Nosco,* nōvi,	nōtum,	nōscēre,	to learn, to know.
Pasco, pāvi,	pastum,	pascēre,	to feed.
Quiesco, quiēvi,	quiētum,	quiescēre,	to become quiet.
Suesco, suēvi,	suētum,	suescēre,	to grow accustomed.

\* The Present signifies *I learn*; the Perfect, *I know*; the Pluperfect, *I knew*.

### THIRD CONJUGATION WITH I IN CERTAIN TENSES.

Cāpio, cēpi,	captum,	cāpēre,	to take.
Fācio, fēci,	factum,	fācēre,	to make.
Jācio, jēci,	jactum,	jācēre,	to throw.
Fūgio, fūgi,	fūgitum,	fūgēre,	to flee.
Fōdio, fōdi,	fossum,	fōdēre,	to dig.
Rāpio, rāpui,	raptum,	rāpēre,	to seize.
Pārio,* pēperi,	partum,	pārēre,	to bring forth.
Quātio, (no perfect),	quassum,	quātēre,	to shake.
Cūpio, cūpivi,	cūpitum,	cūpēre,	to desire.
Sāpio, sāpivi,	—	sāpēre,	to taste.
Lūcio, spēcio,		lūcēre, spēcēre,	{ to draw, } rare, except { entice } in compo- { to look } sition.

\* pārio, *Future Participle* pāritūrus.

### IV. THE FOURTH OR I CONJUGATION.

In the Fourth Conjugation the Perfect ends regularly in *ivi*; the Supine in *itum*: as, audio, audivi, auditum, audire, to hear. The following are exceptions:—

Farcio, farsī,	{ fartum, (farctum) }	farcire,	to cram.
Fulcio, fulsi,	fultum,	fuleire,	to prop.

Haurio,	hausi,	haustum,	haurire,	to draw (water).
Sancio,		{ sancitum or • sanctum, }	sancire,	to ratify.
Sarcio,*	sarsi,	sartum,	sarcire,	to patch.
Sentio,	sensi,	sensum,	sentire,	to feel, to think.
Sæpio,	sæpsi,	sæptum,	sæpire,	to fence in.
Vincio,	vixi,	vinetum,	vincire,	to bind.
Ëo,	ivi,	itum,	ire,	to go.
Sãlio,*	{ sãlui or sãlii, }	saltum,	sãlire,	to leap.
Sépelio,	sépeliui,	sépultum,	sépélire,	to bury.
Vénio,	vēni,	ventum,	vénire,	to come.
Amicio,	{ amiceui or amici,	amictum,	amícire,	to clothe.
Apèrio.	apèrui,	apertum,	apérire,	to open.
Opèrio,	opèrui,	opertum,	opérire,	to cover.

## V. DEPONENTS.

1. In the First Conjugation the Perfects and Supines are all regular.

## 2. Second Conjugation :

Fáteor,	fassus sum,	fátèri,	to confess.
Líceor,	licitus sum,	licèri,*	to bid at a sale.
Médeor,	—	médèri,	to heal.
Méreor,	méritus sum,	mèrèri,	to earn, to deserve
Misèreor,	{ misérítus sum or miserus sum,	{ misèrèri,	to take pity on.
Pollicéor,	pollicítus sum,	pollicèri,	to promise.
Reor,	rátus sum,	rèri,	to think.
Tueor,	tuítus sum,	tuèri,	to protect.
Véreor,	vérítus sum;	vérèri,	to fear.

## 3. Third Conjugation :

Fruor,*	{ frúctus sum or fructus sum,	{ frui,	to enjoy.
Fungor,	functus sum,	fungi,	to perform.
Grádior,	gressus sum,	grádi,	to step.
Lábor,	lapsus sum,	lābi,	to slip.
Liquor,	—	líqui,	to melt.
Lóquor,	locútus sum,	lòqui,	to speak.
Mórior,†	mortuus sum,	móri,	to die.
Nitor,	{ nixus sum or nisus sum,	{ niti,	to strain.
Pätior,	passus sum,	päti,	to suffer.
Quëror,	questus sum,	quèri,	to complain.

\* fruor, Future Participle frukturus.

† mörior, " " mönriturus.

Ringor, *		ringi,	to show the teeth. to enarl.
Sëquor,	sëcütus sum,	sëqui,	to follow.
Ütor,	üsus sum,	üti,	to use.
{ (Verto)			
Rëvertor,	(rëversus sum),	rëverti,	to return.
{ (Plecto)			
Amplector,	amplexus sum,	amplecti,	to embrace.
Complector,	complexus sum,	complecti,	to embrace.
Apiscor,	aptus sum,	apisci,	to obtain.
Adipiscor,	adeptus sum,	adipisci,	to obtain.
Commiscor,	commentus sum,	commisci,	to devise.
Rëminiscor,	—	rëminisci,	to remember.
Dëfëticor,	dëfëssus sum,	dëfëtisci,	to grow weary.
Expergiscor,	experrectus sum,	expergisci,	to wake up.
{ Irascor,	—	irasci,	to be angry.
Nanciscor,	nactus sum,	nancisci,	to obtain by chance.
Nascor,	nätus sum,	nasci,	to be born.
Obliviscor,	oblitus sum,	oblivisci,	to forget.
Paciscor,	pactus sum,	pacisci,	to make an agreement.
Pröficiscor,	pröfectus sum,	pröficisci,	to set out.
Ulciscor,	ultus sum,	ulcisci,	to avenge.
Vescor,		vesci,	to eat.

## 4. Fourth Conjugation :

Assentior,	assensus sum,	assentiri,	to agree to.
Blandior,	blanditus sum,	blandiri,	to flatter.
Expërior,	expertus sum,	expëri,	to try.
Largior,	largitus sum,	largiri,	to give bountifully.
Mentior,	mentitus sum,	mentiri,	to lie.
Mëtiör,	mensus sum,	mëtiri,	to measure.
Möliör,	mölitus sum,	möliri,	to labour.
Oppërior,	{ oppertus sum, oppëritus sum,	} oppëri,	to wait for.
Ordior,	orsus sum,	ordiri,	to begin.
Orior,*	ortus sum,	öriri,	to rise.
Partior,	partitus sum,	partiri,	to divide.
Pötior,†	pötitus sum,	pötiri,	to obtain possession of.
Sortior,	sortitus sum,	sortiri,	to take by lot.

\* *Orior*, *Future Participle* örüturus. In some tenses the forms are borrowed from the 3rd Conjugation: *Pres. Indic.* örëris or öriris, örür, örürmur. In the *Imperf. Subj.* both örërer and örirer are found.

† In the *Imperf. Subj.* both pötürer and pötërer are found.

# D. DEFECTIVE VERBS.

Defective Verbs are such as want many Tenses and Persons.

- I. Coepī, *I began.*
- II. Mēmīnī, *I remember.*
- III. Ōdī, *I hate.*

## INDICATIVE.

<i>Perfect.</i>	Coepī	Mēmīnī	Ōdī.
<i>Pluperf.</i>	Coepēram	Mēmīnēram	Ōdēram.
<i>Fut.-Perf.</i>	Coepēro	Mēmīnēro	Ōdēro.

## SUBJUNCTIVE.

<i>Perfect.</i>	Coepērim	Mēmīnērim	Ōdērim.
<i>Pluperf.</i>	Coepissem	Mēmīnissem	Ōdissem.

## IMPERATIVE.

<i>Future.</i>	(wanting.)	Memento	(wanting.)
		Mementōtē	

## INFINITIVE.

<i>Perfect.</i>	Coepissē	Mēmīnissē	Ōdissē.
-----------------	----------	-----------	---------

## PARTICIPLE.

<i>Future.</i>	Coeptūrus	(wanting.)	Ōsūrus.
----------------	-----------	------------	---------

## PASSIVE VOICE.

### INDICATIVE.

<i>Perfect.</i>	Coeptūs sum.	<i>Pluperf.</i>	Coeptūs ēram.
	<i>Fut.-Perf.</i>	Coeptūs ēro.	

### SUBJUNCTIVE.

<i>Perfect.</i>	Coeptūs sim.	<i>Pluperf.</i>	Coeptūs essem.
-----------------	--------------	-----------------	----------------

### INFINITIVE.

<i>Perfect.</i>	Coeptūs essē.
-----------------	---------------

N.B.—The Passive forms are used when the Infinitive which follows is in the Passive voice: as, *Saguntum coeptum est oppugnari*, *Saguntum was begun to be besieged.*

## IV. Āio, I say :—

INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
	<i>Present.</i>		<i>Imperfect.</i>
S. Āio	—	S. Āiēbam	—
Āis	Āiās	Āiēbās	—
Āit	Āiāt	Āiēbat	—
P. —	—	P. Āiēbāmūs	—
—	—	Āiēbātīs	—
Āiunt	Āiant	Āiēbant.	—

PRESENT PARTICIPLE.—Āiens.

V. Inquam, *say I*:—

INDICATIVE.		Future.	Perfect.
Present.	Imperfect.		
Inquam	Inquēbam	Inquēs	Inquisti
Inquis	Inquēbās	Inquēt	Inquit
Inquit	Inquēbat	IMPERATIVE.	
Inquimūs	Inquēbāmūs	Present.	Future.
Inquitis	Inquēbātis	Inquē	Inquito.
Inquiunt	Inquēbant	Inquitē	

*Obs.* Inquam, like the English *say I*, says he, is always used after other words in a sentence.

VI. Fāri, *to speak*, a Deponent:—

INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.	IMPERATIVE.	INFINITIVE.
Present.		Present. S. Fārē	Fārī
Fāsur	—	PARTICIPLES.	
		Present. Fantis, &c. (without a	
Fābōr, fābitūr	—	Nom.)	
		Perfect. Fātus (ū, um)	
		Gerundive. Fandis (ū, um)	
		SUPINE—Fātū.	
		GERUND—Fandī,	
		Fando.	
Perfect.			
Fātus sum, &c.	Fātus sim, &c.		
Pluperfect.			
Fātus eram	Fātus essera		

## VII. THE FOLLOWING IMPERATIVES.

1. Āvē (or hāvē), āvētē, *hail*. INFIN. āvērē.
2. Salvē, salvētē, *hail, welcome*. INFIN. salvērē.
3. Cēdō, cēditē (or cettē), *give me*.
4. Āpāgē, āpāgītē, *begone*.

## VOCABULARIES.

m.	=	masculine.
f.	=	feminine.
n.	=	neuter.
c.	=	common gender, that is, masculine and feminine.

## Vocabulary 1.

āla, f.	<i>a wing.</i>
āquila, f.	<i>an eagle.</i>
colōnia, f.	<i>a colony.</i>
columba, f.	<i>a dove.</i>
cōrōna, f.	<i>a crown.</i>
fēmīna, f.	<i>a woman.</i>
filia, f.	<i>a daughter.</i>
insūla, f.	<i>an island.</i>
mensa, f.	<i>a table.</i>
ōra, f.	<i>a coast.</i>
pēcūnia, f.	<i>money.</i>
porta, f.	<i>a gate.</i>
pūella, f.	<i>a girl.</i>
rēgina, f.	<i>a queen.</i>
Rōma, f.	<i>Rome (the city).</i>
rōsa, f.	<i>a rose.</i>

## Vocabulary 2.

agrīcōla, m.	<i>a husbandman.</i>
amicitiā, f.	<i>friendship.</i>
Britannia, f.	<i>Britain.</i>
causa, f.	<i>a cause.</i>
Eurōpa, f.	<i>Europe.</i>
Gallia, f.	<i>Gaul (now France).</i>
glōria, f.	<i>glory.</i>
Graecia, f.	<i>Greece.</i>
incolā, c.	<i>an inhabitant.</i>
inimicitia, f.	<i>enmity.</i>
Itālia, f.	<i>Italy.</i>
nauta, m.	<i>a sailor.</i>
patria, f.	<i>a native land, country.</i>
pōeta, m.	<i>a poet.</i>
pugna, f.	<i>a battle.</i>
Sicilia, f.	<i>Sicily.</i>
vita f.	<i>life.</i>

## Vocabulary 3.

amicus, m.	<i>a friend.</i>
avus, m.	<i>a grandfather.</i>
dōminus, m.	<i>a lord, master.</i>
ēquus, m.	<i>a horse.</i>
filius, m.	<i>a son.</i>
flūvius, m.	<i>a river.</i>
glādius, m.	<i>a sword.</i>
hortus, m.	<i>a garden.</i>
inimicus, m.	<i>an enemy.</i>
Rhēnus, m.	<i>the Rhine.</i>
Rhōdānus, m.	<i>the Rhone.</i>
ripa, f.	<i>a bank.</i>
servus, m.	<i>a slave.</i>
taurus, m.	<i>a bull.</i>

## Vocabulary 4.

āger, m.	<i>a field, land.</i>
gēner, m.	<i>a son-in-law.</i>
liber, m.	<i>a book.</i>
māgister, m.	<i>a master, teacher.</i>
minister, m.	<i>a servant.</i>
pūer, m.	<i>a boy.</i>
sōcer, m.	<i>a father-in-law.</i>

*Note.*—Minister, liber, āger are declined like māgister. Sōcer, gēner are declined like pūer.

## Vocabulary 5.

argentum, n.	<i>silver.</i>
aurum, n.	<i>gold.</i>
bellum, n.	<i>war.</i>
coelum, n.	<i>heaven.</i>
diligentiā, f.	<i>diligence.</i>
dōnum, n.	<i>a gift.</i>
gaudium, n.	<i>joy.</i>
mētallum, n.	<i>a metal.</i>
oppidum, n.	<i>a town.</i>



praemium, n.	a reward.
regnum, n.	a kingdom.
scutum, n.	a shield.
templum, n.	a temple.
*Dēus, m.	a god.
discipulus, m.	a pupil, scholar.
morbus, m.	a disease.
murus, m.	a wall.
Rōmānus, m.	a Roman.
terra, f.	the earth, land.

\* Vocative Singular same as Nom.  
Dēus: see p. 22.

## Vocabulary 6.

acutus, a, um,	sharp.
albus, a, um,	white.
altus, a, um,	high, deep.
bellicosus, a, um,	warlike.
bonus, a, um,	good.
gratus, a, um,	pleasing.
latus, a, um,	wide, broad.
longus, a, um,	long.
magnus, a, um,	great.
malus, a, um,	bad, wicked.
molestus, a, um,	troublesome.
multus, a, um,	much, many.
noxius, a, um,	hurtful, injurious.
parvus, a, um,	small, little.
rapidus, a, um,	rapid.
splendidus, a, um,	splendid, bright.
timidus, a, um,	timid.
aeger, gra, grum	sick.
miser, era, erum,	wretched.
niger, gra, grum,	black.
pulcher, cra, crum,	beautiful.
sacer, cra, crum,	sacred.
tener, era, erum,	tender.
exemplum, n.	an example.
hasta, f.	a spear.
numerus, m.	a number.
periculum, n.	danger.

Note. Grātus, molestus, noxius are followed by the Dative case.

## Vocabulary 7.

hiem, hiemis, f.	winter.
trabe, trabis, f.	a beam.
ciuitas, urbis, f.	a city.
castris, arcis, f.	a citadel.
dux, ducis, a.	a leader, general.

pax, pacis, f.	peace.
iudex, iudicis, m.	a judge.
lex, legis, f.	a law.
rex, regis, m.	a king.
bēnignus, a, um,	kind.
firmus, a, um,	strong.
iocundus, a, um,	pleasant.
justus, a, um,	just.
Rōmulus, m.	Romulus.
sēvērus, a, um,	severe.

## Vocabulary 8.

cōmes, cōmitis, c.	a companion.
custos, custodis, c.	a guardian.
ēques, equitis, m.	a horse-soldier.
lāpis, lapidis, m.	a stone.
miles, militis, m.	a soldier.
mors, mortis, f.	death.
obses, obsidis, c.	a hostage.
pēdes, peditis, m.	a foot-soldier.
aestas, tātis, f.	a summer.
civitas, tātis, f.	a state, citizen-ship.
tempestas, tātis, f.	a tempest.
vōluntas, tātis, f.	a wish, will.
nox, noctis, f.	night.
auctumnus, i, m.	autumn.
nātūra, ae, f.	nature.
clārus, a, um,	clear, renowned.

## Vocabulary 9.

frāter, tris, m.	a brother.
māter, tris, f.	a mother.
pāter, tris, m.	a father.
agger, eris, m.	a mound.
cālor, ōris, m.	heat.
clāmor, ōris, m.	a shout.
cōlor, ōris, m.	colour.
lābor, ōris, m.	labour, hardship.
ōdor, ōris, m.	a smell, scent.
sōror, ōris, f.	a sister.
victor, ōris, m.	a conqueror.
flōs, ōris, m.	a flower.
sōl, sōlis, m.	the sun.
castra, ōrum, n. pl.	a camp.
tōtus, a, um,	whole.
fossa, ae, f.	a ditch.
mūnimentum, i, n.	a fortification.
praeda, ae, f.	booty.
vārius, a, um,	different, various.

## Vocabulary 10.

lĕo, ōnis, <i>n.</i>	<i>a lion.</i>
Jūno, ōnis, <i>f.</i>	<i>Juno.</i>
pāvo, ōnis, <i>m.</i>	<i>a peacock.</i>
sermo, ōnis, <i>m.</i>	<i>a discourse.</i>
consuetūdo, īnis, <i>f.</i>	<i>habit.</i>
hōmo, īnis, <i>c.</i>	<i>{ a man, a woman.</i>
multitūdo, īnis, <i>f.</i>	<i>a multitude.</i>
virgo, īnis, <i>f.</i>	<i>a maiden.</i>
orātor, ōris, <i>m.</i>	<i>an orator.</i>
*alter, ēra, ērum,	<i>second.</i>
certus, a, um,	<i>certain.</i>
dĕa, æ, <i>f.</i>	<i>a goddess.</i>
doctus, a, um,	<i>learned.</i>
infinitus, a, um,	<i>unbounded, in- finite.</i>
Mīnerva, æ, <i>f.</i>	<i>Minerva.</i>
vālidus, a, um,	<i>strong.</i>

\* The Genitive Singular of *alter* is *altĕrius*, Dat. *altĕri*.

## Vocabulary 11.

cīvis, is, <i>c.</i>	<i>a citizen.</i>
classis, is, <i>f.</i>	<i>a fleet.</i>
hostis, is, <i>c.</i>	<i>an enemy (pub- lic enemy).</i>
turris, is, <i>f.</i>	<i>a tower.</i>
vallis, is, <i>f.</i>	<i>a valley.</i>
vestis, is, <i>f.</i>	<i>a garment.</i>
clādes, is, <i>f.</i>	<i>slaughter.</i>
nūbes, is, <i>f.</i>	<i>a cloud.</i>
rūpes, is, <i>f.</i>	<i>a rock.</i>
angustus, a, um,	<i>narrow.</i>
āter, atra, atrum,	<i>black.</i>
dūrus, a, um,	<i>hard.</i>
nix, nīvis, <i>f.</i>	<i>snow.</i>
nōtus, a, um,	<i>known.</i>
pĕritus, a, um,	<i>skilful.</i>
Rōmānus, a, um,	<i>Roman.</i>

## Vocabulary 12.

grāmen, īnis, <i>n.</i>	<i>grass.</i>
nōmen, īnis, <i>n.</i>	<i>a name.</i>
gĕnus, ēris, <i>n.</i>	<i>a race, a class.</i>
opus, ēris, <i>n.</i>	<i>a work.</i>
sidus, ēris, <i>n.</i>	<i>a star, constel- lation.</i>
scĕlus, ēris, <i>n.</i>	<i>a crime.</i>
dĕcus, ōris, <i>n.</i>	<i>an ornament.</i>
corpus, ōris, <i>n.</i>	<i>a body.</i>

frigus, ōris, <i>n.</i>	<i>cold.</i>
litus, ōris, <i>n.</i>	<i>a shore.</i>
tempus, ōris, <i>n.</i>	<i>time.</i>
cāput, itis, <i>n.</i>	<i>a head.</i>
crūs, crūris, <i>n.</i>	<i>a leg.</i>
fulgur, ūris, <i>n.</i>	<i>lightning.</i>
os, ōris, <i>n.</i>	<i>a mouth.</i>
rĕte, is, <i>n.</i>	<i>a net.</i>
māre, is, <i>n.</i>	<i>the sea.</i>
ānīmā, āis, <i>n.</i>	<i>an animal.</i>
calcĕr, āris, <i>n.</i>	<i>a spur.</i>
vectigal, ālis, <i>n.</i>	<i>a tax.</i>
annus, i, <i>m.</i>	<i>a year.</i>
antiquus, a, um,	<i>ancient.</i>
aurĕus, a, um,	<i>golden.</i>
bālæna, æ, <i>f.</i>	<i>a whale.</i>
Carthāgo, īnis, <i>f.</i>	<i>Carthage (a city of Africa).</i>
Cicĕro, ōnis, <i>m.</i>	<i>Cicero (a cele- brated Ro- man orator).</i>

dōmīcīllum, ii, <i>n.</i>	<i>abode.</i>
ēlēphantus, i, <i>m.</i>	<i>an elephant.</i>
ira, æ, <i>f.</i>	<i>anger.</i>
nōvus, a, um,	<i>new.</i>
ocūlus, i, <i>m.</i>	<i>an eye.</i>
piscis, is, <i>m.</i>	<i>a fish.</i>
prōfundus, a, um,	<i>deep.</i>

## Vocabulary 13.

ācer, cris, cre,	<i>keen, sharp.</i>
cĕler, ēris, ĕre,	<i>swift.</i>
brĕvis, e,	<i>short.</i>
dulcis, e,	<i>sweet.</i>
difficilis, e,	<i>difficult.</i>
fācilis, e,	<i>easy.</i>
fidĕlis, e,	<i>faithful.</i>
lĕvis, e,	<i>light.</i>
omnis, e,	<i>all, every.</i>
ūtīlis, e,	<i>useful.</i>
audax, ācis,	<i>bold.</i>
rāpax, ācis,	<i>rapacious.</i>
fĕlix, icis,	<i>fortunate, suc- cessful.</i>
vĕlox, ōtis,	<i>swift.</i>
ingens, entis,	<i>immense.</i>
præsens, entis,	<i>present.</i>
præstans, antis,	<i>excellent.</i>
pōtens, entis,	<i>powerful.</i>
prūdens, entis,	<i>prudent.</i>
arma, ōrum, <i>n. pl.</i>	<i>arms.</i>
carmen, īnis, <i>n.</i>	<i>a song.</i>

consilium, ii, n.	plan, counsel.
fûror, ôris, m.	madness.
hûmanus, a, um,	human.
initium, ii, n.	a beginning.
nâvis, is, f.	a ship.
Porsa, ae, m.	a Persian.
sâgitta, ae, f.	an arrow.
via, ae, f.	a way, a road.
vêtus, vêtêris,	old.
vinum, i, n.	wine.
vulnus, êris, n.	a wound.

## Vocabulary 14.

âcus, ûs, f.	a needle.
arcus, ûs, m.	a bow.
auditus, ûs, m.	hearing.
cursus, ûs, m.	running.
équitatus, ûs, m.	cavalry.
exercitus, ûs, m.	an army.
figus, ûs, f.	a fig.
fructus, ûs, m.	fruit.
magistratus, ûs, m.	a magistrate.
manus, ûs, f.	a hand.
peditatus, ûs, m.	infantry.
portus, ûs, m.	a harbour.
quercus, ûs, f.	an oak.
sensus, us, m.	a sense.
visus, ûs, m.	seeing.
cornu, ûs, n.	a horn.
genu, ûs, n.	a knee.
auris, is, f.	an ear.
cervus, i, m.	a stag.
coelestis, e,	belonging to the heavens: hence

arcus coelestis,	the rainbow.
instrumentum, i, n.	an instrument.
magnificus, a, um,	magnificent.
tutus, a, um,	safe.
Scythæ, ae, m.	a Scythian.
Scythæ, arum,	the Scythians.
m. pl.	
sedes, is, f.	a seat.
volutas, tatis, f.	pleasure.

## Vocabulary 15.

acies, ei, f.	a line of battle.
dies, i, m. & f.	a day.
facies, ei, f.	a countenance.
fides, ei, f.	faith, fidelity.
planities, ei, f.	a plain.
res, ei, f.	a thing.

segnities, ei, f.	slowness, i
	dolence.
spes, ei, f.	hope.
crëator, ôris, m.	a creator.
dômina, ae, f.	a mistress.
fortuna, ae, f.	a fortune.
rârus, a, um,	rare.
sêrenus, a, um,	clear.
victoria, ae, f.	a victory.

## Vocabulary 16.

arbor, ôris, f.	a tree.
bestia, ae, f.	a beast.
canis, is, c.	a dog.
conscientia, a, f.	conscience.
dëbilis, e,	feeble.
divitiæ, arum, f.	riches.
(only pl.)	
flumen, inis, n.	a current, river.
fortis, e,	strong, brave.
fulmen, inis, n.	lightning, a
	thunderbolt.

fûnus, ôris, n.	a funeral.
immortalis, e,	immortal.
jûvenis, is, c.	a young man
	woman.

mônumentum, i, n.	a monument.
mortalis, e,	mortal.
Neptûnus, i, m.	Neptune.
pauens, a, um,	few.
plenus, a, um,	full.
(with gen.)	

silva, ae, f.	a wood.
---------------	---------

## Vocabulary 17.

culpa, ae, f.	blame, fault.
Græcus, a, um,	Grecian, Greek.
honor, ôris, m.	an honour.
indoctus, a, um,	unlearned.
inimicus, a, um,	unfriendly.
laus, laudis, f.	praise.
mëmôrâbilis, e,	to be remem
	bered, mem
	orable.

vêrus, a, um,	true.
virtus, utis, f.	valour, virtue.

## Vocabulary 18.

adulatio, ônis, f.	flattery.
amâbilis, e,	lovely.
amor, ôris, m.	love.

asper, ĕra, ĕrum,	rough, rugged.
Cāto, ōnis, m.	Cato, a noble Roman.
ferrum, i, n.	iron.
Helvétia, ac, f.	the country of the Helvetii (in Switzerland).
- hibernus, a, um,	wintery, of winter.
imāgg, inis, f.	a likeness, portrait, image.
imprōbus, a, um,	dishonest, wicked.
Iter, Itinēris, n.	a journey. [ed.]
lēpus, ōris, m.	a hare.
lūna, ac, f.	the moon.
lux, lūcis, f.	light.
*mēus, a, um,	my, mine.
mons, montis, m.	a mountain.
nihil, indec. n.	nothing.
nōn, adv.	not.
ōdium, ii, n.	hatred.
perniciōsus, a, um,	destructive.
quam, adv. & conj.	than, as.
rādix, icis, f.	a root.
sāpientia, ac, f.	wisdom.
semper, adv.	always, ever.
- simulatio, ōnis, f.	a pretence.
sonitus, ūs, m.	a sound.
- spērius, a, um,	hoped for.
suāvis, e,	sweet, delightful.
sūus, a, um,	his, here, its, their own.
tēnūis, e,	slender.
tranquillus, a, um,	calm.
tūus, a, um,	thy, thine.
vēr, vēris, n.	the spring.
vultur, ūris, m.	a vulture.

\* The Vocative Slug. Masc. of *meus* is *mi*.

## Vocabulary 19.

Ālexander, dri, m.	Alexander, a famous king of Macedonia.
†Augustus, i, m.	Augustus, the first emperor of Rome.
centūria, ac, f.	a century
ĕrāsus, i, f.	a cherry-tree.
ĕrāsūm, i, n.	a cherry.

† The month of August, previously called Sextilis, was named after the emperor Augustus.

PR. L. L

cōhōrs, rtis, f.	a cohort.
consul, tilis, m.	a consul.
injustus, a, um,	unjust.
lēgio, ōnis, f.	a legion.
Mācēdo, ōnis, m.	a Macedonian.
mālus, i, f.	an apple-tree.
mālum, i, n.	an apple.
mānīpūlus, i, m.	a maniple.
mensis, is, m.	a month.
mītis, e,	mild.
ōs, ossis, n.	a bone.
pars, partis, f.	a part.
pīrus, i, f.	a pear-tree.
pīrus, i, n.	a pear.
prūnus, i, f.	a plum-tree.
prūnum, i, n.	a plum.
sāpiens, ntis, adj.	wise, a wise-man.
*and subs.	
Xerxēs, is, m.	Xerxes, a famous king of Persia.

## Vocabulary 20.

attentus, a, um,	attentive.
bēātus, a, um,	happy.
cārus, a, um,	dear.
contentus, a, um,	contented.
diligēns, ntis,	diligent, careful.
dives, itis,	rich.
ignāvia, ac, f.	cowardice.
jūs, juris, n.	right, law.
laetus, a, um,	joyful.
liber, ĕra, ĕrum,	free.
mēmōr, ōris,	mindful.
noster, tra, trum,	our, ours.
nunc, adv.	now.
pauper, ĕris,	poor.
praeceptor, ōris, m.	a teacher.
prōbus, a, um,	good, upright.
sālus, ntis, f.	safety.
sors, rtis, f.	a lot.
Titus, i (T.), m.	Titus, a common Roman fore-name.
tristis, e,	sad. [name.]
vester, tra, trum,	your, yours.
sī, conj.	if.

## Vocabulary to Ex. 21, 22, 23.

ānīmus, i, m.	mind, the soul
	courage, temper, the feelings.

K

auctoritas, ātis, f.	authority.
*autem, conj.	but.
auxilium, ii, n.	help, aid.
cupiditas, ātis, f.	desire, passion.
Demosthēnēs, is, m.	Demosthenes, the famous Athenian orator.
industrius, a, um,	industrious, busy.
inera, rtis,	helpless, sluggish.
liberi, ōrum, n.	pl. children.
mēmōria, ae, f.	memory.
pārens, entis, c.	a parent.
planta, ae, f.	a sprout, plant.
proellum, ii, n.	a battle.

\* The proper position of *autem* is after the first word of the clause to which it belongs.

## Vocabulary 24.

addictus, a, um,	devoted.
aeternus, a, um,	eternal.
bellūa, ae, f.	a great beast.
Cimbri, ōrum, m.	the Cimbrians, a formidable Celtic tribe.
cōr, cordis, n.	a heart.
ēlēgans, ntis,	elegant, exquisite.
fidēlis, e,	faithful.
fidus, a, um,	
fons, ntis, m.	
*Livius, ii, m.	Livy, a Roman historian.
luscīnia, ae, f.	a nightingale.
mūlter, ēris, f.	a woman, wife.
*Sallustius, ii, m.	Sallust, a Roman historian.
salvus, a, um,	safe.
sanguis, inis, m.	blood.
scriptor, ōris, m.	a writer, author.

\* Proper Names ending in *ius* make *i* in the Votive: e.g. Voc. *Livī, Sallustī*. So also *filius* makes Voc. *filī, and gēntis, a guardian deity, gēnti*.

## Vocabulary 25.

(A, B, C.)

aedifico, āvi, ātum, 1.	I build.
ambulo, āvi, ātum, 1.	I walk.
castigo, āvi, ātum, 1.	I chastise.
creo, āvi, ātum, 1.	I create, make.
curo, āvi, ātum, 1.	I take care, pains.

do, dēdi, dātum, 1.	I give.
dāre,	
emendo, āvi, ātum, 1.	I improve.
emigro, āvi, ātum, 1.	I depart from.
expugno, āvi, ātum, 1.	I take by storm.
firmo, āvi, ātum, 1.	I strengthen.
flo, āvi, ātum, 1.	I blow.
habito, āvi, ātum, 1.	I dwell.
intro, āvi, ātum, 1.	I enter.
iudico, āvi, ātum, 1.	I judge.
laudo, āvi, ātum, 1.	I praise.
mutō, āvi, ātum, 1.	I change.
oppugno, āvi, ātum, 1.	I attack, assault.
orco, āvi, ātum, 1.	I adorn.
pāro, āvi, ātum, 1.	I prepare, get, gain.
pugno, āvi, ātum, 1.	I fight.
recreo, āvi, ātum, 1.	I refresh.
vasto, āvi, ātum, 1.	I lay waste.
vigilo, āvi, ātum, 1.	I watch, I am awake.
vītūpēro, āvi, ātum, 1.	I blame, find fault with.

aedificium, ii, n.	a building.
Cōrinthus, i, f.	Corinth.
diligenter, adv.	carefully.
dum, conj.	while.
fraus, fraudis, f.	dishonesty.
jam, adv.	now, already.
libertas, tātis, f.	freedom, liberty.
littera, ae, f.	a letter of the alphabet.
litterae, arum, f.	letters, learning; also, an epistle, letter.
mōs, mōris, m.	a manner, custom.
nemo, inis, c.	nobody. [tom.]
opulentus, a, um,	wealthy.
placidus, a, um,	quiet.
probitas, ātis, f.	honesty, integrity.
quum, adv. & conj.	when. [rity.]
somnus, i, m.	sleep.
tīmor, ōris, m.	fear.
valētudo, inis, f.	health.
ventus, i, m.	wind.

(D, E, F.)

advento, āvi, ātum, 1.	I am on the point of arriving.
canto, āvi, ātum, 1.	I sing.

delecto, āvi, ātum, *I delight, amuse.*  
 dīnīco, āvi, ātum, *I fight (a battle).*  
 dubīto, āvi, ātum, *I doubt.*  
 erro, āvi, ātum, *I err, make a mistake.*

exhīlāro, āvi, ātum, *I cheer.*  
 impēro, āvi, ātum, *I command.*

(with *dat.*)

libēro, āvi, ātum, *I free, deliver.*  
 occūpo, āvi, ātum, *I seize upon.*  
 opto, āvi, ātum, *I wish, desire.*  
 porto, āvi, ātum, *I carry.*  
 redāmo, āvi, ātum, *I love in return.*  
 rēnovo, āvi, ātum, *I make new again, restore.*

servo, āvi, ātum, *I preserve, save.*  
 supēro, āvi, ātum, *I overcome.*  
 tracto, āvi, ātum, *I handle, deal with.*

ab (ā, abs), *prep. from, by.*  
 (with *abl.*)

dubius, a, um, *doubtful.*  
 fortiter, *adv. bravely.*  
 fortissimē, *adv. very bravely.*  
 Hannibal, ālis, m. *Hannibal, the great Carthaginian general.*

hērī, *adv. yesterday.*  
 intērītus, ūs, m. *destruction.*  
 itā, *adv. (from is, id) thus, in that way.*  
 māiores, um, m. pl. *ancestors.*  
 rectus, a, um, *straight, right.*  
 saepe, *adv. often.*  
 statio, ōnis, f. *a post, station.*  
 terror, ōris, m. *terror, alarm.*

### Vocabulary 26.

• nēcō, ūi, itum, 2. *I restrain, curb.*  
 dēbo, ūi, itum, 2. *I owe, ought.*  
 dēlēo, ēvi, ētum, 2. *I destroy.*  
 displicō, ūi, itum, *I displease.*

2. (with *dat.*) \*

dūcō, docui, doc- *I teach,*  
 tum, 2.  
 exercō, ūi, itum, 2. *I exercise.*  
 flēo, flēvi, flētum, 2. *I weep.*  
 florēo, ūi, 2. *I bloom, flourish.*  
 \*gaudēo, gāvīsus *I rejoice.*  
 sum, 2.

\* The Verb *gaudeo* belongs to the class of Neuter-passives. (See p. 85.)

hābēo, ūi, itum, 2. *I have.*  
 mērcō, ūi, itum, 2. *I deserve.*  
 mōncō, ūi, itum, 2. *I advise, warn.*  
 nōcō, ūi, itum, 2. *I hurt, harm.*

(with *dat.*)

pārēo, ūi, itum, 2. *I obey.*  
 (with *dat.*)

placō, ūi, itum, 2. *I please.*

(with *dat.*)

præbēo, ūi, itum, 2. *I furnish, afford, exhibit.*  
 terrō, ūi, itum, 2. *I terrify, frighten, alarm.*  
 vālēo, ūi, itum, 2. *I am strong, in good health.*

• ars, artis, f. *art, handicraft.*  
 avis, is, f. *a bird.*  
 Athēniēsis, e, *Athenian.*  
 bēnē, *adv. well.*  
 Caesar, āris, m. *Caesar, famous Roman.*

cantus, ūs, m. *a song.*  
 dū, *adv. a long time.*  
 divinus, a, um, *belonging to the gods, divine.*  
 Lātīnus, a, um, *Latin.*  
 lingua, æ, f. *tongue, language.*

præceptum, i, n. *precept, instruction, lesson.*  
 Pompēius, ēii, m. *Pompey, the rival of Caesar.*

quā, } *conj. because.*  
 quōd, }  
 sæpissimē, *adv. very often.*  
 sēnēctūs, ūtis, f. *old age.*  
 Sōlon, ōnis, m. *Solon, the Athenian law-giver.*

tēmēritas, ātis, f. *recklessness, rashness.*

### Vocabulary 27.

absūmo, sumpsī, *I consume, cut*  
 sumptum, 3. *off.*  
 cingo, cinxī, cinctum, 3. *I surround.*  
 contemno, tempai, *I despise.*  
 temptum, 3.  
 contrāho, traxī, *I draw together.*  
 tractum, 3.

convolo, avi, atum, *I fly or rush together.*

corrigo, rexi, rec- *I correct.*

tum, 3.

defendo, di, sum, 3. *I defend.*

desero, rui, rtum, 3. *I abandon.*

detego, xi, ctum, 3. *I discover.*

dico, xi, ctum, 3. *I say, speak.*

disco, didici, —, 3. *I learn.*

duco, xi, ctum, 3. *I lead.*

emo, emi, emptum, *I buy.*

3.

excolo, colui, cul- *I cultivate re-*  
tum, 3. *fully.*

instituo, ui, utum, *I appoint, in-*  
3. *stitute.*

instruo, xi, ctum, *I arrange, draw*  
3. *up in order.*

jungo, junxi, junc- *I join.*

tum, 3.

lego, legi, lectum, 3. *I gather, read.*

narro, avi, atum, 1. *I relate.*

pingo, pinxi, pic- *I paint, em-*  
tum, 3. *broider.*

rego, rexi, rectum, *I rule.*

3.

scribo, psi, ptum, 3. *I write.*

solvo, vi, utum, 3. *I loosen, pay.*

specto, avi, atum, *I look at, look on.*

1.

tego, texi, tectum, *I cover.*

3.

traho, traxi, trac- *I draw, drag.*

tum, 3.

\*triumpho, avi, *I triumph.*  
atum, 1.

volo, avi, atum, 1. *I fly.*

Camillus, i, m. *Camillus, a Ro-*  
*man general.*

Catilina, ae, m. *Catiline, a con-*  
*spirator.*

conjuratio, onis, f. *a conspiracy.*

copia, ae, f. *plenty.*

copiae, arum, f. pl. *forces.*

currus, us, m. *a chariot.*

ferè, adv. *almost, com-*  
*monly.*

Hellespontus, i, m. *the Hellespont*  
*(now the Dar-*  
*danelles).*

\* A triumph (triumphus) was a grand procession of a Roman general through the streets of Rome.

impërator, oris, m. *a military com-*  
*mander, a*  
*general.*

in, prep. (with acc.) *into.*

incendium, ii, n. *a fire, conflu-*  
*gration.*

innumerus, a, um, *innumerable.*

locus, i, m., pl. -i, *a place.*

m., and -a, n.

mens, mentis, f. *the mind.*

mundus, i, m. *the world.*

obsidio, onis, f. *a siege, blockade.*

oratio, onis, f. *oration, speech.*

pallium, ii, n. *a cloak.*

\*pons, ntis, m. *a bridge.*

simul ac (atque), *as soon as.*

or in one word,

simulac, conj.

vix, adv. *scarcely.*

\* Observe the phrase *jungere flumen*  
*ponte, to throw a bridge over a river.*

### Vocabulary 28.

custodio, i, i, itum, *I guard, keep*  
4. *guard.*

dormio, i, i, itum, 4. *I sleep.*

erudio, i, i, itum, 4. *I train up, edu-*  
*cate.*

finio, i, i, itum, 4. *I limit, put an*  
*end to.*

mollio, i, i, itum, 4. *I soften, assuage.*

munio, i, i, itum, 4. *I fortify.*

nescio, i, i & ii, *I am ignorant*  
itum, 4. *of.*

nutrio, i, i, itum, 4. *I nourish, nur-*  
*ture.*

obedio, i, i, itum, 4. *I obey.*  
(with dat.)

punio, i, i, itum, 4. *I punish.*

reperio, peri, per- *I find.*

tum, 4.

scio, i, i, itum, 4. *I know.*

sepelio, i, i, itum, 4. *I bury.*  
ii, pultum, 4. }

venio, veni, ven- *I come.*

tum, 4.

vestio, i, i, itum, 4. *I clothe.*

vincio, vinxi, vinc- *I bind.*

tum, 4.

Alpes, ium, m. pl. *the Alps.*

Cornēlia, ae, f.	Cornelia, a Roman matron.
crūdēlis, e,	cruel.
diligētissimē, adv.	most carefully.
dōlor, ōris, m.	pain, grief.
ētiam, conj.	also, even.
finis, is, m.	end, limit, in pl. territories.
grāvītēr, adv.	actively, vigorously.
Lībŷa, ae, f.	Africa. [ously.]
lietor, ōris, m.	a lictor (attendant on a magistrate).
longinquus, a, um,	long, distant.
longinquitās, atis, f.	length, distance.
membrāna, ae, f.	thin skin, membrane.
mollis, e,	soft, mellow.
mortuus, a, um,	dead.
olim, adv.	formerly, once upon a time.
quōquē, conj.	also, even.
tēnuis, e,	thin, delicate.
turpis, e,	base, disgraceful.
vestimentum, i, n.	clothing.
vinculum, i, n.	a chain, bond.
vox, vocis, f.	a voice.

## Vocabulary 29.

ēdūco, āvi, ātum, 1.	I educate.
ēdūco, xi, ctum, 3.	I lead out.
fūgo, āvi, ātum, 1.	I put to flight.
vulnēro, āvi, ātum, 1.	I wound.
Antiochus, i, m.	Antiochus, a name of several kings of Syria. [nent.]
ēgrēgius, a, um,	excellent, eminently.
grāvītēr, adv.	heavily, severely, grievously.
Lycurgus, i, m.	Lycargus, the Spartan legislator.
Trōja, ae, f.	Troy, the city.
Vesta, ae, f.	Vesta, the goddess of fire and the hearth.

## Vocabulary 30.

mānēo, mansi,	I remain.
mansum, 2.	
mōvēo, mōvi,	I move, disturb.
mōtum, 2.	
timeo, ti, —, 2.	I fear.
adventus, ūs, m.	arrival.
Nēro, ōnis, m.	Nero, a Roman emperor.
strēnuus, a, um,	vigorous.
strēnuē, adv.	vigorously.
studiū, i, n.	zeal, pursuit, study.
sūbitus, a, um,	sudden.

## Vocabulary 31.

affligo, xi, ctum, 3.	I cast down, prostrate.
cōlo, cōlūi, cultum, 3.	I cultivate, cherish, &c.
diligō, lexi, lectum, 3.	I esteem, love.
finco, finxi, fictum, 3.	I frame, feign, invent.
studēo, ūi, —, 2.	I am eager, zealous.
vēho, vexe, vectum, 3.	I carry, in Pass. I ride.
vinco, vici, victum, 3.	I conquer.
vivo, vixi, victum, 3.	I live.
clādes, is, f.	disaster, defeat.
fābula, ae, f.	a fable, story.
nōbllis, e,	dist.
perversus, a, um,	wilful, perverse.
Phaëthon, ōntis, m.	Phaëthon, a son of Apollo.
prōbē, adv.	rightly, properly.
quidem, adv.	indeed.
ratiō, ōnis, f.	reason.
Scipio, ōnis, m.	Scipio, a noble Roman.
vēhementēr, adv.	vehemently, warmly.

## Vocabulary 32.

cādo, cēidi, cāsum, 3.	I fall.
------------------------	---------



āēr, āēris, m.	the air.
Africānus, i, m.	Africanus, a surname of the Scipios.
cognitio, ōnis, f.	inquiry, knowledge.
ēdītus, a, um;	trained, educated.
Gracchus, i, m.	Gracchus, a noble Roman.
injustē, adv.	unjustly.
justē, adv.	justly.
lāpīdēus, a, um,	of stone.
nēgōtium, ii, n.	business.
pellis, is, f.	skin (of an animal).
prius, adv.	sooner, before.
Pūnicus, a, um,	Punic, Carthaginian.
Śocrātēs, is, m.	Socrates, the sage of Athens.
solum, adv.	only.
summus, a, um,	highest, utmost, greatest.
Tibērius, ii, m. (Ti.)	Tiberius, a common Roman fore-name.

## Vocabulary 33.

absurdus, a, um,	absurd.
bōna, ōrum, n. pl.	goods.
celsus, a, um,	lofty, tall.
margārita, ae, f.	a pearl.
nēcessārius, a, um,	necessary, needful.
nīdus, i, m.	a nest.
versus, ūs, m.	a line, a verse

## Vocabulary 34.

admīror, ātus, 1.	I wonder at, I admire.
aspermor, ātus, 1.	I reject, despise.
cōnor, ātus, 1.	I attempt.
contemplor, ātus, 1.	I observe carefully, contemplate.
hortor, ātus, 1.	I urge, exhort, encourage.
mōdītor, ātus, 1.	I meditate on, study.
mīror, ātus, 1.	I wonder at, admire.

vēnērōr, ātus, 1.	I reverence, worship.
-------------------	-----------------------

dēmum, adv.	indeed.*
pōtestas, ātis, f.	power.†
pōtētia, ae, f.	
quidam, quaedam, quoddam or quidam,	a certain, certain one.
tum, adv.	then.

\* As, tum demum, then indeed; then and not till then.

† Potestas is the regular power of a magistrate; Potentia, the power which arises out of personal weight and influence.

## Vocabulary 35.

*accipio, cēpi, cep-	I receive.
tum, 3.	
*confiteor, fessus, 2.	I confess.
2.	
*decipio, cēpi, cep-	I deceive.
tum, 3.	
*ejicio, jēci, jec-	I cast forth.
tum, 3.	
fateor, fassus, 2.	I confess.
imitor, ātus, 1.	I imitate.
intueor, itus, 2.	I look upon, into.
misereor, itus or ritus, 2.	I pity, have pity on.
polliceor, itus, 2.	I promise.
recordor, ātus, 1.	I call to mind.
tueor, itus, 2.	I gaze, guard, protect.
vereor, itus, 2.	I fear, reverence.

\* Observe the change of ā to i when a preposition is prefixed in composition. as, accipio = ad + capio; confiteor = con + fateor, etc.

Āsia, ae, f.	Asia.
Dārius, ii, m.	Darius, a king of Persia.
ex, ē, prep. (with abl.)	out of.
fācinus, ōris, n.	bold or daring deed, crime.
Plīnius, ii, m.	Pliny, the name of two Roman authors.

praetēritus, a, um, *past.*  
rēus, i, m. *an accused man,*  
• *defendant.*

## Vocabulary 36.

abūtor, ūsus, 3. *I abuse.*  
adhortor, ātus, 1. *I urge, exhort.*  
allīpiscor, ādeptus, 1 *acquire, at-*  
3. *tain to, obtain.*  
allōquor, locūtus, 1 *I speak to.*  
3.  
committo, mīsi, *I send together,*  
missum, 3. *join (fight)*  
*battle.*  
deflagro, āvi, ātum, *to be burnt down.*  
1.  
fruor, fructus and *I enjoy.*  
fructus, 3.  
fungor, functus, 3. *I discharge.*  
gēro, gessi, gēstum, *I carry on (war),*  
3. *wage (war).*  
incūso, āvi, ātum, *I accuse, find*  
1. *fault with.*  
jūbēo, jussi, jus- *I order, bid.*  
sum, 2.  
loquor, locūtus, 3. *I speak.*  
mōrior, mortuus } *I die.*  
(*fut. part. mōri-*  
*tūrus, about to*  
*die*), 3.  
nascor, nātus, 3. *I am born.*  
obliviscor, litus, 3. *I forget.*  
pātior, passus, 3. *I endure, suffer.*  
prōficiscor, fectus, *I set out.*  
3.  
rēmīniscor, 3. *I remember.*  
sēquor, cūtus, 3. *I follow.*  
ūtor, ūsus, 3. *I use.*  
vescor, —, 3. *I feed, live on.*

ad, *prep. (with acc.) to, at, near.*  
ālīquando, *adv. sometimes.*  
apūd, *prep. (with*  
*acc.) at, near.*  
bēnignē, *adv. kindly.*  
cāro, carnis, *f. flesh.*  
cāsēus, i, m. *cheese.*  
consulātus, ūs, m. *office of consul,*  
*consulate.*  
cruciātus, ūs, m. *torture.*  
Dīāna, ae, *f. Diana.*

Eurīpīdes, is, m. *Euripides, an*  
*Athenian tra-*  
*gic poet.*

immortālitas, ātis, *immortality.*

Lābiēnus, i, m. *Labiennus, one of*  
*Caesar's lie-*  
*tenants.*

lac, lactis, n. *milk.*  
lācus, ūs, m. *a lake.*  
lactīssa, ae, *f. joy.*

Mēnāpiī, ōrum, m. *Menapii, a Gal-*  
*lic tribe.*

mox, *adv. soon, shortly.*  
mūnus, ēris, n. *a gift, duty,*  
*function.*

nēvē, *conj. (with*  
*subj.) nor, and lest.*

nīmīs, *adv. too, too much.*

pēr, *prep. (with*  
*acc.) through.*

poena, ac, *f. punishment.*  
Poeni, ōrum, m. *the Carthagi-*  
*nians.*

pristīnus, a, um, *former, olden.*  
rārō, *adv. seldom.*

Rēgūlus, i, m. *Regulus, a fa-*  
*mous Roman.*

Salāmis, īnis, *f. Salamis, an is-*  
*land near*  
*Athens.*

tantum, *adv. only.*  
Trāsīmēnus, i, m. *Lake Trasimene,*  
*in Italy.*

## Vocabulary 37.

blandīor, itus (with *I flatter, win.*  
*dat.*), 4. *upon.*

expēior, rtus, 4. *I try, experience.*  
mētor, mensus, 4. *I measure.*

mentior, itus, 4. *I lie, tell a lie.*

ordior, orsus, 4. *I begin.*

partior, itus, 4. *I share, divide.*

pōtior, itus, 4. *I obtain pos-*  
*(with abl.) session of.*

cīvilis, e, *adj. belonging to a*  
*citizen; civil.*

Ēpāmīnondas, ae, *Epaminondas,*  
*m. a famous The-*  
*ban.*

frons, frontis, *f.* the forehead,  
nunquam, *adv.* never. [brow.  
vultus, ūs, *m.* a countenance,  
looks.

## Vocabulary 38.

flūo, fluxi, fluxum, *I flow.*

3.

migro, āvi, ātum, *I migrate, de-*  
1. *part.*

mētus, ūs, *m.* fear.

occidens, ntis, *m.* the west (the set-  
ting sun).

permulti, ae, *a,* very many.

primo, *adv.* at first.

primum, *adv.* first, in the first  
place.

## Vocabulary 39.

divīdo, vīsi, vīsum, *I divide, sepa-*  
3. *rate.*

mitto, misi, mis- *I send.*  
sum, 3.

cōtēri (caet.), cē- the rest.  
tērae, cōtēra, *pl.*

Germāni, ōrum, *m.* the Germans.

Helvētius, a, um, *Helvetian.* (See  
Voc. 18.)

lēgātus, i, *m.* ambassador,  
lieutenant.

ōcēānus, i, *m.* the ocean.

## Vocabulary 40.

fulgēo, lsi, lsum, 2. *I shine.*

prōfero, tūli, lātum, *I extend.* (See  
ferre, 3. v. irr. p. 80.)

Aegyptus, i, *f.* Egypt.

impērium, ii, *n.* empire.

Indi, ōrum, *m. pl.* Indians, the peo-  
ple of India.

marmor, ōris, *n.* marble.

servītūs, ūtis, *f.* slavery.

tābernāculum, i, *n.* a tent.

uxor, ōris, *f.* a wife.

## Vocabulary 41.

accōdo, cessi, ces- *I approach.*  
sum, 3.

āgo, ēgi, actum, 3. *I lead, act, do.*  
excōdo, cessi, ces- *I depart from.*  
sum, 3.

incipio, cēpi, cep- *I begin.*  
tum, 3.

perdo, dīdi, dītum, *I destroy.*

3.

rēsisto, stīti, stī-  
tum, 3. (with *I resist.*  
dat.)

atque, ac, *conj.* and.

attēte, *adv.* attentively.

audactēr, *adv.* boldly, daringly.

Hasdrūbal, ālis, *m.* Hasdrubal, the  
brother of  
Hannibal.

jūventūs, ūtis, youth.

lātē, *adv.* widely, wide.

longē, *adv.* far.

Roscīus, ii, *m.* Roscius, a Ro-  
man name.

sātis, *adv.* enough, suffi-  
ciently.

tigris, is or Idis, *c.* a tiger, tigress.

## Vocabulary 42.

infringo, frēgi, *I break, impair.*  
fractum, 3.

obscurō, āvi, ātum, *I darken, ob-*  
1. *scure.*

rēlinquo, liqui, *I leave, quit.*  
liq̄tum, 3.

aequus, a, um, level, even, just.  
cur, *adv.* why?

impētus, ūs, *m.* an onset, attack.

invidiā, ae, *f.* envy, ill-will.

splendor, ōris, *m.* brightness, bril-  
liancy.

tyrannus, i, *m.* a despot, tyrant.

## Vocabulary 43.

cōmītor, ātus, 1. *I accompany.*

immōlo, āvi, ātum, *I sacrifice.*

1.

indulgēo, dulsi, *I indulge.*

dultum, 2. (with  
dat.)

lūdo, lūsi, lūsum, 3. *I play.*

mētūo, ūi, ūtum, 3. *I fear.*

oro, āvi, ātum, 1. *I entreat, pray.*  
 saltō āvi, ātum, 1. *I dance.*  
 sēdēō, sēdi, sessum, *I sit.*

2.  
 vīdēōr, vīsus, 2. *I seem, appear.*

Āpollo, īnis, m. *Apollo, a Roman divinity.*

hostia, ae, f. *a victim.*  
 nobilis, e, *distinguished, noble.*

Pythāgoras, ae, m. *Pythagoras, a famous Greek philosopher.*

#### Vocabulary 44.

sēro, sēvi, sātum, 3. *I plant, sow.*

aerumna, ae, f. *trouble, affliction.*

frūges, um, f. pl. *fruits, a crop.*  
 īnops, ōpis, *destitute.*

onus, ōris, n. *a load, burden.*

pātienter, adv. *patiently.*

paupertas, ātis, f. *poverty.*

prudentia, ae, f. *knowledge, prudence.*

Phrase:—

Auxilium ferre, *to render assistance.*

#### Vocabulary 45.

occido, cidi, cisum, 3. *I kill, slay.*

statuo, ūi, ūtum, 3. *I fix, determine.*

atrox, ōcis, *stern, sanguinary, cruel.*

facile, adv. *easily.*

famēs, is, f. *hunger.*

hilaris, e, *cheerful.*

ignāvē, adv. *indolently.*

orāculum, i, n. *an oracle.*

silentium, ii, n. *silence.*

supremus, a, um, *last.*

unquam, adv. *at any time, ever.*

#### Vocabulary 46.

adjuvo, jūvi, jūtum, *I assist.*

nēquō, quīvi and *I am unable,*  
 nēquō, quīvi, nēquīre, *cannot.*  
 (like eo,) 4.

cāsus, ūis, m. *chance, accident.*  
 infectus, um, *undone.*

grāvis, e, *heavy, severe.*

noxius, a, um, *guilty.*

socius, i, m. *a partner, ally, companion.*

Thēmistocles, is, m. *Themistocles, a famous Athenian.*

#### Vocabulary 47.

addisco, addidici, *I learn in ad-*  
 3. *dition.*

bībo, bībi, bībītum, *I drink.*

3.

conservo, āvi, *I preserve,*

ātum, 1. *maintain.*

curro, cūcurri, cur- *I run.*

sum, 3.

interficio, fēgi, *I put to death,*  
 fectum, 3. *kill.*

aliquis, quid, pron. *some one, some-thing.*

Carthāgīniensis, e, *Carthaginian.*

nāvalis, e, *naval.*

Nilus, i, m. *the river Nile.*

nonnullus, a, um, *some.*

quōtidie, adv. *every day.*

tam, adv. *so, to such a de-  
 gree.*

Phrase:—

In legem jurare, *to swear to a law.*

#### Vocabulary 48.

dēplōro, āvi, ātum, *I lament over,*  
 1. *deplore.*

irascor, irātus, 3, *I am angry.*  
 dep.

taceō, ūi, ūtum, 2. *I am silent.*

tribuo, ūi, ūtum, 3. *I give, assign.*

Arīōvistus, i, m. *Arionist, a German king.*

fortē, *adv.* by chance.  
 infāmia, *ae, f.* infamy.  
 mīnīmē, *adv.* in the least degree.  
 nec, nēquē, *conj.* neither, nor.  
 stultitia, *ae, f.* folly.

## Vocabulary 49.

cunctus, *a, um,* all, all together.  
 dissimilis, *e,* unlike.  
 ferox, ōcis, fierce, spirited.  
 ignorātiō, ōnis, *f.* ignorance.  
 infērior, ius (*comp.*) lower, inferior.  
 mālum, *i, n.* an evil.  
 perfectus, *a, um,* finished, perfect.  
 Phidias, *ae, m.* Phidias, a famous Athenian sculptor.

praestābilis, *e,* excellent.  
 proximus, *a, um,* nearest, next.  
 scientia, *ae, f.* knowledge.  
 sēd, *conj.* but.  
 similis, *e,* like.  
 simulacrū, *i, n.* an image, statue.  
 vilis, *e,* cheap, common.

## Vocabulary 50.

cognosco, nōvi, nī- *I learn, ascertain.*  
 tum, *3.* *tain.*  
 comprēhendo, *di,* *I seize.*  
 sum, *3.*  
 conficō, fēci, fec- *I finish, accomplish.*  
 tum, *3.* *plish.*  
 conscendo, *di,* *I mount, go on*  
 sum, *3.* *board (ship).*  
 contendo, *di, sum* *I strain, hasten.*  
 and tum, *3.*  
 convōco, āvi, ātum, *I call together.*  
 1.

effloresco, flōrui, *3.* *to blossom forth.*

expōno, pōsui, pō- *I put forth,*  
 situm, *3.* *disembark*  
 (troops).

intāmesco, tāmui, *I swell.*  
 3.

lābor, lapsus, *3.* *I glide, pass*  
*v. dep.* *away, fall.*

orior, ortus, ōrii, *I rise.*  
*f, v. dep.: see*  
*p. 122.*

perlēgo, lēgi, lec- *I read through.*  
 tum, *3.*

perrumpo, rūpi, *I burst through.*  
 ruptum, *3.*  
 praemitto, mīsi, *I send on before.*  
 missum, *3.*

rēcto, āvi, ātum, *1.* *I read aloud.*

rēcūpero, āvi, ātum, *I recover, get*  
*1.* *back.*

regno, āvi, ātum, *1.* *I reign, am*  
*king.*

sēntio, si, sum, *4.* *I feel, perceive.*

subsequor, sēcūtus, *I follow up.*

*3, v. dep.*

suscipio, cēpi, cep- *I undertake.*

*tum, 3.*

vexo, āvi, ātum, *1.* *I vex, harass.*

aetas, ātis, *f.* age, time of life.

Arbēla, *ae, f.* Arbela, a town  
*in Assyria.*

Cassivelaunus, *i,* Cassivelaunus, a  
*m.* *British chief.*

dēfectus, ūs, *m.* a levy.

hiberna, ōrum, *n.* winter-quarters.

*pl.*  
 infirmus, *a, um,* infirm, feeble.

Pisistrātus, *i, m.* Pisistratus, a  
*despot of*  
*Athens.*

sēnātus, ūs, *m.* the senate.

stātīm, *adv.* immediately.

## Phrases:—

Dēlectum habēre, *to hold a levy.*  
 Maxima itinēra, *forced marches*  
 Navem (naves) conscendēre, *to embark*

## Vocabulary 51.

extrūo, struxi, *I heap up.*

structum, *3.*

obsidēo, sēdi, ses- *I blockade, lay*  
 sum, *2.* *siege to.*

pōno, pōsui, pōsi- *I place.*  
 tum, *3.*

Āthēnae, ārum, *f.* Athens.

bestiola, *ae, f.* a small animal,  
*insect.*

campus, *i, m.* a plain.

dōminātus, ūs, *m.* rule, sovereignty.

hōra, *ae, f.* an hour.

Hanno, ōnis, m.	<i>Hanno, a Carthaginian.</i>
Mārathon, ōnis, m.	<i>Marathon, a plain near Athens.</i>
nātus, a, um, part.	<i>born, aged.</i>
and adj.	
passus, ūs, m.	<i>a pace (about five feet).</i>
Plāto, ōnis, m.	<i>Plato, a famous Greek philosopher.</i>
Sāguntini, ōrum, m.	<i>Saguntines, the people of Saguntum, in Spain.</i>

## Phrases:—

Castra ponere,	<i>to pitch a camp.</i>
Murum, aggerem ducere,	<i>to carry a wall or mound along, i.e. construct.</i>

## Vocabulary 52.

cēdo, cessi, cessum, 3.	<i>I yield, retire.</i>
confēro, tūli, col- lātum, 3. v. irr.	<i>I bring together, betake.</i>
oppōno, pōsui, pōsitum, 3.	<i>I set against, oppose.</i>
pervēnio, vēni, ventum, 4.	<i>I arrive at.</i>
pēto, īvi and īi, ītum, 3.	<i>I seek.</i>
revertō, ti, sum, 3.	<i>I turn back, re- turn.</i>
revertor, versus, v. dep.	
Alcibiādes, is, m.	<i>Alcibiades, a celebrated Athenian.</i>
Aeschīnes, is, m.	<i>Aeschines, an orator.</i>
Cūrius, ii, m.	<i>Curius, a Roman general.</i>
Canūsium, ii, n.	<i>Canusium, a town in Apulia.</i>
Cāpua, ae, f.	<i>Capua, a city of Campania.</i>
Crēta, ae, f.	<i>Crete, an island of Greece.</i>
exilium, ii, n.	<i>banishment, exile.</i>

Ybi, adv. (fr. is, id),	<i>thère.</i>
Lacēdaemōn, ōnis, f.	<i>Lacedaemon or Sparta.</i>
Lēōnidas, ae, m.	<i>Leonidas, a king of Sparta.</i>
Lūcēria, ae, f.	<i>Luceria, a town in Apulia.</i>
Lūcius, ii (L.), m.	<i>Lucius, a Roman fore-name.</i>
mandātum, i, n.	<i>a charge, commission.</i>
perpētūus, a, um,	<i>continual.</i>
Rhōdus, i, f.	<i>Rhodes.</i>
rūs, rūris, n.	<i>the country.</i>
Spārta, ae, f.	<i>Sparta.</i>

## Phrase:—

Exilium agere, *to live in exile.*

## Vocabulary 53.

constitūo, ūi, ūtum, 3.	<i>I settle, de termine.</i>
consūno, sumpsi, sumptum, 3.	<i>I consume, waste away.</i>
expello, pūli, pūsum, 3.	<i>I drive out.</i>
hiēmo, āvi, ātum, 1.	<i>I winter.</i>
jācēo, ūi, ūtum, 2.	<i>I lie.</i>
Āpollōnia, ae, f.	<i>Apollonia, a town in Epirus.</i>
Āristīdes, is, m.	<i>Aristides, a noble Athenian.</i>
Arpīnum, i, n.	<i>Arpinum, a town in Latium.</i>
Bābylōn, ōnis, f.	<i>Babylon, a city of Assyria.</i>
Cannae, ārum, f. pl.	<i>Cannae, a village in Apulia.</i>
Cōnōn, ōnis, m.	<i>Conon, an Athenian general.</i>
Cūmae, ārum, f. pl.	<i>Cumae, a city in Campania.</i>
Cyprus, i, f.	<i>Cyprus, an island off Cilicia.</i>
Delphi, ōrum, m. pl.	<i>Delphi, a city in Greece.</i>
Dīōnysius, ii, m.	<i>Dionysius, a tyrant of Syracuse.</i>

Dyrrāchium, ii, n.	<i>Dyrrachium, a town in Epirus.</i>
Fabricius, ii, m.	<i>Fabrizius, a noble Roman.</i>
Hōrātius, ii, m.	<i>Horace, a Roman poet.</i>
Lesbus, i, f.	<i>Lesbos, an island off Asia Minor.</i>
Mārius, ii, m.	<i>Marius, a Roman general.</i>
quālis, c, pron. adj.	<i>of what sort, as.</i>
Syrācūsae, ārum, f. pl.	<i>Syracuse.</i>
tālis, c, pron. adj.	<i>of that sort, such.</i>
Timōthēus, i, m.	<i>Timotheus, a famous Greek.</i>
Vēnūsia, ae, f.	<i>Venusia, a town in Italy.</i>

## Phrase:—

Morbo consumi, *to be carried off by illness.*

## Vocabulary 54.

advēnio, vēni, ventum, 4.	<i>I arrive.</i>
animadverto, ti, sum, 3.	<i>I observe.</i>
confugio, fugi, 3.	<i>I flee to.</i>
constat, stitit, 1. v. impers.	<i>it is evident, it is agreed, it is certain.</i>
continēo, ti, ten- tum, 2.	<i>I hold together.</i>
nēgo, āvi, ātum, 1.	<i>I deny.</i>
pario, pēperi, partum, 3.	<i>I bring forth.</i>
prōdo, dīdi, dītum, 3.	<i>I hand down, betray.</i>
pūto, āvi, ātum, 1.	<i>I think.</i>
trādo, dīdi, dītum, 3.	<i>I hand down, deliver.</i>
vīdeo, vīdi, vīsum, 2.	<i>I see.</i>

caecus, a, um,	<i>blind.</i>
causā (abl.),	<i>for the sake of.</i>
credibīlis, e,	<i>credible.</i>
Dēlos, i, f.	<i>Delos, an island of Greece.</i>

Diana, ae, f.	<i>Diana, a goddess.</i>
flōrens, entis,	<i>flourishing.</i>
Hōmērus, i, m.	<i>Homer.</i>
imprudentia, ae, f.	<i>ignorance, imprudence.</i>
Lātōna, ae, f.	<i>Latona, mother of Apollo and Diana.</i>
manifestus, a, um,	<i>evident, manifest.</i>
nisi, conj.	<i>unless, except.</i>
quondam, adv.	<i> sometime, formerly.</i>
stella, ae, f.	<i>a star.</i>
Thāles, ētis, m.	<i>Thales, the philosopher.</i>
Trōjānus, a, um,	<i>Trojan, of Troy.</i>
vērisimilis, e,	<i>likely, probable.</i>

## Vocabulary 55.

consentio, sensi, sensum, 4.	<i>I agree.</i>
crēdo, dīdi, dītum, 3.	<i>I believe.</i>
diripio, rīpi, raptum, 3.	<i>I plunder, pilage.</i>
intelligo, lexi, lectum, 3.	<i>I understand.</i>
respondēo, di, sum, 2.	<i>I answer.</i>
bēnēvōlus, a, um,	<i>well-wishing, benevolent.</i>
bōnum, i, n	<i>a good, a blessing.</i>
divinus, a, um,	<i>of the gods, divine.</i>
ēlōquens, tis,	<i>eloquent. [fire.</i>
ignēus, a, um,	<i>fiery, made of.</i>
Lūcrētius, ii, m.	<i>Lucretius, a Roman poet.</i>
mālēvōlus, a, um,	<i>ill-wishing, malevolent.</i>
mendax, ācis,	<i>lying, false. Used as a subst., a liar.</i>
primārius, a, um,	<i>first-rate, eminent.</i>
stultus, a, um,	<i>foolish. [ment.]</i>
sūperus, a, um,	<i>upper.</i>
(see p. 25)	
turpitūdo, inis, f.	<i>disgrace.</i>

## Vocabulary 56.

abjiĉeo, jĉei, jec-	<i>I coast away.</i>
tum, 3.	
antĉpono, pösüi,	<i>I prefer.</i>
pösitum, 3.	
conjiĉeo, jĉei, jec-	<i>I fling (together).</i>
tum, 3.	
ĉvĉnĉeo, vĉni, ven-	<i>I happen.</i>
tum, 4.	
nümĉro,*ävi, ätum,	<i>I count.</i>
1.	
quaero, quaesivi,	<i>I seek, enquire.</i>
situm, 3.	
rögo, ävi, ätum, 1.	<i>I ask.</i>
spĉĉlor, ätus, 1.	<i>I spy out.</i>
viso, visi, visum, 3.	<i>I go to see, visit.</i>
Blaesus, i, m.	<i>Blaesus, a Roman name.</i>
Chacrĉphon, on-	<i>Chaerephon, a</i>
tis, m.	<i>disciple of So-</i>
	<i>crates.</i>
Croesus, i, m.	<i>Croesus, a king</i>
	<i>of Lydia.</i>
eur, adv.	<i>why? to what</i>
	<i>end?</i>
felicĉtĉr, adv.	<i>luckily.</i>
incertus, a, um,	<i>uncertain.</i>
infämis, c,	<i>infamous.</i>
injustus, a, um,	<i>unjust.</i>
Iacca, ac, m.	<i>Laeca, a Roman.</i>
mortuus, a, um,	<i>dead.</i>
növus, a, um,	<i>new.</i>
philösöphus, i, m.	<i>a philosopher.</i>
plänĉ, adv.	<i>altogether.</i>
quaestio, önis, f.	<i>a question.</i>
quantus, a, um,	<i>how great.</i>
quärĉ, adv.	<i>why, on what</i>
	<i>account.</i>
quöt, indec. adj.	<i>how many.</i>
saepĉnümĉro, adv.	<i>oftentimes.</i>
subdifficilis, c,	<i>somewhat diffi-</i>
	<i>cult.</i>
tĉlum, i, n.	<i>a dart, weapon,</i>
	<i>missile.</i>
übi, adv.	<i>where.</i>
Xĉnöpthon, ontis,	<i>Xenophon,* an</i>
m.	<i>Athenian.</i>

## Vocabulary 57.

accĉdo, idi, —, 3.	<i>to happen.</i>
cerno, crĉvi, crĉ-	<i>I see, discern.</i>
tum, 3.	

ĉĉhortor, ätus, 1.	<i>I encourage.</i>
*confido, fisis	<i>I trust.</i>
sum, 3.	
dĉterreo, üi, itum,	<i>I frighten, de-</i>
2.	<i>ter.</i>
*diffido, fisis sum,	<i>I distrust.</i>
3.	
dimitto, misi, mis-	<i>I let go, dis-</i>
sum, 3.	<i>miss.</i>
ĉnarro, ävi, ätum, 1.	<i>I relate.</i>
ĉnitor, nĉsus and	<i>I strive hard.</i>
nĉsus, 3.	
exclämo, ävi, ätum,	<i>I cry out.</i>
1.	
intrĉeo, ivi & iĉi,	<i>I enter.</i>
Itum, 4.	
nĉlor, nĉsus & nĉsus,	<i>I strive.</i>
3.	
*obsto, stĉti, stĉ-	<i>I oppose, pre-</i>
tum, 1.	<i>vent.</i>
opprimo, pressi,	<i>I press upon,</i>
pressum, 3.	<i>overwhelm, crush.</i>
*persuäĉeo, suäsi,	<i>I persuade.</i>
suäsum, 2.	
praevĉnio, vĉni,	<i>I anticipate.</i>
ventum, 4.	
prĉmo, pressi,	<i>I press.</i>
pressum, 3.	
pröhĉeo, üi, itum,	<i>I keep off, pro-</i>
2.	<i>hibit.</i>
rĉcuso, ävi, ätum, 1.	<i>I object, refuse.</i>
spĉro, ävi, ätum, 1.	<i>I hope.</i>
sto, stĉti, stätum, 1.	<i>I stand.</i>
*suädeo, suäsi,	<i>I advise.</i>
suäsum, 2.	
tĉneo, üi, tentum, 2.	<i>I hold, retain.</i>
transdüco, duxi,	<i>I lead across.</i>
ductum, 3.	
ventĉto, ävi, ätum,	<i>I come fre-</i>
1.	<i>quently.</i>
	<i>* With Dative.</i>

Bibulus, i, m.	<i>Bibulus, a Roman.</i>
förum, i, n.	<i>market-place,</i>
	<i>forum.</i>
impĉritus, a, um,	<i>unskillful.</i>
impransus, a, um,	<i>unbreukfasted.</i>
infirmĉtas, ätis, f.	<i>weakness.</i>
latro, önis, m.	<i>a robber.</i>
ludus, i, m.	<i>play, game,</i>
	<i>school.</i>



magnopere, <i>adv.</i>	greatly, earnestly.
mirus, a, um,	wonderful.
modus, i, m.	a measure, manner.
moenia, iam, n. pl.	fortifications.
Nervii, orum, m. pl.	the Nervii, a Gallic tribe.
praealtus, a, um,	very high.
Satrius, ii, m.	Satrius, a Roman.
signum, i, n.	a sign, signal.
Trebōnius, ſi, m.	Trebonius, one of Caesar's lieutenants.

## Phrases:—

Sēquitur (with *acc* and *inf.* or *ut* and *subj.*), it follows. Fācēre nōn possum quin, I cannot but. Per me (te) stētit (quōminus), it was owing to me or you (that something did not happen). Minimum est quin sim, very little is wanting that I should be; I am very near being.

## Vocabulary 58.

āquor, ātus, 1.	I fetch water.
bello, āvi, ātum, 1.	I wage war.
consulo, sūlūi, sul-	I consult.
tum, 3.	
convēnio, vēni,	I assemble.
ventum, 4.	
gusto, āvi, ātum, 1.	I taste.
pābūlor, ātus, 1.	I forage.
postūlo, āvi, ātum,	I demand.
1.	
progrēdior, gres-	I advance.
sus, 3.	

Aedūi, ōrum, m. pl.	the Aedui, a Gallic tribe.
Āgesilāus, i, m.	Agesilaus, a king of Sparta.
Divitiācus, i, m.	Divitiacus, a Gaul.
Fābius, ii, m.	Fabius, a Roman name.
Lācedaemōniū, ōrum, m. pl.	the Lacedaemonians.
longius, <i>adv.</i> (comp.).	farther, too far.
lūdi, ōrum, m. pl.	games.

Maximus, i, m.	Maximus, (the greatest,) a surname of Fabius.
nēfās, n. indec.	wickedness, impiety, impious.
ōpūs, n. indec.	need, necessity.
publicus, a, um,	public.
Vēientes, um, m. pl.	the people of Vetii, near Rome.
quisnam, quā-	who, what?
nam, etc., like quis,	

## Phrases:—

Nēfās est, it is or would be an impiety.  
Ōpūs est, there is need of (with *abl.*).

## Vocabulary 59.

āctio, ſi, ātum, 3.	I sharpen.
ālo, ſi, Itum and	I nourish.
altum, 3.	
ardēo, arsi, arsum,	I burn, am on
2.	fire.
cōgito, āvi, ātum,	I think, medi-
1.	tate.
collōquor, cūtus, 3.	I converse.
compāro, āvi, ātum,	I get together.
1.	
ēdo, ēdi, ēsum, 3.	I eat.
vēnor, ātus, 1.	I hunt.

bēatē, <i>adv.</i>	happily.
grātia, ae, f.	favour.
grātia, <i>abl.</i>	for the sake of.
haud, <i>adv.</i>	not.
libērē, <i>adv.</i>	freely.
mārinus, a, um,	of the sea.
ōpera, ae, f.	pains, labour.
plūs, ſi, <i>adj.</i> n.	} more.
in sing.; in pl.	
plūres, -a.	
studiōsus, a, um,	zealous, eager
	after.

## Phrases:—

Ōpēram dāre, to give one's whole energies to anything; to devote oneself to it. Intēribendū, &c., whilst drinking, &c.

**Vocabulary 60.**

adhibeo, ūi, Itum, *I employ.*

2.

observo, āvi, ātum, *I observe, re-*  
spect.

1.

prōvidēo, vīdi, *I foresee, pro-*  
visum, 2. vide.

ardūus, a, um, *lofty, steep,*  
*difficult.*

Phrase:—

Agere aetatem, *to spend one's life.*

**Vocabulary 61.**

ingredior, gressus, *I enter.*

3.

intercludo, si, sum, *I shut off, inter-*  
cept.

3.

obtempéro, āvi, *I obey, comply*  
atum, 1. with.

commētus, ūs, m. *provisions, sup-*  
plies.

commilito, ōnis, m. *a fellow-soldier,*  
comrade.

istuc, adv. *(from to-that-place*  
iste) *(where you are).*

iudicium, ii, n. *judgment.*  
paratus, a, um, *prepared, ready.*  
quisque, quaeque, }  
quodque & quid- } *every one.*  
que, pron.  
quō, adv. *whither.*

Phrase:—

Fiŕi de aliquo, *to become of one; as,*  
quid factum est de illo, *what has become of*  
*that man?*

**Vocabulary 62.**

concēdo, cessi, oēs- *I yield, retire.*

sum, 3.

incēdo, di, sum, *I burn.*

3.

percipio, cēpi, *I perceive.*

ceptum, 3.

affectus, a, um, *made, disposed,*  
Brūtus, i, m. *Brutus, a Ro-*  
man.

Cassius, ii, m. *Cassius, a Ro-*  
man.

Campānia, ae, f. *Campania, a*  
*part of Italy.*

occūpātus, a, um, *engaged, busy.*

quāsi, adv. *as if.*

Phrases:—

Consilium inire, *to enter on, form, a*  
design. In spem venire, *to conceive a hope.*

## INDEX I. TO VOCABULARIES.

## LATIN WORDS.

## LIST OF ABBREVIATIONS.

<i>abl.</i>	=	ablative.	<i>interj.</i>	=	interjection.
<i>acc.</i>	=	accusative.	<i>inter.</i>	=	interrogative.
<i>adj.</i>	=	adjective.	<i>irr.</i>	=	irregular.
<i>adv.</i>	=	adverb.	<i>m.</i>	=	masculine.
<i>c. or com.</i>	=	common gender.	<i>n.</i>	=	neuter.
<i>comp.</i>	=	comparative.	<i>p.</i>	=	page.
<i>conj.</i>	=	conjunction.	<i>part.</i>	=	participle.
<i>dat.</i>	=	dative.	<i>pl.</i>	=	plural.
<i>dep.</i>	=	deponent.	<i>prep.</i>	=	preposition.
<i>f.</i>	=	feminine.	<i>pron.</i>	=	pronoun, pronominal
<i>freq.</i>	=	frequentative.	<i>rel.</i>	=	relative.
<i>gen.</i>	=	genitive.	<i>sing.</i>	=	singular.
<i>incep.</i>	=	inceptive.	<i>sup.</i>	=	superlative.
<i>indec.</i>	=	indeclinable.	<i>v.</i>	=	verb.
<i>indef.</i>	=	indefinite.			

1, 2, 3, 4, indicate the conjugation of a verb.

## A

- āb** (ā, abs), *prep.* with *abl.*, from, by.
- ābēo**, īi, itum, īre, 4, *I go away.*
- abiciō**, jici, jectum, 3, *I cast away.*
- absūm**, abfui, abesse, *I am absent.*
- absūmo**, sumpsi, sump-tum, 3, *I consume, cut off.*
- absurdus**, a, um, *adj.*, absurd.
- abūtor**, ūtor, 3, *v. dep.*, *I abuse.*
- accēdo**, cessi, cessum, 3, *I approach.*
- accido**, idi (no *supine*), 3, *n. v.*, *I happen.*
- accipio**, cepi, ceptum, 3, *I receive.*
- acer**, cris, cre, *adj.*, keen, sharp.
- acies**, ei, *f.*, a line of battle.
- acūo**, ūi, ūtum, 3, *I sharpen.*
- acus**, ūs, *f.*, a needle.
- acutus**, a, um, *adj.*, sharp.
- ad**, *prep.* with *acc.*, to, at, near.
- addictus**, a, um, *part.*, devoted.
- addisoo**, addidici (no *supine*), 3, *I learn in addition to.*
- ādēo**, īi, itum, 4, *I go to.*
- ādhibeo**, ūi, itum, 2, *I employ.*
- ādhortor**, ūtor, 1, *v. dep.*, *I urge, exhort.*
- ādipiscor**, optus, 3, *v. dep.*, *I acquire, attain to, obtain.*
- ādjuvo**, jūvi, jūtum, 1, *I assist.*
- admiror**, ūtor, 1, *v. dep.*, *I wonder at, I admire.*
- adsum**, adfui, adesse, *I am present, stand by, side with.*
- ādulatio**, ōnis, *f.*, flattery.
- advēnio**, vēni, ventum, 4, *I arrive.*
- advēto**, āvi, ātum, 1, *v. freq.*, *I am on the point of arriving.*
- adventus**, ūs, *m.*, arrival.
- adversus** or **um**, *prep.* with *acc.*, towards, against.
- aedificium**, ii, *n.*, a build-ing.
- aedifico**, āvi, ātum, 1, *I build.*
- Aedui**, ūrum, *m. pl.*, the Aedui, a Gallic tribe.
- aeger**, gra, grum, *adj.*, sick.
- Aegyptus**, i, *f.*, Egypt.
- aequus**, a, um, *adj.*, level, even, just.
- aër**, āris, *m.*, the air.
- derumna**, ae, *f.*, trouble, affliction.
- Aeschines**, is, *m.*, Aeschines an orator.
- aestas**, ātis, *f.*, summer.
- aetas**, ātis, *f.*, age, time of life.
- aeternus**, a, um, *adj.*, eternal.
- affectus**, a, um, *part.*, made, disposed.
- afferō**, attuli, allātum, afferre, 3, *v. irr.*, *I bring to.*
- affigo**, fixi, flictum, 3, *I cast down, prostrate.*
- Africanus**, i, *m.*, Africanus, a surname of the Scipios.
- ager**, gri, *m.*, a field, land; in *pl.*, territories.
- Agēsilaus**, i, *m.*, Agesilaus, a king of Sparta.
- agger**, ēris, *m.*, a mound.
- ago**, ēgi, actum, 3, *I lead, act, do.* Agere artatem, to spend one's life.
- agricola**, ae, *m.*, a husband-er.
- ala**, ae, *f.*, a wing. [man.]
- albus**, a, um, *adj.*, white.
- Alcibiades**, is, *m.*, Alcibiades, a celebrated Athenian.
- Alexander**, dri, *m.*, Alexander, a famous king of Macedonia. [times.]
- āliquando**, *adv.*, some-times.
- āliquis**, quid, *pron.*, some one, something.
- ālius**, a, ud, *irr. adj.*

ALLOQUOR.

one of any number, one, another.

allōquor, lōcūtus, 3, v. dep. I speak to.

ālo, ālū, ālitum and altum, 3, I nourish.

Alpēs, ium, m. pl., the Alps.

alter, tēra, tērum, adj. (gen. sing ius, dat. i), one of two, the other, second.

altus, a, um, adj., high, deep.

amābilis, e, adj., lovely.

ambulo, āvi, ātum, I, I walk.

amicitia, ae, f., friendship.

amicus, i, m., a friend.

amor, oris, m., love.

angustus, a, um, adj., narrow.

animadverto, ti, sum, 3, I observe.

animāl, ālis, n., an animal.

animus, i, m., mind, the soul, courage, temper, the feelings.

annus, i, m., a year.

antē, prep. with acc., before.

antēpōno, pōsui, pōsitum, 3, I prefer.

Antiochus, i, m., Antiochus, a name of several kings of Syria.

antiquus, a, um, adj., ancient.

Āpollo, Inis, m., Apollo, a Roman divinity.

Āpollōnia, ae, f., Apollonia, a town in Epirus.

apūd, prep. with acc., at, near.

aqua, ae, f., water.

āquila, ae, f., an eagle.

āquor, ātus, 1, v. dep., I fetch water.

Arbēla, ae, f., Arbela, a town in Assyria.

arbor, ōris, f., a tree.

arcus, ūs, m., a bow.

arcus coelestis, m., a rainbow.

ardēo, arsi, arsum, 2, I burn, am on fire.

ardūs, a, um, adj., lofty, steep, difficult.

argentum, i, n., silver.

Arriovistus, i, m., Arriovistus, a German king.

Āristides, is, m., Aristides, an Athenian.

BENEVOLUS.

arma, ōrum, n. pl., arms.

Arpinum, i, n., Arpinum, a town in Latium.

ars, artis, f., art, handicraft.

arx, arcis, f., a citadel.

Āsia, ae, f., Asia.

asper, ēra, ērum, adj., rough, rugged.

aspērnor, ātus, 1, v. dep., I reject, despise.

āter, ātra, ātrum, adj., black.

Āthēnae, ārum, f. pl., Athens.

Āthēniensis, e, adj., Athenian.

atque, ac, conj., and.

atrox, ōcis, adj., stern, sanguinary, cruel.

attēns, adv., attentively.

attentus, a, um, adj., attentive.

auctoritas, ātis, f., authority.

auctumnus, i, m., autumn.

audacitē, adv., boldly, daringly.

audax, ācis, adj., bold.

audēo, ausus sum, audēre, 2, I dare, venture.

auditus, ūs, m., a hearing.

aufero, abstuli, ablātum, auferre, 3, v. irr., I carry away.

Augustus, i, m., Augustus, the first emperor of Rome.

aurēus, a, um, adj., golden.

auris, is, f., an ear.

aurum, i, n., gold.

autem, conj., but (placed after the first word of the clause to which it belongs).

auxilium, il, n., help, aid, assistance.

avis, is, f., bird.

āvus, i, m., a grandfather.

B

Bābylōn, ōnis, f., Babylon, a city of Assyria.

balaena, ae, f., a whale.

beatē, adv., happily.

beatus, a, um, adj., happy.

bellicosus, a, um, adj., warlike.

bello, āvi, ātum, 1, I wage war.

bellūa, ae, f., a great beast.

bellum, i, n., war.

bene, adv., well.

benevolus, a, um, adj., well-wishing, benevolent.

bēnignē, adv., kindly.

bēnignus, a, um, adj., kind.

bestia, ae, f., a beast.

bestiola, ae, f., a small animal, insect.

bibo, bibi, bibitum, 3, I drink.

Bibulus, i, m., Bibulus, a Roman.

blander, ūs, with dat., I flatter, win upon.

bōna, ōrum, n. pl., goods.

bōnum, i, n., a good.

bōnus, a, um, adj., good.

brevis, c, adj., short.

Britannia, ae, f., Britain.

Brūtus, i, m., Brutus, a Roman.

cādo, cecidi, cāsum, 3, I fall.

caecus, a, um, adj., blind.

caedes, is, f., slaughter.

Caesar, āris, m., Caesar, a famous Roman.

Cālus (C.), Caius, a Roman praenomen.

calcār, āris, n., a spur.

calor, ōris, m., heat.

Cāmillus, i, m., Camillus, a Roman general.

Campania, ae, f., Campania, a part of Italy.

campus, i, m., a plain.

canis, is, c., a dog.

Cannae, ārum, f. pl., Cannae, a village in Apulia.

canto, āvi, ātum, 1, I sing.

cantus, ūs, m., a song.

Cāntium, il, n., Canusium, a town in Apulia.

Cāpta, ae, f., Capua, a city of Campania.

capit, ūtis, n., a head.

carmen, Inis, n., a song.

cāro, carnis, f., flesh.

Carthaginiensis, e, adj., Carthaginian.

Carthago, Inis, f., Carthage, a city of Africa.

cārus, a, um, adj., dear.

cāsēus, i, m., cheese.

Cassius, il, m., Cassius, a Roman.

Cassivelaunus, i, m., Cassivelaunus, a British chief.

castigo, āvi, ātum, 1, I chastise.

castra, ōrum, n. pl., a camp.

CASUS.	CONSTAT.	CUPIDITAS.
<b>cāsus</b> , ūs, m., chance, accident.	<b>cōgīto</b> , āvi, ātum, 1, <i>I think, meditate.</i>	<b>constitūto</b> , ūi, ātum, 3, <i>I settle, determine, resolve.</i>
<b>Cātilīna</b> , ac, m., Catiline, a conspirator.	<b>cognitio</b> , ōnis, f., knowledge.	<b>consuetudo</b> , ūinis, f., habit.
<b>Cāto</b> , ōnis, m., Cato, a noble Roman.	<b>cognosco</b> , nōvi, nītum, 3, <i>I learn, ascertain.</i>	<b>consul</b> , ūlis, m., a consul.
<b>causa</b> , ae, f., a cause. In abl., on account of.	<b>cōhōra</b> , tis, f., a cohort.	<b>consulātus</b> , ūs, m., office of consul, consulate.
<b>cautus</b> , a, um, adj. and part., cautious, secured.	<b>cōhortor</b> , ātus, 1, v. dep., <i>I encourage.</i>	<b>consulo</b> , ūli, ūtum, 3, <i>I consult.</i>
<b>cēdo</b> , cessi, cēssum, 3, <i>I yield, retire.</i>	<b>collōquor</b> , cūtus, 3, v. dep., <i>I converse.</i>	<b>consumo</b> , sumpsī, sump-tum, 3, <i>I consume, waste away.</i>
<b>cēler</b> , ēris, ēre, adj., swift.	<b>cōlo</b> , cōli, cultum, 3, <i>I cultivate, cherish, dwell.</i>	<b>contemno</b> , tempōi, temp-tum, 3, <i>I despise.</i>
<b>celsus</b> , a, um, adj., lofty, tall.	<b>cōlōnia</b> , ae, f., a colony.	<b>contemplor</b> , ātus, 1, v. dep., <i>I observe carefully, contemplate.</i>
<b>centūria</b> , ae, f., a century.	<b>cōlor</b> , ōris, m., colour.	<b>contendo</b> , di, sum and tum, 3, <i>I strain, hasten.</i>
<b>cērasum</b> , i, n., a cherry.	<b>columbr</b> , ae, f., a dove.	<b>contentus</b> , a, um, adj., contented.
<b>cērasus</b> , i, f., the cherry-tree.	<b>cōmes</b> , itis, com., a companion.	<b>continēo</b> , ūi, tentum, 2, <i>I hold together.</i>
<b>cerno</b> , crēvi, crētum, 3, <i>I see, discern.</i>	<b>cōmitor</b> , ātus, 1, v. dep., <i>I accompany.</i>	<b>contrā</b> , prep. with acc., against, contrary to.
<b>certus</b> , a, um, adj., certain.	<b>commēātus</b> , ūs, m., provisions, supplies.	<b>contrāho</b> , traxi, tractum, 3, <i>I draw together.</i>
<b>cervus</b> , i, m., a stag.	<b>commilito</b> , ōnis, m., fellow-soldier, comrade.	<b>convēnio</b> , vēni, ventum, 4, <i>I assemble.</i>
<b>cētrari</b> (caet.), cētrac, cē-trā, adj. pl. the rest.	<b>committo</b> , misi, missum, 3, <i>I send together, join (fight) battle.</i>	<b>convōco</b> , āvi, ātum, 1, <i>I call together.</i>
<b>Chaerēphōn</b> , ontis, m., Chaerophon, a disciple of Socrates.	<b>compāro</b> , āvi, ātum, 1, <i>I get together.</i>	<b>cōpia</b> , ae, f., plenty.
<b>Cicēro</b> , ōnis, m., Cicero, a celebrated Roman orator.	<b>comprēhendo</b> , di, sum, 3, <i>I seize.</i>	<b>cōpae</b> , ārum, f. pl., forces.
<b>Cimbri</b> , ūrum, m. pl., the Cimbrians, a formidable Celtic tribe.	<b>concedo</b> , cessi, cessum, 3, <i>I yield, retire.</i>	<b>cōr</b> , cordis, n., the heart.
<b>cingo</b> , cinxī, cinctum, 3, <i>I surround.</i>	<b>confēro</b> , fēci, collātum, conferre, 3, v. irr., <i>I bring together, betake.</i>	<b>cōram</b> , prep. with abl., in the presence of.
<b>circā</b> , circum, prep. with acc., around.	<b>confido</b> , feci, fectum, 3, <i>I finish, accomplish.</i>	<b>Cōrīnthus</b> , i, f., Corinth.
<b>circuitēr</b> , prep. with acc., about.	<b>confido</b> , isus sum, 3, with dat., <i>I trust.</i> See p. 85.	<b>Cōrnēlia</b> , ae, f., Cornelia, a Roman matron.
<b>cis</b> , citrā, prep. with acc., on this side of.	<b>confiteor</b> , fessa, 2, v. dep., <i>I confess.</i>	<b>cornu</b> , ūs, n., a horn.
<b>civilis</b> , e, adj., belonging to a citizen, civil.	<b>confugio</b> , fugi, 3, <i>I flee to.</i>	<b>cōrona</b> , ae, f., a crown.
<b>civis</b> , is, com., a citizen.	<b>conſilio</b> , jeci, jectum, 3, <i>I fling (together).</i>	<b>corpus</b> , ōris, n., a body.
<b>civitas</b> , tātis, f., the state, citizenship.	<b>confutatio</b> , ōnis, f., a conspiracy.	<b>corrigo</b> , rexi, rectum, 3, <i>I correct.</i>
<b>clādes</b> , is, f., slaughter, disaster.	<b>Conōn</b> , ōnis, m., Canon, an Athenian general.	<b>crēator</b> , ōris, m., a creator.
<b>clām</b> , prep. with acc. or abl., secretly, without the knowledge of.	<b>cōnor</b> , ātus, 1, v. dep., <i>I attempt.</i>	<b>crēdibilis</b> , e, adj., credible.
<b>clāmor</b> , ōris, m., a shout.	<b>conscendo</b> , di, sum, 3, <i>I mount, go on board (ship).</i>	<b>crēdo</b> , didi, ditum, 3, <i>I believe.</i>
<b>clārus</b> , a, um, adj., clear, renowned.	<b>conscientia</b> , ae, f., conscience.	<b>crēo</b> , āvi, ātum, 1, <i>I create, make.</i>
<b>classis</b> , is, f., a fleet.	<b>consentio</b> , nsi, nsum, 4, <i>I agree.</i>	<b>Crēta</b> , ae, f., Crete, an island of Greece.
<b>coelestis</b> , e, adj., belonging to the heavens.	<b>conseruo</b> , āvi, ātum, 1, <i>I preserve, maintain.</i>	<b>Croesus</b> , i, m., Croesus, a king of Lydia.
<b>coelum</b> , i, n., heaven.	<b>consilium</b> , i, n., a plan, counsel.	<b>cruciatūs</b> , ūs, m., torture.
<b>cōeno</b> , āvi and ātus sum, 1, <i>I sup, dine.</i> See p. 85.	<b>constat</b> , stitit, 1, impers. v., it is evident, it is agreed, it is certain.	<b>crudēlis</b> , e, adj., cruel.
<b>cōdo</b> , ūvi or ūi, ūtum, 4, <i>I join together.</i>		<b>crūs</b> , crūris, n., a leg.
<b>cōercēo</b> , ūi, ūtum, 2, <i>I restrain, curb.</i>		<b>culpa</b> , ae, f., blame, fault.

CUPIO.

**cūpio**, īvi or īi, ītum, 3, *I desire*.  
**cūr**, adv., *why*.  
**cūro**, āvi, ātum, 1, *I take care, pains*.  
**curro**, cūcurri, cursum, 3, *I run*.  
**currus**, ūs, m., *a chariot*.  
**cursus**, ūs, m., *running*.  
**custōdiō**, īvi, ītum, 4, *I guard, keep guard*.  
**custos**, custōdis, c., *a guardian*.  
**Cyprus**, īs f., *Cyprus, an island off Cilicia*.

D

**Dārīus**, ī, m., *Darius, a king of Persia*.  
**dē**, prep. with abl., *down from, from, concerning*.  
**dea**, ae, f., *a goddess*.  
**dēbeō**, ūi, ītum, 2, *I owe, ought*.  
**dēbilis**, e, adj., *feeble*.  
**dēcēt**, dēcūit, dēcēre, 2, *improvis*, *it is seemly, becoming*.  
**dēcipio**, cēpi, ceptum, 3, *I receive*.  
**dēcus**, ōris, n., *an ornament*.  
**dēdēcēt**, dēcūit, dēcēre, 2, *v. impers*, *it is unseemly, unbecoming*.  
**dēfēdo**, di, sum, 3, *I defend*.  
**dēflāgro**, āvi, ātum, 1, *to be burnt down*.  
**dēficio**, jēvi, jectum, 3, *I cast down*.  
**dēlecto**, āvi, ātum, 1, *I delight, amuse*.  
**dēlectus**, ūs, m., *a levy*.  
**dēlēo**, ēvi, ētum, 2, *I destroy*.  
**Dēlōs**, ī, f., *Delos, an island of Greece*.  
**Dēlphī**, ōrum, m. pl., *Delphi, a city in Greece*.  
**Dēmōsthēnēs**, īs, m., *Demosthenes, the famous Athenian orator*.  
**dēmum**, adv., *indeed*.  
**dēplōro**, āvi, ātum, 1, *I lament over, deplora*. [*dōn*].  
**dēsēro**, ūi, tum, 3, *I abandon*.  
**dēsūm**, fūi, esse, with dat., *I am wanting*.  
**dētēgo**, texi, tectum, 3, *I discover*.  
**dētērrēō**, ūi, ītum, 2, *I frighten, deter*.

DUM.

**Dēus**, ī, m., *God*.  
**Diana**, ae, f., *Diana, a goddess*.  
**dico**, dixi, dictum, 3, *I say, speak*.  
**dies**, ēi, m. and f., *day*.  
**difficilis**, e, adj., *difficult*.  
**diffido**, fisis sum, 3, with dat., *I distrust*. See p. 85.  
**diligens**, ntis, adj., *diligent, careful*.  
**diligenter**, adv., *carefully*.  
**diligentia**, ae, f., *diligence*.  
**diligentissimē**, adv., *most carefully*.  
**diligō**, lexi, lectum, 3, *I esteem, love*.  
**dimico**, āvi, ātum, 1, *I fight (a battle)*.  
**dimitto**, misi, missum, 3, *I let go, dismiss*.  
**Dionysius**, īi, m., *Dionysius, a tyrant of Syracuse*.  
**diripio**, ripti, reptum, 3, *I plunder, pillage*.  
**discipulus**, ī, m., *a pupil, scholar*.  
**disco**, didici, 3, *I learn*.  
**displeō**, ūi, ītum (with dat.), 2, *I displease*.  
**dissimilis**, e, adj., *unlike*. See p. 25.  
**dū**, adv., *a long time*.  
**dives**, itis, adj., *rich*.  
**divido**, visi, visum, 3, *I divide, separate*.  
**divinus**, a, um, adj., *belonging to the Gods, divine*.  
**Divitiacus**, ī, m., *Divitiacus, a Gaul*.  
**divitiās**, ārum, f. pl., *riches*.  
**dō**, dēdi, dātum, dāre, 1, *I give*.  
**dōcēo**, ūi, ctum, 2, *I teach*.  
**doctus**, a, um, adj., *learned*.  
**dōlor**, ōris, m., *pain, grief*.  
**domicilium**, īi, n., *an abode*.  
**dōmina**, ae, f., *a mistress*.  
**dōminātus**, ūs, m., *rule, sovereignty*.  
**dōminus**, ī, m., *a lord, master*.  
**dōnum**, ī, n., *a gift*.  
**dormio**, īvi, ītum, 4, *I sleep*.  
**dūbitō**, āvi, ātum, 1, *I doubt*.  
**dūbius**, a, um, adj., *doubtful*.  
**duco**, duxi, ductum, 3, *I lead*.  
**dulcis**, e, adj., *sweet*.  
**dum**, adv., *while*.

EXCEDO.

**dūrus**, a, um, adj., *hard*.  
**dux**, dūcis, com., *a leader, general*.  
**Dyrachium**, īi, n., *Dyrachium, a town in Epirus*.  

**E**

**ē**, ex, prep. with abl., *out of, from*.  
**ēdo**, edi, esum, 3, *I eat*.  
**ēduco**, ēvi, ātum, 1, *I educate*.  
**ēduco**, duxi, ductum, 3, *I lead out*.  
**ēferō**, extūli, elātum, efferre, 3, v. irr., *I carry out*.  
**effloresco**, florūi, 3, *I blossom, forth*.  
**ēgregius**, a, um, adj., *excellent, eminent*.  
**ēicio**, jēci, jectum, 3, *I cast forth*.  
**ēlegans**, antis, adj., *eloquent, elegant*.  
**ēlephantus**, ī, m., *an elephant*.  
**ēloquens**, entis, adj., *eloquent*.  
**ēmendo**, āvi, ātum, 1, *I improve*.  
**ēmigro**, āvi, ātum, 1, *I depart from*.  
**ēmo**, ēmi, emptum, 3, *I buy*.  
**ēnarro**, āvi, ātum, 1, *I relate*.  
**ēnitor**, niasus or nixus, 3, v. dep., *I strive hard*.  
**Epaminondas**, ae, m., *Epaminondas, a famous Theban*.  
**ēques**, itis, m., *a horse-soldier*.  
**ēquitātus**, ūs, m., *cavalry*.  
**ēquus**, ī, m., *a horse*.  
**erga**, prep. with acc., *towards (only of the feelings)*.  
**erro**, āvi, ātum, 1, *I err, make a mistake*.  
**ērudio**, īvi or īi, ītum, 4, *I train up, educate*.  
**ēruditus**, a, um, adj., *trained, educated*.  
**ētiam**, conj., *also, even*.  
**Euripides**, īs, m., *Euripides, an Athenian tragic poet*.  
**Europa**, ae, f., *Europe*.  
**ēvenio**, vēni, ventum, 4, *I happen*.  
**ex** or **ē**, prep. with abl., *out of, from*.  
**excedo**, cessi, cessum, 3, *I go out, depart from*.

## EXCLAMO.

**exclāmo**, āvi, ātum, 1, *I cry out*.  
**excolō**, cōlūi, cultum, 3, *I cultivate carefully*.  
**exemplum**, i, n., "an example. [*go out*]."  
**exēo**, īvi or īi, itum, 4, *I exerceo*, īu, itum, 2, *I exerceo*.  
**exercitus**, ūs, m., an army.  
**exhilarō**, āvi, ātum, 1, *I cheer*.  
**exillum**, īi, n., *banishment*, nt, ezile.  
**expello**, pūli, pulsum, 3, *I drive out*.  
**expērior**, pertus, 4, v. dep., *I try, experience*.  
**expōno**, pōnūi, pōsitum, 3, *I put forth, disembark (troops)*.  
**expugno**, āvi, ātum, 1, *I take by storm*.  
**extruō**, struxi, structum, 3, *I heap up*.  
**extrā**, prep. with acc., *outside of*.

## F

**Fābius**, īi, m., a Roman name.  
**Fābrius**, īi, m., *Fabricius*, a noble Roman.  
**fābūla**, ae, f., a fable, story.  
**fācies**, ei, f., countenance.  
**fācile**, adv., easily.  
**fācilis**, e, adj., easy.  
**fācinus**, ōris, n., a bold act, daring deed, crime.  
**fācio**, feci, factum, fāciēre, 3, *I make*.  
**fāmēs**, īs, f., hunger.  
**fāteor**, fassus, 2, v. dep., *I confess*.  
**fēlicitēr**, adv., luckily.  
**fēlix**, icis, adj., fortunate, successful.  
**fēmina**, ae, f., a woman.  
**fēre**, adv., almost, commonly.  
**fēro**, tūli, lātum, ferre, 3, v. irreg., *I bear, carry, endure*.  
**fērox**, ōcis, adj., fierce, spirited.  
**ferrum**, i, n., iron.  
**fiens**, ūs, f., a fig. fig-tree.  
**fidēlis**, e, adj., faithful.  
**fides**, ei, f., faith, fidelity.  
**fido**, fisis sum, fidere, 3, v. n. (usu. with dat.), *I trust*. See p. 85.  
**fidus**, a, um, adj., faithful.  
**filia**, ae, f., a daughter.  
**filius**, īi, m., a son.

## GAUDEO.

**finġo**, finxi, fictum, 3, *I frame, feign, invent*.  
**finio**, īvi, itum, 4, *I limit, put an end to*.  
**finis**, īs, m., end, limit (in pl. *de:rlories*).  
**fio**, factus sum, fiēri, 3, v. irr., *I become, am made*.  
**firmo**, āvi, ātum, 1, *I strengthen, make strong*.  
**firmus**, a, um, adj., strong.  
**fiō**, fiēvi, fiētum, 2, *I weep*.  
**fio**, āvi, ātum, 1, *I blow*.  
**fiorens**, ntis, c. g., *flourishing*.  
**fiōrēo**, 'ūi, 2, *I bloom, flourish*.  
**fiōs**, ōris, m., a flower.  
**flumen**, īuis, n., a current, river.  
**flūo**, fluxi, fluxum, 3, *I flow*.  
**flūvius**, īi, m., a river.  
**fōdio**, fodi, fossum, fōdēre, 3, *I dig*.  
**fons**, ntis, m., a fountain.  
**fortē**, adv., by chance.  
**fortis**, e, adj., strong, brave.  
**fortissimē**, adv., very bravely.  
**fortitēr**, adv., bravely.  
**fortūna**, ae, f., fortune.  
**forūm**, i, n., market-place, forum.  
**fossa**, ae, f., a ditch.  
**frāter**, tris, m., a brother.  
**frans**, fraudis, f., dishonesty.  
**frigus**, ōris, n., cold.  
**frons**, ntis, f., the forehead, brow.  
**fructus**, ūs, m., fruit.  
**fruges**, um, f. pl., fruits, a crop.  
**fruo**, frūitus and fructus, 3, v. dep., *I enjoy*.  
**fūgio**, fugi, fugitum, fūgēre, 3, *I flee, escape*.  
**fūgo**, āvi, ātum, 1, *I put to flight*.  
**fulgēo**, fulsi, fulsum, 2, *I shine*.  
**fulgūr**, ōris, n., lightning.  
**fungor**, functus, 3, v. dep., *I discharge*.  
**fūnus**, ōris, n., a funeral.  
**fūror**, ōris, m., madness.

## G

**Gallia**, ae, f., Gaul.  
**gaudeō**, gāvissus sum, gaudēre, 2, v. n., *I rejoice*. See p. 85.

## HIERMS.

**gāudium**, īi, n., joy.  
**gēner**, ēri, m., a son-in-law.  
**gēnu**, ūs, n., a knee.  
**gēnus**, ēris, n., a race, class.  
**Germāni**, ōrum, m. pl., the Germans.  
**gēro**, gessi, gestum, 3, *I carry on, wage (war)*.  
**glādius**, īi, m., a sword.  
**glōria**, ae, f., glory.  
**gnāvitēr**, adv., actively, vigorously.  
**Gracchus**, i, m., Gracchus, a noble Roman.  
**grācilis**, e, adj., thin.  
**Gracīa**, ae, f., Greece.  
**Gracius**, a, um, adj., Grecian, Greek.  
**grāmen**, īnis, n., grass.  
**grandinat**, i, v. impers., it hails.  
**grātīa**, abl. sing., for the sake of.  
**grātus**, a, um, adj., pleasing.  
**grāvis**, e, adj., heavy, severe.  
**grāvītēr**, adv., heavily, severely, grievously.  
**gusto**, āvi, ātum, 1, *I taste*.

## H

**hābēo**, ūi, itum, 2, *I have*.  
**hābito**, āvi, ātum, 1, *I dwell*.  
**Hannibal**, ālis, m., Hannibal, the great Carthaginian general.  
**Hanno**, ōnis, m., Hanno, a Carthaginian.  
**Hasdrūbal**, ālis, m., Hasdrubal, the brother of Hannibal.  
**hasta**, ae, f., a spear.  
**haud**, adv., not.  
**Hellespontus**, i, m., the Hellespont (now the Dardanelles).  
**Helvētia**, ae, f., the country of the Helvetii (in Switzerland).  
**Helvētius**, a, um, adj., Helvetian.  
**hērī**, adv., yesterday.  
**hiberna**, ōrum, n. pl., winter quarters.  
**hibernus**, a, um, adj., of winter, wintry.  
**hiems**, hiēmis, f., winter.

## HIEMO.

**hiemo**, āvi, ātum, 1, *I winter*.  
**hilaris**, e, adj., *cheerful*.  
**Homerus**, i, m., *Homer, a Greek poet*.  
**homo**, inis, com., *a man, woman*.  
**honor**, ōris, m., *an honour*.  
**hora**, æ, f., *an hour*.  
**Horātius**, ii, m., *Horatius, a Roman poet*.  
**hortor**, ātus, 1, v. dep., *I urge, exhort, encourage*.  
**hortus**, i, m., *a garden*.  
**hostia**, ac, f., *a victim*.  
**hostis**, is, com., *an enemy, public enemy*.  
**humānus**, a, um, adj., *human*.  
**humilis**, e, adj., *low*. See p. 25.

## I

**ibi**, adv., *there*.  
**ignāvē**, adv., *indolently*.  
**ignāvia**, ac, f., *cowardice*.  
**ignēus**, a, um, adj., *fiery, made of fire*.  
**ignorātio**, ōnis, f., *ignorance*.  
**imāgo**, inis, f., *a likeness, portrait, image*.  
**imitor**, atus, 1, v. dep., *I imitate*.  
**immōlo**, āvi, ātum, 1, *I sacrifice*.  
**immortalis**, e, adj., *immortal*.  
**immortalitas**, ātis, f., *immortality*.  
**impērator**, ōris, m., *a military commander, a general*.  
**impēritus**, a, um, adj., *unskilful*.  
**impērium**, ii, n., *empire*.  
**impēro**, āvi, ātum, 1, with dat., *I command*.  
**impetūs**, ūs, m., *an attack, onset*.  
**impransus**, a, um, adj., *unbreakfasted*.  
**imprōbus**, a, um, adj., *dishonest, wicked*.  
**imprudentia**, ac, f., *ignorance, imprudence*.  
**In**, prep. with acc., *into; with abl., in*.  
**incendium**, ii, n., *a fire, conflagration*.  
**incendo**, di, sum, 3, *I set fire to, burn*.

## INTER.

**incertus**, a, um, adj., *uncertain*.  
**incipio**, cēpi, ceptum, 3, *I begin*.  
**incola**, ae, com., *a inhabitant*.  
**incuso**, āvi, ātum, 1, *I accuse, find fault with*.  
**Indi**, ōrum, m. pl., *Indians, people of India*.  
**indoctus**, a, um, adj., *unlearned*.  
**indulgē**, dūsi, dultum, 2, with dat., *I indulge*.  
**industrius**, a, um, adj., *industrious, busy*.  
**inēo**, ii, itum, 4, *I go into, enter*.  
**inere**, tis, adj., *helpless, sluggish*.  
**infamia**, ac, f., *infamy*.  
**infamis**, e, adj., *infamous*.  
**infectus**, a, um, adj., *undone*.  
**inferior**, ius, comp. of inferior, adj., *lower, inferior*.  
**infero**, intūli, illātum, inferre, 3, v. irr., *I carry into*.  
**infinitus**, a, um, adj., *unbounded, infinite*.  
**infirmitas**, ātis, f., *weakness*.  
**infirmus**, a, um, adj., *weak, infirm, feeble*.  
**infra**, prep. with acc., *below*.  
**infringo**, frēgi, fractum, 3, *I break, impair*.  
**ingens**, entis, adj., *immense*.  
**ingredior**, gressus sum, 3, v. dep., *I enter*.  
**inimicitia**, ac, f., *enmity*.  
**inimicus**, a, um, adj., *unfriendly*.  
**initium**, ii, n., *a beginning*.  
**iniuste**, adv., *unjustly*.  
**iniustus**, a, um, adj., *unjust*.  
**innūmērus**, a, um, adj., *innumerable*.  
**inops**, ōpis, adj., *destitute*.  
**instituo**, ūli, ātum, 3, *I appoint, institute*.  
**instrumentum**, i, n., *an instrument*.  
**instruo**, xi, ctum, 3, *I arrange, draw up in order*.  
**insula**, ac, f., *an island*.  
**insum**, fui, esse, v. irr., with dat., *I am in or upon*.  
**intelligo**, lexi, lectum, 3, *I understand*.  
**inter**, prep. with acc., *between, among*.

## JUXTA.

**intercludo**, clūsi, clūsum, 3, *I shut off, intercept*.  
**interēo**, ii, itum, 4, *I perish*.  
**interficio**, feci, fectum, 3, *I put to death, kill*.  
**interitus**, ūs, m., *destruction*.  
**intersum**, fui, esse, v. irreg., with dat., *I am among*.  
**intrā**, prep. with acc., *inside of, within*.  
**intro**, āvi, ātum, 1, *I enter*.  
**intrōeo**, ii, itum, 4, *I go into, enter*.  
**intueor**, Itus sum, 2, v. dep., *I look upon, into*.  
**intumescō**, ūi, 3, v. incep., *I swell*.  
**Invidia**, ac, f., *envy, ill-will*.  
**Ira**, ac, f., *anger*.  
**irascor**, irātus, 3, v. dep., *I am angry*.  
**istūc**, adv., *to that place, thither (where you are)*.  
**itā**, adv., *in that way, thus*.  
**Itālia**, ac, f., *Italy*.  
**iter**, itinēris, n., *a journey*.

## J

**jāco**, ūi, itum, 2, *I lie*.  
**jacio**, jeci, jactum, 3, *I throw*.  
**jam**, adv., *now, already*.  
**jubeo**, jūsi, jussum, 2, *I order, bid*.  
**jucundus**, a, um, adj., *pleasant*.  
**jucundē**, adv., *delightfully, pleasantly*.  
**jūdex**, icis, com., *a judge*.  
**judicium**, ii, n., *judgment*.  
**jūdicō**, āvi, ātum, 1, *I judge*.  
**jungo**, junxi, junctum, 3, *I join*.  
**Jūno**, ōnis, f., *Juno, a goddess*.  
**jūro**, āvi or ātus sum, 1, *I swear*. See p. 85.  
**jūs**, jūris, n., *right, law*.  
**jūsjurandum**, jūrisjūrandi, n., *an oath*.  
**justē**, adv., *justly*.  
**justus**, a, um, adj., *just*.  
**jūvenis**, is, com., *a young man or woman*.  
**jūventus**, ūtis, f., *youth*.  
**juxta**, prep. with acc., *near, hard by, next to*.



## LABIENUS.

## L

**Labiēnus**, i, m., *Labiēnus*, one of Caesar's lieutenants.  
**lābor**, ōris, m., labour, hardship.  
**lābor**, lapsus, 3, v. dep., *I glide, pass away, fall*.  
**lac**, lactis, c., milk.  
**Lacedaemon**, ōis, f., *Lacedaemon* or *Sparta*.  
**Lacedaemonii**, ōrum, m., the *Lacedaemonians*.  
**lācio**, lāctre, 3, *I draw, entice* (rare). See p. 120.  
**lācus**, ūs, m., a lake.  
**Lacca**, ac, m., *Lacca*, a Roman.  
**laetitia**, ac, f., joy.  
**laetus**, a, um, adj., joyful.  
**lapis**, idis, m., a stone.  
**lapidēus**, a, um, adj., of stone.  
**lātā**, adv., widely, wide.  
**Lātīnus**, a, um, adj., Latin.  
**Lātōna**, ac, f., *Lalona*, mother of *Apollo* and *Phaon*.  
**latro**, ōnis, m., a robber.  
**lātus**, a, um, adj., wide, broad.  
**laudo**, āvi, ātum, 1, *I praise*.  
**laus**, laudis, f., praise.  
**lēgātus**, i, m., ambassador, lieutenant.  
**lēgio**, ōnis, f., a legion.  
**lēgo**, lēgi, lectum, 3, *I gather, read*.  
**lēo**, ōnis, m., a lion.  
**Leōnidas**, ac, m., *Leonidas*, a king of *Sparta*.  
**lēpus**, ōris, m., a hare.  
**Lesbus**, i, f., *Lesbos*, an island off *Asia Minor*.  
**lēvis**, e, adj., light.  
**lex**, legis, f., a law.  
**liber**, tri, m., a book.  
**liber**, ōra, ōrum, adj., free.  
**libere**, adv., freely.  
**liberi**, ōrum, m. pl., children.  
**libero**, āvi, ātum, 1, *I free, deliver*.  
**libertas**, ātis, f., freedom, liberty.  
**libet**, libit and libitum est, libere, 2, v. impers., with dat., it pleases.  
**Libya**, ac, f., *Africa*.  
**licet**, licit and licitum est, licere, 2, v. impers., with dat., it is lawful, allowed.

## MAGNUS.

**licitor**, ōris, m., a lictor.  
**lingua**, ae, f., tongue, language.  
**liquet**, liquere, 2, v. impers., with dat., it is clear, evident.  
**littera**, ac, f., a letter of the alphabet.  
**litterae**, ārum, f. pl., letters, learning, also an epistle, letter.  
**litus**, ōris, n., a shore.  
**Livius**, ii, m., *Livy*, a Roman historian.  
**locus**, i, m., a place (in pl. loci, single places; loca, places connected with one another, regions).  
**longe**, adv., far, far off.  
**longinquitas**, ātis, f., length, distance.  
**longinquus**, a, um, adj., long, distant.  
**longius**, adv., comp. of *longe*, farther, too far.  
**longus**, a, um, adj., long.  
**loquor**, locutus, 3, v. dep., *I speak*.  
**Luceria**, ac, f., *Luceria*, a town in *Apulia*.  
**lūcescit**, (illuxit) lūcere, 3, v. impers., it becomes light.  
**Lūcius**, ii, m., *Luctus*, a Roman fore-name.  
**Lūcrētius**, ii, m., *Lucretius*, a Roman poet.  
**lūdi**, ōrum, m. pl., games.  
**lūdo**, lūsi, lūsum, 3, *I play*.  
**lūdus**, i, m., play, game, school.  
**lūna**, ae, f., the moon.  
**lusciniā**, ae, f., a nightingale.  
**lux**, lūcis, f., light.  
**Lycurgus**, i, m., *Lycurgus*, the Spartan legislator.

## M

**Macedo**, ōnis, m., a Macedonian.  
**magis**, adv. (sup. *māximē*), rather, in a higher degree.  
**magister**, tri, m., a master, teacher.  
**magistrātus**, ūs, m., a magistrate.  
**magnificus**, a, um, adj., magnificent. (earnestly).  
**magnopere**, adv., greatly.  
**magnus**, a, um, adj., great.

## MEUS.

**mājores**, um, m. pl., ancestors.  
**mālē**, adv., comp. *pējus*, sup. *pejissimē*, badly, ill.  
**mālēvōlus**, a, um, adj., ill-wishing, malevolent.  
**mālo**, mālui, malle, irr. v., *I am more willing, I prefer, have rather*.  
**mālum**, i, n., an apple.  
**mālum**, i, n., an evil.  
**mālus**, i, f., an apple-tree.  
**mālus**, a, um, adj., bad, wicked, evil.  
**mandātum**, i, n., a charge, commission.  
**mānēo**, mansi, mansum, 2, *I remain*.  
**manifestus**, a, um, adj., evident, manifest.  
**manipulus**, i, m., a maniple.  
**manus**, ūs, f., a hand.  
**Marathon**, ōnis, f., *Marathon*, a plain near Athens.  
**mare**, is, n., the sea.  
**margarita**, ac, f., a pearl.  
**marinus**, a, um, adj., of the sea.  
**Mārius**, ii, m., *Marius*, a Roman general.  
**marmor**, ōris, n., marble.  
**māter**, tris, f., a mother.  
**Maximus**, i, m., *Maximus*, (the greatest), a surname of *Fabius*.  
**mēditor**, ātus, 1, v. dep., *I meditate on, study*.  
**membrāna**, ac, f., thin skin, membrane.  
**mēmōr**, ōris, adj., mindful.  
**mēmōrābilis**, e, adj., to be remembered, memorable.  
**mēmōria**, ae, f., memory.  
**Mēnāpi**, ōrum, m. pl., *Menapi*, a Gallic tribe.  
**mendax**, ācis, adj. and subs., lying, false, a liar.  
**mens**, mentis, f., mind.  
**mensis**, is, m., a month.  
**mentior**, itus, 4, v. dep., *I lie, tell a lie*.  
**mēreo**, ūi, itum, 2, *I deserv*. Also *mēreor*, itus, 2, v. dep.  
**mētallum**, i, n., a metal.  
**mētor**, mētens, 4, v. dep., *I measure*.  
**mētūdo**, ūi, ūtum, 3, *I fear*.  
**mētus**, ūs, m., fear.  
**mēus**, a, um, poss. pron., my, mine.

\* Voc. sing. mi.

## MIGRO.

**migro**, āvi, ātum, 1, *I migrate, depart*  
**miles**, militis, m., a soldier.

**Minerva**, ac, f., *Minerva*.

**minimē**, adv., *in the least degree*.

**minister**, tri, m., a servant.

**miros**, ātus, 1, v. dep., *I wonder at, admire*.

**mirus**, a, um, adj., *wonderful*.

**miser**, ēra, ērum, adj., *wretched*.

**misēreor**, ritus or ritus, 2, v. dep., *I pity, have pity on*.

**misēret**, ūt & misēritum est, misēritus, v. impers., *it excites pity*.

**mitis**, e, adj., *mild*.

**mitto**, misi, missum, 3, *I send*.

**mōdus**, i, m., a measure, manner.

**moenia**, ium, n. pl., *fortifications*.

**molestus**, a, um, adj., *troublesome*.

**mollio**, ivi, itum, 4, *I soften, assuage*.

**molli**, e, adj., *soft, mellow*.

**mōneō**, ūi, itum, 2, *I advise, warn*.

**mons**, tis, m., a mountain.

**mōnumentum**, i, n., a monument.

**morbus**, i, m., a disease.

**mōrior**, mortuus, 3, v. dep., *I die (fut part. mōriturus, about to die)*.

**mors**, tis, f., *death*.

**mortalis**, e, adj., *mortal*.

**mortuus**, a, um, adj., *dead*.

**mōs**, mōris, m., *manner, custom*.

**mōvēō**, mōvi, mōtum, 2, *I move, disturb, trouble*.

**mox**, adv., *soon, shortly*.

**mūlier**, ēris, f., a woman, wife.

**multitudo**, inis, f., a multitude.

**multus**, a, um, adj., *much, many*.

**mundus**, i, m., *the world*.

**mūnimentum**, i, n., a fortification. [*tify*].

**mūnio**, ivi, itum, 4, *I fortify, function*.

**mūrus**, i, m., a wall.

**mūto**, āvi, ātum, 1, *I change*.

## NONNUNQUAM.

## N

**narro**, āvi, ātum, 1, *I relate*.

**nascor**, nātus, 3, v. dep., *I am born*.

**nātūra**, ae, f., *nature*.

**nātus**, a, um, part. and adj., *born, aged*.

**nauta**, ae, m., a sailor.

**nāvālis**, e, adj., *naval*.

**nāvis**, is, f., a ship.

**nē**, conj., *not, lest, that not*. See pp. 47, 97.

**nec**, nēquē, conj., *neither, nor*.

**necessārius**, a, um, adj., *necessary, needful*.

**nēfās**, indecl. n., *wickedness, impiety*.

**nēgo**, āvi, ātum, 1, *I deny*.

**nēgōtium**, ii, n., *business*.

**nemo**, inis, com., *nobody*.

**Neptūnus**, i, m., *Neptune, the god of the sea*.

**nēquam**, indecl. adj., *comp. nēquior, sup. nēquissimus, worthless*.

**nēquēō**, ivi or ii, itum, ire, 4, *I am unable, cannot*.

**Nērō**, ōnis, m., *Nero, a Roman emperor*.

**Nervii**, ōrum, m. pl., *the Nervii, a Gallic tribe*.

**nescio**, ivi or ii, itum, 4, *I am ignorant of*.

**neuter**, tra, trum, adj. (gen. sing. ius, dat. i), *neither of two*.

**nēve**, conj., *and that not, and not, nor*.

**nidus**, i, m., a nest.

**niger**, gra, grum, adj., *black*.

**nihil**, indecl. n., *nothing*.

**Nīlus**, i, m., *the Nile, a river in Egypt*.

**nimis**, adv., *too, too much*.

**nīngit**, nīngit, nīngere, 3, v. impers., *it snows*.

**nisi**, conj., *unless, except*.

**nitor**, nīsus and nixus, 3, v. dep., *I strive*.

**nix**, nīvis, f., *snow*.

**nōbīlis**, e, adj., *distinguished, noble, celebrated*.

**nōcēō**, ūi, itum, 2, *with dam, hurt, harm*.

**nōlo**, nōlūi, nolle, v. irreg., *I am unwilling, I do not wish*.

**nōmen**, inis, n., a name.

**nōn**, adv., *not*.

**nonnullus**, a, um, adj., *some*.

**nonnunquam**, adv., *sometimes*.

## OMNIS.

**nostar**, tra, trum, poss. pron., *our, ours*.

**nōtus**, a, um, adj., *known*.

**nōvus**, a, um, adj., *new*.

**nox**, noctis, f., *night*.

**noxius**, a, um, adj., *hurtful, injurious, guilty*.

**nubes**, is, f., a cloud.

**nullus**, a, um, adj. (gen. sing. ius, dat. i), *none*.

**nūmēso**, āvi, ātum, 1, *I count*.

**nūmērus**, i, m., a number.

**nunc**, adv., *now*.

**nunquam**, adv., *never*.

**nūtrio**, ivi, itum, 4, *I nourish, nurture*.

## O

**ob**, prep. with acc., *on account of*.

**obādio**, ivi, itum, 4, *with dat., I obey*.

**obēō**, ii, itum, 4, *I meet, esp. meet death, I die*.

**oblīvīscor**, litus, 3, v. dep., *I forget*.

**obscāro**, āvi, ātum, 1, *I darken, obscure*.

**observo**, āvi, ātum, 1, *I observe, respect*.

**obses**, idis, com., a hostage.

**obsidēō**, sēdi, sessum, 2, *I blockade, lay siege to*.

**obsidio**, inis, f., a siege, blockade.

**obsto**, stiti, stitum, 1, *I oppose, prevent*.

**obsum**, obfui or offui, obesse, v. irreg., *with dat., I am in the way, am hurtful to, injure*.

**obtempēro**, āvi, ātum, 1, *I obey, comply with*.

**occidēna**, tis, m., *the west, the setting sun*.

**occido**, idi, isum, 3, *I slay, kill*.

**occupātus**, a, um, adj., *engaged, busy*.

**occupō**, āvi, ātum, 1, *I seize upon*.

**ocēānus**, i, m., *the ocean*.

**ocūlus**, i, m., an eye.

**odūm**, ii, n., *hatred*.

**odōr**, ōris, m., a smell, scent.

**offero**, obtuli, oblātum, offerre, 3, v. irr., *I present*.

**olim**, adv., *formerly, once upon a time*.

**omnis**, e, adj., *all, every*.

## ONUS.

**onus**, ōnis, *n.*, a load, burden.  
**opēra**, ae, *f.*, pains, labour.  
**opēram dare**, to devote oneself.  
**oportet**, ūt, 2, *v. impers.*, it be-oves, is necessary.  
**oppidum**, i, *n.*, a town.  
**oppōno**, pōsui, pōsitum, 3, *I set against, oppose.*  
**opprimo**, pressui, pressum, 3, *I press upon, overwhelm.*  
**oppugno**, āvi, ātum, 1, *I attack, assault.*  
**opto**, āvi, ātum, 1, *I wish, desire.*  
**opulentus**, a, um, *adj.*, wealthy.  
**opus**, ōris, *n.*, a work.  
**opus**, *n.* and *adj.*, *indecl.*, with *abl.*, need, necessity; necessary.  
**ora**, ae, *f.*, the coast.  
**oraculum**, i, *n.*, an oracle.  
**oratio**, ōnis, *f.*, an oration, speech.  
**orator**, ōris, *m.*, an orator.  
**ordior**, orsus, 4, *v. dep.*, *I begin.*  
**orior**, ortus, ōrii, 4, *v. dep.*, *I rise.* See p. 122.  
**orno**, āvi, ātum, 1, *I adorn.*  
**oro**, āvi, ātum, 1, *I entreat.*  
**os**, ōris, *n.*, a mouth. [*pray.*]  
**os**, ossis, *n.*, a bone.

## P

**pābūlor**, ātus, 1, *v. dep.*, *I forage.*  
**pallium**, ii, *n.*, a cloak.  
**pāratus**, a, um, *adj.*, prepared, ready.  
**pārens**, entis, *e.*, a parent.  
**pāreo**, ūl, ūtum, 2, with *dat.*, *I obey.*  
**pārio**, pēperi, and partum, 3, *I bring forth.* *Fut. part.* pāriturus.  
**pāro**, āvi, ātum, 1, *I prepare, get, gain.*  
**pars**, tis, *f.*, a part.  
**partior**, itus, 4, *v. dep.*, *I share, divide.*  
**parvus**, a, um, *adj.*, small, little.  
**passus**, ūs, *m.*, a pace (about 5 feet).  
**pāter**, tris, *m.*, a father.  
**pātienter**, *adv.*, patiently.  
**pātor**, passus, 3, *v. dep.*, *I endure, suffer.*  
**patria**, ae, *f.*, a native land, country.

## PLACET.

**paucus**, a, um, *adj.*, few.  
**pauper**, ōris, *adj.*, poor.  
**paupertas**, ātis, *f.*, poverty.  
**pāvo**, ōnis, *m.*, a peacock.  
**pax**, pācis, *f.*, peace.  
**pēcūnia**, ae, *f.*, money.  
**pēdas**, itis, *m.*, a foot-soldier.  
**pēditātus**, ūs, *m.*, infantry.  
**pellis**, is, *f.*, a skin, hide (of an animal).  
**pēnās**, *prep.* with *acc.*, in the power of.  
**pēr**, *prep.* with *acc.*, through.  
**percipio**, cēpi, cēptum, 3, *I perceive.*  
**perdo**, didi, dītum, 3, *I destroy.*  
**pēro**, ii, itum, 4, *I perish.*  
**perfectus**, a, um, *adj.*, finished, perfect.  
**perfero**, tuli, lātum, ferre, 3, *v. irr.*, *I bear through, endure.*  
**periculum**, i, *n.*, danger.  
**pēritus**, a, um, *adj.*, skilful.  
**perlāgo**, lēgi, lectum, 3, *I read through.*  
**permulti**, ae, a, *adj.* (*pl.*), very many.  
**perniciōsus**, a, um, *adj.*, destructive.  
**perpetuus**, a, um, *adj.*, continual.  
**perrumpo**, rūpi, ruptum, 3, *I burst through.*  
**Persa**, ae, *m.*, a Persian.  
**persuādeo**, āsi, āsum, 2, with *dat.*, *I persuade.*  
**pervēnio**, vēni, ventum, 4, *I arrive at.*  
**perversus**, a, um, *adj.*, wilful, perverse.  
**pēto**, ivi and ii, itum, 3, *I seek.*  
**Phaëthon**, ontis, *m.*, Phaëthon, a son of Apollo.  
**Phidias**, ae, *m.*, Phidias, a famous Athenian sculptor.  
**philosophus**, i, *m.*, a philosopher.  
**piget**, piguit and pigitum est, pigere, 2, *v. impers.*, it vexes.  
**pingo**, pinxi, pictum, 3, *I paint, embroider.*  
**pīrum**, i, *n.*, a pear.  
**pirus**, i, *f.*, a pear-tree.  
**piscis**, is, *m.*, a fish.  
**Pisistrātus**, i, *m.*, Pisistrātus, a despot of Athens.  
**plāceo**, ūi, itum, 2, with *dat.*, *I please.*  
**plācet**, ūit or itum est, ēre, 2, *v. impers.*, it pleases.

## PRÆEO.

**plācidus**, a, um, *adj.*, quiet.  
**plānē**, *adv.*, altogether.  
**plāntiles**, ūi, *f.*, a plann.  
**planta**, ae, *f.*, a sprout, plant.  
**Plāto**, ōnis, *m.*, Plāto, a famous Greek philosopher.  
**plēnus**, a, um, *adj.* with *gen.*, full.  
**Plinius**, ii, *m.*, Pliny, the name of two Roman authors.  
**pluit**, pluit or plūvit, plūere, 3, *v. impers.*, it rains.  
**plūs**, ūris, *adj.* (*ta pl.* plures, plūra), more.  
**pōna**, ae, *f.*, punishment.  
**Poeni**, ūrum, *m. pl.*, the Carthaginians.  
**poenitet**, nituit, nitēre, 2, *v. impers.*, it causes sorrow, repents.  
**pōeta**, ae, *m.*, a poet.  
**pollicēor**, itus, 2, *v. dep.*, *I promise.*  
**Pompēius**, ūi, *m.*, Pompey, the rival of Cæsar.  
**pōnē**, *prep.* with *acc.*, behind.  
**pōno**, pōsui, pōsitum, 3, *I place.*  
**pons**, idis, *m.*, a bridge.  
**porta**, ae, *f.*, a gate.  
**porto**, āvi, atum, 1, *I carry.*  
**portus**, ūs, *m.*, a harbour.  
**possum**, pōtūi, posse, *v. irreg.*, *I am able, can.* See p. 76.  
**post**, *prep.* with *acc.*, after.  
**postūlo**, āvi, ātum, 1, *I demand.*  
**pōtens**, entis, *adj.*, powerful.  
**pōtentia**, ae, *f.*, power, i.e. power from personal weight, influence.  
**pōtestas**, ātis, *f.*, power, i.e. magisterial power.  
**pōtor**, itus, 4, *v. dep.*, with *abl.*, *I take possession of, obtain.*  
**præ**, *prep.* with *abl.*, before, in comparison with.  
**præaltus**, a, um, *adj.*, very high.  
**præbēo**, ūi, itum, 2, *I furnish, afford, exhibit.*  
**præceptor**, ōris, *m.*, a teacher.  
**præceptum**, i, *n.*, precept, instruction, lesson.  
**præda**, ae, *f.*, booty.  
**prædeo**, ii, itum, 4, *I go before.*

## PRAEFERO.

**praefēro**, tūli, lātum, 3, v. irreg., *I prefer*.  
**praemitto**, misi, missum, 3, *I send on before*.  
**praemium**, ii, n., a reward.  
**praesens**, entis, adj., present.  
**praestābilis**, e, adj., excellent.  
**praestans**, autis, adj., excellent.  
**praesum**, fūi, esse, n. irreg., with *dat.*, *I am before, at the head of*.  
**praetēr**, prep. with *acc.*, beside.  
**praetērēo**, ii, itum, 4, v. irreg., *I pass by*.  
**praetēritus**, a, um, adj., past.  
**praevēnio**, vēni, ventum, 4, *I anticipate*.  
**prēmo**, pressi, pressum, 3, *I press*.  
**primārius**, a, um, adj., first-rate, eminent.  
**primo**, adv., at first.  
**primum**, adv., first, in the first place.  
**pristinus**, a, um, adj., former, olden.  
**prīus**, adv., sooner, before.  
**prō**, prep. with *abl.*, before, for, on behalf of.  
**prōbē**, adv., rightly, properly.  
**prōbitas**, ātis, f., honesty, integrity.  
**prōbus**, a, um, adj., good, upright.  
**prōdo**, dīdi, dītum, 3, *I hand down, betray*.  
**proellum**, ii, n., a battle.  
**prōfēro**, tūli, lātum, terre, 3, v. irreg., *I extend*.  
**prōficiſcor**, fectus, 3, v. dep., *I set out*. [*deep*.]  
**prōfundus**, a, um, adj., deep.  
**prōgrēdior**, gressus, 3, v. dep., *I advance*.  
**prōhibēo**, ūi, itum, 2, *I keep off, prohibit*.  
**prōpē**, prep. with *acc.*, near.  
**prōpē**, adv., nearly.  
**prōpinquus**, a, um, adj., near.  
**proptēr**, prep. with *acc.*, on account of.  
**prōsum**, fūi, prōdesse, v. irreg., *I am serviceable to, do good to*.  
**prōvidēo**, vidī, vīsum, 2, *I foresee, provide*.

## QUO.

**proximus**, a, um, sup. adj., nearest, next.  
**prūdēns**, ntis, adj., prudent, sagacious.  
**prūdētia**, ae, f., knowledge, prudence.  
**prūnum**, i, n., a plum.  
**prūnus**, i, f., a plum-tree.  
**publicus**, a, um, adj., public.  
**pūdet**, ūit or pūdītum est, ēre, 2, v. impers., *it shames*.  
**pūella**, ae, f., a girl.  
**pūer**, ēre, m., a boy.  
**pugna**, ae, f., a battle.  
**pugno**, āvi, ātum, 1, *I fight*.  
**pulcher**, cra, crum, adj., beautiful.  
**Pūnicus**, a, um, adj., Punic, Carthaginian.  
**pūnio**, īvi, itum, 4, *I punish*.  
**pūto**, āvi, ātum, 1, *I think*.  
**Pythāgoras**, ae, m., Pythagoras, a famous Greek philosopher.

## Q

**quaero**, quaeſīvi, aītum, 3, *I seek, enquire*.  
**quaestio**, ōnis, f., a question.  
**quālis**, e, pron. adj., of what sort, as.  
**quam**, adv. and conj., than, as.  
**quantus**, a, um, adj., how great.  
**quārē**, adv., why, on what account.  
**quasi**, adv., as if.  
**quātio**, no perf., quassum, 3, *I shake*.  
**querens**, ūs, f., an oak.  
**quīa**, conj., because.  
**quidam**, quaedam, quoddam and quiddam, pron. indef., a certain, certain one, somebody.  
**quidem**, adv., indeed.  
**quin**, conj., that not (with subj.). See pp. 48, 97.  
**quis**, quae, quid, pron. interrog., who, which, what?  
**quisnam**, quāenam, quidnam, interrog. pron., who, which, what?  
**quisquē**, quaeque, quodque (and subst. quidque or quicquē, indef. pron., every one, whoever)  
**quō**, adv., whither.

## RESPONDEO.

**quō**, conj. with subj., in order that.\* See p. 98.  
**quōd**, conj., because.  
**quōminus**, conj. with subj., that not. See p. 98.  
**quondam**, adv., some time, formerly.  
**quōquē**, conj., also, even, too.  
**quōt**, indecl. adj., how many?  
**quōtidie**, adv., every day.  
**quum**, adv. and conj., when.

## R

**rādix**, icis, f., a root.  
**rāpax**, ācis, adj., rapacious.  
**rāpidus**, a, um, adj., rapid.  
**rāpio**, ūi, raptum, ēre, 3, *I seize*.  
**rārō**, adv., seldom, rarely.  
**rārus**, a, um, adj., rare.  
**ratiō**, ōnis, f., reason.  
**reito**, āvi, ātum, 1, *I read aloud*.  
**reecordor**, ātus, 1, v. dep., *I call to mind*.  
**recreō**, āvi, ātum, 1, *I refresh*.  
**rectus**, a, um, adj., straight, right.  
**recūpēro**, āvi, ātum, 1, *I recover, get back*.  
**reclūso**, āvi, ātum, 1, *I object, refuse*.  
**redāmo**, āvi, ātum, 1, *I love in return*.  
**redēo**, ii, itum, 4, *I return*.  
**reſēro**, rētūli or rettūli, rēlātum, rēſēre, 3, v. irreg., *I bring back*.  
**rēgina**, ae, f., a queen.  
**regno**, āvi, ātum, 1, *I reign, am king*.  
**regnum**, i, n., a kingdom.  
**rēgo**, rexi, rectum, 3, *I rule*.  
**Regūlus**, i, m., Regulus, a famous Roman.  
**rēlinquo**, liqui, lictum, 3, *I leave, quit*.  
**rēmīniscor**, 3, *I remember*.  
**rēnōvo**, āvi, ātum, 1, *I make new again, restore*.  
**rēpērio**, pēri, pertum, 4, *I find*.  
**rēs**, rēi, f., a thing.  
**rēsisto**, stiti, stitum, 3, with *dat.*, *I resist*.  
**respondēo**, di, sum, 2, with *dat.*, *I answer*.

## RETE.

**rēte**, is, n., a net.  
**rēus**, i, m., an accused man, defendant.  
**revertō**, ti, sum, 3, I turn back, return.  
**revertor**, versus, 3, v. dep., I turn back, return.  
**rex**, rēgis, m., a king.  
**Rhēnus**, i, m., the Rhine.  
**Rhōdānus**, i, m., the Rhone.  
**Rhōdus**, i, f., Rhodes, an island of Greece.  
**ripa**, ac, f., a bank, shore.  
**rōgo**, āvi, ātum, 1, I ask.  
**Rōma**, ac, f., Rome (the city).  
**Rōmānus**, m., a Roman.  
**Rōmānus**, a, um, adj., Roman.  
**Rōmulus**, i, m., Romulus.  
**rosa**, ac, f., a rose.  
**Roscius**, ii, m., Roscius, a Roman.  
**rūpes**, is, f., a rock.  
**rūs**, rūs, n., the country.

## S

**sācer**, cra, crum, adj., sacred.  
**saepē**, adv., often.  
**saepēnumēro**, adv., oftentimes.  
**saepissimē**, adv., very often.  
**sāgitta**, ae, f., an arrow.  
**Sāguntini**, ōrum, m. pl., Saguntines, the people of Saguntum in Spain.  
**Sālāmis**, inis, f., Salamis, an island near Athens.  
**Sallustius**, ii, m., Sallust, a Roman historian.  
**salto**, āvi, ātum, 1, I dance.  
**sālūs**, ūtis, f., safety.  
**salvus**, a, um, adj., safe.  
**sanguis**, inis, m., blood.  
**sāpiens**, ntis, adj. and subs., wise, wise-man.  
**sāpientia**, ae, f., wisdom.  
**sāpio**, ūvi or ūi, 3, I savour of, taste, am wise.  
**sātis**, adv., enough, sufficiently.  
**Satrius**, ii, m., Satrius, a Roman.  
**scōlēs**, ēris, n., a crime.  
**scientia**, ae, f., knowledge.  
**scio**, ūvi, itum, 4, I know.  
**Scipio**, ōnis, m., Scipio, a noble Roman.

## SOLEO.

**scribo**, psi, ptum, 3, I write.  
**scriptor**, ōris, m., a writer, author.  
**scutum**, i, n., a shield.  
**Scythae**, ārum, m. pl., the Scythians.  
**secundum**, prep. with acc., following, in accordance with.  
**sed**, conj., but.  
**sedēo**, sedī, sessum, 2, I sit.  
**sedes**, is, f., a seat.  
**segnities**, ēi, f., slothfulness, indolence.  
**semper**, adv., always, ever.  
**senātus**, ūs, m., the senate.  
**senectūs**, ūtis, f., old age.  
**sensus**, ūs, m., a sense.  
**sensio**, ūi, sum, 4, I feel, perceive.  
**sēpello**, ūvi or ūi, pultum, 4, I bury.  
**sequor**, secūtus, 3, v. dep., I follow.  
**sērēnus**, a, um, adj., clear.  
**sermo**, ōnis, m., a discourse.  
**sēro**, sevi, sātum, 3, I plant, sow.  
**servitūs**, ūtis, f., slavery.  
**servo**, āvi, ātum, 1, I preserve, save.  
**servus**, i, m., a slave.  
**servus**, a, um, adj., servile.  
**si**, conj., if.  
**Sicilia**, ae, f., Sicily.  
**sidus**, ōris, n., a star, constellation.  
**signum**, i, n., a sign, signal.  
**silentium**, ii, n., silence.  
**silva**, ae, f., a wood.  
**similis**, e, adj., like. See pp. 24, 25. c  
**simul**, adv., at the same time.  
**simulac**, simul ac, adv., as soon as.  
**simulacrum**, i, n., an image, statue.  
**simulatio**, ōnis, f., a pretence.  
**sine**, prep. with abl., without.  
**sōcer**, ēri, m., a father-in-law.  
**socius**, ii, m., a partner, ally, companion.  
**Socrātes**, is, m., Socrates, the sage of Athens.  
**sol**, sōlis, m., the sun.  
**soleo**, itus sum, ēre, 2, v. n., I am accustomed. See p. 85.

## SUBTER.

**Sōlon**, ōnis, m., Solon, the Athenian lawgiver.  
**solum**, adv., only.  
**sōlus**, a, um, adj. (gen. sing. ūs, dat. i), alone.  
**solvere**, solvi, sōlūtum, 3, I loosen, pay.  
**somnus**, i, m., sleep.  
**sōnitus**, ūs, m., a sound, noise.  
**sōror**, ōris, f., a sister.  
**sors**, ūis, f., a lot.  
**Sparta**, ac, f., Sparta.  
**spēcio**, obs., spēxi, spēcere, 3, I look.  
**speculo**, āvi, ātum, 1, I look at, look on, behold.  
**speculor**, ātus, 1, v. dep., I spy out.  
**speratus**, a, um, adj., hoped for.  
**spero**, āvi, ātum, 1, I hope.  
**spēs**, ēi, f., hope.  
**splendidus**, a, um, adj., splendid, bright.  
**splendor**, ōris, m., brightness, brilliancy.  
**statim**, adv., immediately.  
**statio**, ōnis, f., a post, station.  
**statuō**, ūi, ātum, 3, I fix, determine.  
**stella**, ac, f., a star.  
**sto**, steti, stātum, 1, I stand.  
**strēnūe**, adv., vigorously.  
**strēnuus**, a, um, adj., vigorous.  
**studēo**, ūi, 2, I am eager, zealous.  
**studiōsus**, a, um, adj., zealous, eager after.  
**studium**, ii, n., zeal, a pursuit, study.  
**stultitia**, ae, f., folly.  
**stultus**, a, um, adj., foolish.  
**suādeo**, suāvi, suāsūm, 2, with dat., I advise.  
**suāvis**, e, adj., sweet, delightful.  
**sub**, prep. with abl. or acc., beneath, under, up to; of time, about.  
**subdifficilis**, e, adj., somewhat difficult.  
**subeo**, ūi, itum, 4, I go up to, under.  
**subitus**, a, um, adj., sudden.  
**subsequor**, cūtus, 3, v. dep., I follow up.  
**subsum**, no perf., v. irreg., I am under, amongst.  
**subter**, prep. with acc. or abl., under, beneath.

## SUMMUS.

**summus**, a, um, *superl. adj.*, highest, utmost, greatest.  
**sūper**, *prep.* with acc. or abl., over.  
**sūpero**, āvi, ātum, 1, I over-come.  
**sūpersum**, fūi, esse, v. *irreg.*, I remain over, survive.  
**sūperus**, a, um, *adj.* (comp. sūperior, *superl.* sūpermus or summus), upper.  
**suprā**, *prep.* with acc., above.  
**supremus**, a, um, *adj.*, superl. of sūperus, highest; relat. to time, last.  
**suscipio**, cēpi, ceptum, 3, I undertake.  
**sūus**, a, umi, *reflex. pron.* poss., his, her, its, their own.

## T

**tābernāculum**, i, n., a tent.  
**tāceo**, ūi, itum, 2, I am silent.  
**taedēt**, dūit, pertaesum est, 2, v. *impers.*, it disgusts, wearies.  
**tālis**, e, *pron. adj.*, of that sort, such.  
**tan**, adv., so, to such a degree.  
**tantum**, adv., only.  
**taurus**, i, m., a bull.  
**tēgo**, texi, tectum, 3, I cover.  
**tēlum**, i, n., a dart, weapon, missile.  
**tēmēritas**, ātis, f., recklessness, rashness.  
**tempestas**, ātis, f., a tempest.  
**templum**, i, n., a temple.  
**tempus**, ōris, n., time.  
**tēneo**, ūi, tentum, 2, I hold, retain.  
**tēner**, ēra, ērum, *adj.*, tender, soft.  
**tēnuis**, e, *adj.*, thin, delicate, slender.  
**tēnus**, *prep.* with abl., reaching to, as far as.  
**terra**, ae, f., the earth, land.  
**terreo**, ūi, itum, 2, I terrify, frighten, alarm.  
**terror**, ōris, m., terror, alarm.  
**Thāles**, ōtis, m., Thales, the philosopher.  
**Thēmistōcles**, is, m., Themistocles, a famous Athenian.

## ULLUS.

**Tībērius**, ii, m., Tiberius (a common Roman fore-name).  
**tigris**, is or Idis, com., a tiger, tigress.  
**timēo**, ūi, 2, I fear.  
**timidus**, a, um, *adj.*, timid.  
**timor**, ōris, m., fear.  
**Timōthēus**, ēi, m., Timotheus, a famous Greek.  
**Titus** (T.), i, m., Titus (a common Roman fore-name).  
**tōnat**, ūit, āre, 1, v. *impers.*, it thunders.  
**tōtus**, a, um, *adj.*, whole, all.  
**trabs**, trābis, f., a beam.  
**tracto**, āvi, ātum, 1, I handle, deal with.  
**trādo**, dīdi, dītum, 3, I hand down, deliver.  
**trāho**, traxi, tractum, 3, I draw, drag.  
**tranquillus**, a, um, *adj.*, calm.  
**trans**, *prep.* with acc., across.  
**transducō**, duxi, ductum, 3, I lead across.  
**transēo**, ii, itum, 4, v. *irreg.*, I cross over.  
**Trāsīmēnus**, i, m., the lake Trasimene in Italy.  
**Trēbonius**, ii, m., Trebonius, one of Caesar's lieutenants.  
**tribūo**, ūi, ātum, 3, I give, assign.  
**tristis**, e, *adj.*, sad.  
**triumpho**, āvi, ātum, 1, I triumph. See p. 132.  
**Troja**, ae, f., Troy, a city in Asia Minor.  
**Trojānus**, a, um, *adj.*, Trojan, of Troy.  
**tūeor**, tūmus, 2, v. *dep.*, I gaze, guard, protect.  
**tum**, adv. and *conj.*, then.  
**turpis**, e, *adj.*, base, disgraceful.  
**turpitudō**, inis, f., disgrace.  
**turris**, is, f., a tower.  
**tūtus**, a, um, *adj.*, safe.  
**tūus**, a, um, *poss. pron.*, thy, thine.  
**tyrannus**, i, m., a despot, tyrant.

## U

**ūbi**, adv., where.  
**ullus**, a, um, *adj.* (gen. sing. iūs, dat. sing. i), any.

## VESPERASCIT.

**ultrā**, *prep.* with acc., on the farther side of, beyond.  
**unquam**, adv., at any time, ever.  
**ūnus**, a, um, *adj.* (gen. sing. iūs, dat. sing. i), one, alone.  
**urbs**, urbis, f., a city.  
**ūt**, adv. and *conj.*, as; that, in order that. See p. 87.  
**ūter**, rā, ru, n., *adj.* (gen. sing. iūs, dat. sing. i), which of two.  
**ūtilis**, e, *adj.*, useful.  
**ūtor**, ūsus, 3, v. *dep.*, with abl., I use.  
**uxor**, ōris, f., a wife.

## V

**vālēo**, ūi, itum, 2, I am strong, in good health.  
**vālētudo**, inis, f., health.  
**vālidus**, a, um, *adj.*, strong.  
**vallis**, is, f., a valley.  
**vārius**, a, um, *adj.*, different, various.  
**vasto**, āvi, ātum, 1, I lay waste.  
**vectigāl**, ālis, n., a tax.  
**vehementer**, adv., vehemently, warmly.  
**vēho**, vexi, vectum, 4, I carry (in pass., I ride).  
**Vēientes**, um, m. pl., the Veientes, the people of Veii, near Rome.  
**vēlox**, ōcis, *adj.*, swift.  
**vēneror**, ātus, 1, v. *dep.*, I reverence, worship.  
**vēnilo**, vēni, ventum, 4, I come.  
**vēnor**, ātus, 1, v. *dep.*, I hunt.  
**ventitō**, āvi, 1, v. *freg.*, I come frequently.  
**ventus**, i, m., the wind.  
**Vēnusia**, ae, f., Venusia, a town in Italy.  
**vēr**, vēris, n., the spring.  
**vērēor**, itus, 2, v. *dep.*, I fear, reverence.  
**vērismilis**, e, *adj.*, likely, probable.  
**versus**, ūs, m., a line, verse.  
**versus**, *prep.* with acc., towards (only of place or direction).  
**vērus**, a, um, *adj.*, true.  
**vescor**, 3, v. *dep.*, with abl., I feed, live on.  
**vesperascit**, āvit, āscere, v. *impers.*, evening approaches.

VESTA.	VIX.	XERXES.
<p><b>Vesta</b>, æ, <i>f.</i>, <i>Vesta</i>, the goddess of fire and the hearth.  <b>vester</b>, <i>præ</i>, trum, <i>poss. pron.</i>, your, yours.  <b>vestmentum</b>, i, n., clothing.  <b>vestiō</b>, ivi, itum, 4, <i>I clothe</i>.  <b>vestis</b>, is, <i>f.</i>, clothing, a garment.  <b>vētus</b>, vêtēria, <i>adj.</i>, old.  <b>vexo</b>, avi, ātum, 1, <i>I vex, harass</i>.  <b>via</b>, ac, <i>f.</i>, a way, road.  <b>victor</b>, ōris, m., a conqueror.  <b>victōria</b>, æ, <i>f.</i>, victory.  <b>vidēo</b>, vidi, visum, 2, <i>I see</i>.  <b>videor</b>, vīsus, 2, <i>I seem, appear</i>.  <b>vigilo</b>, avi, ātum, 1, <i>I watch, I am awake</i>.</p>	<p><b>vilis</b>, e, <i>adj.</i>, cheap, common.  <b>vincio</b>, vinxī, vinctum, 4, <i>I bind</i>.  <b>vinco</b>, vici, victum, 3, <i>I conquer</i>.  <b>vinculum</b>, i, n., a chain, bond.  <b>vinum</b>, i, n., wine.  <b>virgo</b>, inis, <i>f.</i>, a maiden.  <b>vir</b>, viri, m., a man.  <b>virtus</b>, ūtis, <i>f.</i>, valour, virtue, good quality.  <b>viso</b>, visi, visum, 3, <i>v. freq.</i>, <i>I look at often, view</i>.  <b>visus</b>, ūs, m., a seeing, looking, look.  <b>vita</b>, ac, <i>f.</i>, life.  <b>vitupero</b>, avi, ātum, 1, <i>I blame, find fault with</i>.  <b>vivo</b>, vixi, victum, 3, <i>I live</i>.  <b>vix</b>, adv., scarcely.</p>	<p><b>volo</b>, avi, ātum, 1, <i>I fly</i>.  <b>volo</b>, vōlūi, velle, v. irreg., <i>I wish, am willing</i>.  <b>volutas</b>, ātis, <i>f.</i>, a wish, will.  <b>volutas</b>, ātis, <i>f.</i>, pleasure.  <b>vox</b>, vōcis, <i>f.</i>, a voice.  <b>vulnēro</b>, avi, ātum, 1, <i>I wound</i>.  <b>vulnus</b>, ūris, n., a wound.  <b>vultus</b>, ūris, m., a vulture.  <b>vultus</b>, ūs, m., countenance, looks.</p> <p style="text-align: center;"><b>X</b></p> <p><b>Xenophōn</b>, ontis, m., Xenophon, an Athenian.  <b>Xerxes</b>, is, m., Xerxes, a famous king of Persia.</p>

## INDEX II. TO VOCABULARIES.

## ENGLISH WORDS.

ABANDON.	ALONE.	APPLE.
<p style="text-align: center;"><b>A</b></p> <p><b>abandon</b>, dēsēro, sērūi, scrtum, 3.  <b>able</b>, be, possum, p. 76.  <b>abode</b>, dōmiciliū, ii, n.  <b>about</b>, circā, circum, circiter, <i>adv.</i> and <i>prep.</i> with acc.  <b>above</b>, sup̄er, sup̄rā, <i>prep.</i> with acc.  <b>abuse</b>, ābūtor, ūsus, 3, v. <i>dep.</i>, with abl.  <b>accident</b>, cāsus, ūs, m.  <b>accompany</b>, cōmitor, ātus, 1, v. <i>dep.</i>  <b>accomplish</b>, conficīo, fēci, fectum, 3.  <b>accordance</b>, in — with, sēcundum, <i>prep.</i> with acc.  <b>account of</b>, on, ob, propt̄er, <i>prep.</i> with acc.  <b>accuse</b>, accūsō, avi, ātum, 1.  <b>accused man</b>, rēus, i, m.  <b>accustomed to be</b>, solēo, itus sum, 2, p. 85.  <b>acquire</b>, ādīpiscor, eptus, 3, v. <i>dep.</i>  <b>across</b>, trans, <i>prep.</i> with acc.  <b>act</b>, āgo, ēgi, actum, 3.</p>	<p><b>actively</b>, gn̄ātēr, <i>adv.</i>  <b>admire</b>, miror, admiror, ātus, 1, v. <i>dep.</i>  <b>adorn</b>, orno, avi, ātum, 1.  <b>advice</b>, consiliū, ii, n.  <b>advise</b>, suādēo, si, ātum, 2, with dat.; mōnēo, ūi, ātum, 2.  <b>affliction</b>, aerumna, æ, <i>f.</i>  <b>afford</b>, praebeō, ūi, itum, 2.  <b>after</b>, post, <i>prep.</i> with acc.  <b>against</b>, adversūs or um, contrā, <i>preps.</i> with acc.  <b>age</b>, aetās, ātis, <i>f.</i>  <b>—</b>, old, sēnectūs, ūtis, <i>f.</i>  <b>aged</b>, part. and <i>adj.</i>, nātus, a, um.  <b>agree</b>, consensio, si, sum, 4.  <b>agreed</b>, it is, constat, stitit, agēd, auxiliū, ii, n. [1].  <b>air</b>, aer, aeris, m.  <b>alarm</b>, to, terrēo, ūi, itum; all, omnis, e, <i>adj.</i> [2].  <b>all together</b>, cunctus, a, um, <i>adj.</i>  <b>allowed</b>, it is, licet, p. 86.  <b>ally</b>, socius, ii, m.  <b>almost</b>, prōp̄e, paenē, <i>adv.</i>  <b>alone</b>, solus, a, um; ūnus, a, um, <i>adj.</i></p>	<p><b>Alps</b>, Alpes, ium, m. <i>pl.</i>  <b>already</b>, jam, <i>adv.</i>  <b>also</b>, etiā, <i>adv.</i>  <b>altogether</b>, plānē, <i>adv.</i>  <b>always</b>, semp̄er, <i>adv.</i>  <b>ambassador</b>, lēgātus, i, m.  <b>amongst</b>, int̄er, <i>prep.</i> with acc. [p. 31].  <b>—</b>, to be, intersum, amuse, dēlecto, avi, ātum, 1.  <b>ancestors</b>, māiōres, m. <i>pl.</i>  <b>ancient</b>, antiquus, a, um, <i>adj.</i>  <b>and</b>, et, atque, ac, quē, <i>conj.</i>  <b>anger</b>, irā, æ, <i>f.</i>  <b>angry</b>, to be, irascor, irātus, 3, v. <i>dep.</i>  <b>animal</b>, ānimal, ālis, n.  <b>—</b>, small, bestiōla, ac, <i>f.</i>  <b>another</b>, of several, ālius, ā, ūd, <i>indef. pron.</i>  <b>another</b>, of two, alt̄er, ā, um, <i>indef. pron.</i> [2].  <b>answer</b>, respondēo, di, sum, any, ūlus, a, um, <i>indef. pron.</i>  <b>any time</b>, at, unquam, <i>adv.</i>  <b>appear</b>, vidēor, visus, 2.  <b>apple</b>, mālum, i, n.</p>

APPLE-TREE.

**apple-tree**, mālus, i, *f.*  
**appoint**, instituō, ūi, ūtum, 3; *fio*, latus sum, 3, v. *irr.*  
**approach**, to, appropinquo, advento, āvi, ātum, 1.  
**arms**, arma, ōrum, *n. pl.*  
**army**, exercitus, ūs, *m.*  
**around**, circā, circum, *adv.* and *prep.* with *acc.*; circiter, *adv.* [3].  
**arrange**, instruō, xi, ctum, *v.*  
**arrive**, advēnio, pervēnio, vēni, ventum, 4.  
**arrival**, adventus, ūs, *m.*  
**arriving**, to be on the point of, advento, āvi, ātum, *f.*  
**arrow**, sagitta, ae, *f.*  
**art**, ars, rtis, *f.*  
**as**, tam, *adv.*  
**as . . . as**, tam . . . quam, *adv.*  
**as** (*conj.*), ut, *conj.*  
**as if**, quāsi, *conj.*  
**as far as**, tēnus, *prep.* with *abl.*  
**as soon as**, simul, simulac.  
**ascertain**, cognosco, nōvi, nitum, 3  
**ask**, rōgo, āvi, ātum, 1.  
**assault**, oppugno, āvi, ātum, 1.  
**assign**, tribuō, ūi, ātum, 3.  
**assist**, adjuvo, jūvi, jūtum, 1.  
**assistance**, auxilium, *n.*  
**assuage**, mollio, ūvi, ūtum, at, ād, *prep.* with *acc.* [4].  
**Athenian**, Athēniensis, e, *adj.*  
**Athens**, Athēnae, ārum, *f. pl.*  
**attack**, impētus, ūs, *m.*  
**attack**, to, oppugno, āvi, ātum, 1.  
**attain to**, adipiscor, epūs, 3, v. *dep.*  
**attempt**, cōnor, ātus, 1, v. *dep.*  
**attentive**, attentus, a, um, *adj.*  
**attentively**, attentē, *adv.*  
**author**, scriptor, ōris, *m.* [*f.*]  
**authority**, auctoritas, ātis, autumn, auctumnus, i, *m.*  
**awake**, to be, vigilo, āvi, ātum, 1.

B

**bad**, mālus, a, um, *adj.*  
**bank**, ripa, ae, *f.*  
**base**, turpis, e, *adj.*  
**battle**, pugna, ae, *f.*; proelium, *n.*

BRIDGE.

**be**, to, sum, fui, esse, p. 29.  
**in, among**, *dec.* see compounds of sum, p. 31.  
**beam**, trabs, trābis, *f.*  
**bear**, fero, tūli, lātum, p. 80.  
**through**, perfēro, etc.  
**beast**, bestia, ae, *f.*  
**great**, bellua, ae, *f.*  
**small**, bestiola, ae, *f.*  
**beautiful**, pulcher, cra, crum, *adj.*  
**because**, quā, quōd, *conj.*  
**because of**, ob, propter, *prepp.* with *acc.*  
**become**, fio, p. 84.  
**becomes**, it, deoet, p. 86.  
**before**, antē, *prep.* with *acc.*; prae, *prep.* with *abl.*  
**beg**, pēto, i, and ji, itum, 3.  
**begin**, incipio, cepi, eep-tum, 3.  
**beginning**, infitum, *n.*  
**behalf of**, on, prō, *prep.* with *abl.*  
**behind**, pōnē, *prep.* with *acc.*  
**behoves**, it, oportet, p. 86.  
**believe**, crēdo, didi, ditum, 3.  
**beneath**, sub, subtēr, *prep.* with *acc.* and *abl.*  
**beside**, praetēr, *prep.* with *acc.*  
**besiege**, obsēdō, sēdi, sesum, 2.  
**betake**, confēro, tūli, colātum, ferre, 3, v. *irr.*  
**between**, inter, *prep.* with *acc.* [acc.]  
**beyond**, ultrā, *prep.* with *acc.*  
**bind**, vincio, xi, nctum, 4.  
**bird**, avis, is, *f.*  
**black**, niger, gra, grum; āter, ātra, ātrum.  
**blame**, culpo, āvi, ātum, 1.  
**sub**, culpa, ae, *f.*  
**blockade**, obsēdio, ōnis, *f.*  
**blood**, sanguis, inis, *m.*  
**bloom**, floreō, tūi, —, 2.  
**blossom forth**, effloresco, florui, 3.  
**blow**, flo, āvi, ātum, 1.  
**body**, corpus, ōris, *n.*  
**bold**, audax, ācis, *adj.*  
**bond**, vinculum, *n.*  
**bone**, os, ossis, *n.*  
**book**, liber, bri, *m.*  
**booty**, praeda, ae, *f.* [*dep.*]  
**born**, be, nascor, nātus, 3, v.  
**boundary**, finis, is, *m.*  
**boy**, puer, eri, *m.*  
**bow**, arcus, ūs, *m.*  
**brave**, fortis, e, *adj.*  
**bravely**, fortitēr, *adv.*  
**bridge**, pons, tis, *m.*

CAST DOWN.

**bright**, splēdidus, a, um, *adj.*  
**bring**, fero, p. 80.  
**in**, *dec.* see compounds of fero, p. 81.  
**bring to an end**, finio, ūvi, itum, 4; conficō, feci, fec-tum, 3.  
**bring forth**, pārio, pēperi, partum, 3.  
**Britain**, Britannia, ae, *f.*  
**Briton**, Britannus, i, *m.*  
**broad**, lātus, a, um, *adj.*  
**brother**, frāter, tris, *m.* [1].  
**build**, aedifico, āvi, ātum, *adj.*  
**building**, aedificium, *n.*  
**bull**, taurus, i, *m.* [4].  
**bury**, sēpelio, ūvi, pultum, *adj.*  
**burden**, ōnus, ōris, *n.*  
**burn**, trans, —, incendo, di, sum, 3.  
**burn**, intrans, ardēo, si, sum, 2.  
**burnt down**, to be, dē-flagro, āvi, ātum, 1.  
**business**, nēgocium, *n.*  
**busy**, occupātus, a, um, *adj.*  
**but**, sēd, autem; see *Vocab.* 21, p. 130.  
**buy**, ēmo, ēmi, emptum, 3.  
**by**, ā, āb, abs, *prep.* with *abl.*

C

**call**, vōco, āvi, ātum, 1.  
**together**, convōco, āvi, ātum, 1. [1, v. *dep.*]  
**call to mind**, rēcordor, ātus, *adj.*  
**calm**, tranquillus, a, um, *adj.*  
**camp**, castra, ōrum, *n. pl.*  
**can**, possum, p. 76.  
**cannot**, nēquēo, ūvi or ii, itum, 4.  
**cannot but**, I, faciēre nōn possum quin. [1].  
**care**, take, cūro, āvi, ātum, *careful*, diligens, ntis, *adj.*  
**carefully**, diligētēr, *adv.*  
**carry**, porto, āvi, ātum, 1.  
**carry on** (war), gēro, gessi, gestum, 3.  
**carry a wall**, mūrum dūco, xi, ctum, 3.  
**Carthage**, Carthāgo, inis, *f.*  
**Carthaginian**, suls, Pœ-nus, i, *m.*  
**Carthaginian**, *adj.*, Carthāginien-sis, e.  
**cast away**, abjicio, jeci, jectum, 3.  
**cast down**, dēficio, jeci, jectum; affligo, xi, ctum, 3.



## CAST FORTH.

**cast forth, out,** *ejicere, jeci,* jectum, 3.

**catch,** *capere, cepi,* captum, 3.

**Catiline,** *Catilina,* ac, m.

**cause,** *causa,* ac, f.

**cavalry,** *equitatus,* us, m.

**celebrated,** *clarus,* a, um, *adj.*; *nobilis,* e, *adj.*

**century,** *centuria,* ac, f.

**certain,** *certus,* a, um, *adj.*

**chain,** *vinculum,* i, n.

**chance,** *casus,* us, m.

—, *by,* *forte,* *casu.*

**change,** *mutare,* avi, *atum,* 1.

**charge,** *mando,* avi, *atum,* 1.

**chariot,** *currus,* us, m.

**chastise,** *castigo,* avi, *atum,* 1.

**cheap,** *vilis,* e, *adj.* [1.]

**cheer,** *exhilarare,* avi, *atum,* 1.

**cheerful,** *hilaris,* e, *adj.*

**cheese,** *caseus,* i, m.

**cherish,** *cōlo,* ūi, *cultum,* 3.

**cherry,** *cerasus,* i, n.

**cherry-tree,** *cerasus,* i, f.

**children,** *liberi,* ōrum, n.

**Cimbrians,** *Cimbri,* ōrum, m. pl.

**citadel,** *arx,* arcis, f.

**citizen,** *civis,* is, c.

**citizenship,** *civitas,* atis, f.

**city,** *urbs,* urbis, f.

**civil,** *belonging to a citizen,*

*civilis,* e, *adj.*

**clear,** *clarus,* a, um, *adj.*

**cloak,** *pallium,* i, n.

**clothe,** *vestire,* ūi, *utum,* 4.

**clothing,** *vestis,* is, f.;

*vestimentum,* i, n.

**cloud,** *nubes,* is, f.

**coast,** *ora,* ac, f.

**cohort,** *cohors,* rtis, f.

**cold,** *frigus,* ōris, n.

**colony,** *colonia,* ac, f.

**colour,** *color,* ōris, m. [4.]

**come,** *venire,* vēni, *ventum,*

*frequently,* *ventito,*

*avi,* *atum,* 1.

**come to pass,** *fio,* factus,

*fleri;* see p. 84.

**commander,** *impērator,*

*ōris,* m.

**commission,** *mandatum,*

*i,* n.

**common,** *vilis,* e; *commū-*

*nis,* c, *adj.*

**commonly,** *serē,* *adv.*

**commonwealth,** *republica,*

*lica,* *reipublicae,* f.

**companion,** *comes,* itis, c.

**comparison,** *in,* *prae-*

*prep.* with acc.

## CUT OFF.

**comrade,** *socius,* ii, m.

**concerning,** *dē,* *prep.* with

*abl.*

**confess,** *fatēor,* *fessus;*

*confitēor,* *fessus,* 2.

**conflagration,** *incendium,*

*fi,* n *atum,* 3.

**conquer,** *vinco,* vici, vic-

**conqueror,** *victor,* ōris, m.

**conscience,** *conscientia,*

*ae,* f.

**conspiracy,** *conjuratio,* ō-

*nis,* f.

**constellation,** *sidus,* ōris,

**consul,** *consul,* ūilis, m.

—, *office of,* *consulatus,*

*us,* ūis, m.

**consult,** *consulo,* ūi,

*ltum,* 3.

**consume,** *absūmo,* *sumpsi,*

*sumptum,* 3.

**contemplate,** *contemplor,*

*atus,* 1, v *dep*

**contented,** *contentus,* a,

*um,* *adj.*

**continual,** *perpētius,* a,

*um,* *adj.*

**contrary to,** *contra,* *prep.*

with acc.

**converse,** *collōquor,* *lōcū-*

*tus,* 3.

**Corinth,** *Corinthus,* i, f.

**correct,** *corrigo,* *rexī,* *rec-*

*tum,* 3.

**counsel,** *consilium,* ii, n.

**count,** *numéro,* avi, *atum,* 1.

**countenance,** *vultus,* ūis, m.

**country,** *rūs,* rūs, n.

—, *one's,* *patria,* ac, f.

**cover,** *tēgo,* xi, *ctum,* 3

**cowardice,** *ignavia,* ae, f.

**create,** *creo,* avi, *atum,* 1.

**creator,** *creator,* ōris, m.

**credible,** *crēdibilis,* e, *adj.*

**Crete,** *Crēta,* ae, f.

**crime,** *scelus,* ōris, n.

**crop,** *messis,* is, f.; *frūges,*

*um,* f. pl.

**cross over,** *transēo,* 4, p. 83.

**crown,** *cōrona,* ae, f.

**cruel,** *crudelis,* e, *adj.*

**crush,** *opprimo,* *pressi,*

*pressum,* 3.

**cry out,** *clāmo,* *exclāmo,*

*avi,* *atum,* 1.

**cultivate,** *cōlo,* *cōlūi,* *cul-*

*tum,* 3.

**cultivate carefully,** *ex-*

*cōlo,* *cōlūi,* *cultum,* 3.

**curb,** *obereō,* ūi, *atum,* 2.

**current,** *flumen,* inis, n.

**custom,** *consuetudo,* inis, f.

**cut off,** *interclūdo,* ūi,

*sum,* 3.

## DIE.

## D

**dance,** *salto,* avi, *atum,* 1.

**danger,** *periculum,* i, n.

**dangerous,** *periculōsus,* a,

*um,* *adj.*

**dare,** *audēo,* ausus sum, 2,

p. 85.

**daring,** *audax,* ācis, *adj.*

**daringly,** *audacter,* *adv.*

**darken,** *obscurō,* avi, *atum,*

**dart,** *tēlū,* i, n. [1.]

**daughter,** *filia,* ae, f.

**day,** *dies,* ei, m. and f.

**dead,** *mortuus,* a, um, *adj.*

**deal with,** *tracto,* avi, *a-*

*tum,* 1.

**dear,** *cārus,* a, um, *adj.*

**death,** *moēs,* rtis, f.

**deceive,** *dēcipio,* cepi, *cep-*

*tum,* 3.

**deed, a bold, daring,** *faci-*

*nus,* ōris, n.

**deep,** *altus,* a, um, *adj.*

**defeat,** *clādēs,* is, f.

**defend,** *dēfēdo,* i, *sum,* 3.

**defendant,** *rēus,* i, m.

**delicate,** *tēnuis,* c, *adj.*

**delight,** *dēlecto,* avi, *ū-*

*tum,* 1. [v, *adj*]

**delightful,** *dulcis,* suavis,

**delightfully,** *facundō,* *adv.*

**deliver,** *libēro,* avi, *atum,* 1.

**demand,** *postūlo,* avi, *ā-*

*tum,* 1.

**deny,** *nēgo,* avi, *atum,* 1.

**depart,** *excēdo,* cessi, ces-

*sum,* 3; *migro,* *ēmigro,* avi,

*atum,* 1. [tum, 1.]

**deplore,** *dēplōro,* avi, *ā-*

**deserve,** *mērito,* itus, 2.

**desire,** *to,* capio, *ivi* and

*ii,* *atum,* 3.

**desire,** *studium,* ii, n.; *cū-*

*pīditas,* atis, f.

**despise,** *contemno,* mpsi,

*mptum,* 3; *aspornor,* *atus,* 1,

v. *dep.*

**despot,** *tyrannus,* i, m.

**destitute,** *inops,* ōpis, *adj.*

**destroy,** *perdo,* didi, *dī-*

*tum,* 3.

**destruction,** *exclūm,* ii, n.

**destructive,** *perniculōsus,*

*a,* um, *adj.*

**deter,** *deterreo,* ūi, *atum,* 2.

**determine,** *constitūo,* ūi,

*atum,* 3.

**devote oneself,** *opēram*

*do,* dedi, *dātum,* dare, 1.

**devoted to,** *addictus,* a,

*um,* *adj.*

**die,** *mōrior,* *mortuus,* 3.

DIFFICULT.

**difficult**, difficilis, *c. adj.*  
**difficult, somewhat**, sub-  
 difficilis, *c. adj.*  
**dig**, fodio, fodi, fossum, 3.  
**diligence**, diligentia, *ac. f.*  
**diligent**, diligens, ntis, *adj.*  
**dine**, coeno, avi or atus  
 sum, atum, 1, p. 85.  
**disaster**, cladēs, *is. f.*  
**discern**, cerno, crēvi, crē-  
 tum, 3.  
**discharge**, fungor, nctus, 3,  
*v. dep. with abl.*, p. 71.  
**discourage**, sermo, ōnla, *m.*  
**discover**, dētego, texti, tec-  
 tum, 3.  
**disease**, morbus, *i. m.*  
**disembark**, trans., expōno,  
 pō-sui, positum, 3  
**disgrace**, tui pītudo, Inis, *f.*  
**disgraceful**, turpis, *e. adj.*  
**disgrunts**, it, taelet, 2, p. 86.  
**dishonest**, imprōbus, *a.*  
 um, *adj.*  
**dishonesty**, fraus, dis, *f.*  
**dismiss**, dimitto, mīsi, mis-  
 sum, 3.  
**displease**, displicēo, ūi,  
 itum, 2, with *dat.*  
**disposed**, affectus, *a. um,*  
*adj.*  
**distance**, longinquitas, tā-  
 tis, *f.*  
**distant**, longinquus, *a. um,*  
*adj.*  
**distant, to be**, absum, p.  
 31  
**distinguished**, insignis, *e;*  
 ēgēgins, *a. um, adj.*  
**distrust**, diffido, isus sum,  
 3, p. 85.  
**disturb**, turbo, avi, atum,  
 1; mōveo, mōvi, mōtum, 2.  
**ditch**, fossa, *ac. f.*  
**divide**, sēpāro, avi, atum,  
 1; divido, isī, isum, 3.  
**divine**, divinus, *a. um, adj.*  
**do**, facio, feci, factum, 3.  
**dog**, canis, *is. c.*  
**doubt**, dubito, avi, atum, 1.  
**doubtful**, dubius, *a. um,*  
*adj.*  
**dove**, columba, *ac. f.*  
**drag, draw**, trābo, traxi,  
 tractum, 3.  
**draw together**, contrāho,  
 traxi, tractum, 3.  
**draw up in order**, in-  
 struo, xi, ctum, 3.  
**drink**, bibo, i, itum, 3.  
**drive out**, expello, pūli,  
 pulsum, 3.  
**duty**, mīnus, ēris, *n.*  
**dwel**, habito, avi, atum, 1.

EVERY ONE.

E

**eager after**, stūdiōsus, *a.*  
 um, *adj. with gen.*  
**eager, be**, stūdeo, ūi, —, 2.  
**eagle**, aquila, *ac. f.*  
**ear**, auris, *is. f.*  
**earnestly**, vēhēmētē,  
 magnopōrē, *adv.*  
**earth**, terra, *ac. f.*  
**easily**, facillē, *adv.*  
**easy**, facilis, *e. adj.*  
**eat**, ēdo, ēdi, esum, 3.  
**educate**, edūco, avi, atum, 1.  
**elegant**, ēlēgans, ntis, *adj.*  
**elephant**, ēlēphantus, *i. m.*  
**eloquent**, ēloquentis, ntis,  
*adj.*  
**embark**, nāvēm {naves}  
 conscendo, di, sum, 3.  
**embroider**, pingo, pinxi,  
 pictum, 3.  
**eminent**, eximius, ēgrē-  
 gius, *a. um, adj.*  
**empire**, impērium, *ii. n.*  
**employ**, adhibeo, ūi, itum, 2.  
**encourage**, hortor, atus, 1,  
*v. dep.*  
**end, finis**, *is. m.*  
 —, put an end to, finio,  
 ūi, itum, 4.  
**endure**, patiōr, passus, 3;  
 fēro, p. 80.  
**enemy (public)**, hostis, *is. c.*  
 — (personal), inimicus,  
*i. m.* [*adj.*]  
**engaged**, occupātus, *a. um,*  
**enjoy**, frīor, itus and ctus,  
 3, *v. dep. with abl.*  
**enmity**, inimicitia, *ac. f.*  
**enough**, sātis, *adv.*  
**enquire**, quaero, quaesīvi,  
 quaesitum, 3.  
**enter**, intro, avi, atum, 1.  
**entice**, lāco, 34 obs., p. 120.  
**entreat**, ōro, avi, atum, 1.  
**envy**, invidia, *ac. f.*  
**epistle**, epistōla, *ac. f.* [3.  
**esteem**, diligo, lexi, lectum,  
 eternal, aeternus, *a. um,*  
*adj.*  
**Europe**, Eurōpa, *ac. f.*  
**even**, *adj.*, aequus, *a. um.*  
 —, conj., etiam.  
**evening comes on**, ves-  
 pērascit, 3, *v. impers.*, p. 87.  
**ever = at any time**, un-  
 quam, *adv.*  
**ever = always**, semper,  
*adv.*  
**every**, omnis, *e. adj.*  
**every day**, quōtidie, *adv.*  
**every one**, quisque, quae-

FIGHT.

que, quodque, and *subst.* quic-  
 que (quidque), *pron.*  
**evident; it is**, constat, sī  
 tit, 1.  
**evil**, mālum, *i. n.*  
**example**, exemplum, *1. m.*  
**excellent**, praestāns, antis  
 praestābilis, *e. adj.*  
**except**, praeter, *prep.* with  
 acc.  
**exercise, to**, exerceo, ūi,  
 itum, 2. [2.  
**exhibit**, pōnēbo, ūi, itum,  
**exhort**, hortor, adhortor,  
 atus, 1.  
**exile**, exilium, *ii. n.*  
 —, live in, exilium  
 āgo, ēgi, actum, 3.  
**experienced**, pēritus, *a.*  
 um, *adj.*  
**extend**, prōfero, tūli, lātum,  
 ferre, 3.  
**eye**, ōculus, *i. m.*

F

**fable**, fabūla, *ac. f.*  
**fall**, cādo, cēcidi, cāsum, 3.  
**faith**, fides, *is. f.*  
**faithful**, fīdēlis, *e;* fidus,  
*a. um, adj.*  
**famous**, nōbilis, *e. adj.*  
**far**, longē, *adv.*  
 — and wide, longē  
 lātēquē.  
**farther, too far**, longius,  
*adv. comp.*  
**father**, pāter, tris, *m.*  
**father-in-law**, sōcer, ōri,  
**fault**, culpa, *ac. f.* [*m.*]  
**fault, find**, vitupēro, culpo,  
 avi, atum, 1.  
**favour**, grātia, *ac. f.*  
**fear**, mētus, ūs; tīmor,  
 ōris, *m.*  
**fear, to**, mētō, i, atum, 3;  
 timēo, ūi, —, 2; vētor, itus,  
**feeble**, debilis, *e. adj.* [2.  
**feed on**, vescor, with *abl.*  
 3, *v. dep.*  
**feel**, sentio, si, sum, 4.  
**feign**, simulo, avi, atum, 1.  
**fellow-citizen**, civis, *is. c.*  
**fellow-soldier**, commilito,  
 ōnis, *m.*  
**few**, paucus, *a. um, adj.*  
**fidelity**, fides, *is. f.*  
**field**, āger, gri, *m.*  
**fierce**, fērox, ōis, *adj.*  
**fiery**, made of fire, igneus,  
*a. um, adj.*  
**fig, fig-tree**, ficus, *i. f.*  
**fight**, pugno, avi, atum, 1.

## FIGHT.

**fight** (*a battle*), *committo*, *missi*, *missum*, 3.  
**find**, *reperio*, *pēri*, *pertum*, 4; *invenio*, *veni*, *ventum*, 4.  
**find fault with**, *culpo*, *vituperō*, *avi*, *atum*, 1.  
**finish**, *conficio*, *feci*, *fectum*, 3. [*adj.*]  
**finished**, *perfectus*, *a*, *um*,  
**fire**, *ignis*, *is*, *m*.  
 — = *conflagration*, *incendulum*, *ii*, *n*.  
**fire, be on**, *ardēo*, *si*, *sum*, 2.  
**first** (*adv.*), *primus*, *primus*, *adv.* [*um*, *adj.*]  
**first-rate**, *primarius*, *a*,  
**fish**, *pisces*, *is*, *m*.  
**fix**, *figo*, *fixi*, *fixum*, 3.  
**flatter**, *adūlor*, *atus*, 1, *v. dep.*  
**flattery**, *adulatio*, *ōnis*, *f*.  
**flee**, *fugio*, *fugi*, *fugitum*, 3.  
**flee to**, *contigō*, *fūgi*, 3.  
**fleet**, *classis*, *is*, *f*.  
**flesh**, *carō*, *carum*, *f*.  
**flower**, *flos*, *ōris*, *m*. [*v. dep.*]  
**follow**, *sequor*, *secutus*, 3.  
**follow up**, *subsequor*, *cūtus*, 3, *v. dep.*  
**folly**, *stultitia*, *ae*, *f*.  
**foolish**, *stultus*, *a*, *um*, *adj.*  
**foot-soldier**, *pēdes*, *itis*, *m*.  
**for** (*prep.*), *prō*, *prep.* with *abl.*  
**for** (*conj.*), *nam*, *enim*, *conj.*  
**forage**, *pābulor*, *atus*, 1, *v. dep.*  
**forced marches**, *maxima itinera*, *n*. *pl.*  
**forces**, *cōpiæ*, *atum*, *f*. *pl.*  
**forehead**, *frons*, *tis*, *f*.  
**foressee**, *prōvidēo*, *vidi*, *visum*, 2.  
**forget**, *obliviscor*, *litus*, 3, *v. dep.* with *gen.* [*p*. 83.]  
**form** (*a plan*), *inō*, 4, *irr.*,  
**former**, *præstus*, *a*, *um*;  
*prior*, *us*, *adj.* [*adv.*]  
**formerly**, *olim*, *quondam*,  
**fortification**, *munimen-*  
*tum*, *i*, *n*.; *moenia*, *ium*, *n*. *pl.*  
**fortify**, *mūnio*, *ivi*, *itum*, 4.  
**fortune**, *fortūna*, *ae*, *f*.  
**fortunate**, *felix*, *icis*, *adj.*  
**fountain**, *fons*, *ntis*, *m*.  
**frame, to**, *fabrico*, *avi*, *atum*, 1.  
**free**, *liber*, *era*, *erum*, *adj.*  
**freedom**, *libertas*, *atis*, *f*.  
**freely**, *liberē*, *adv.*  
**friend**, *amicus*, *i*, *m*.  
**friendship**, *amicitia*, *ae*, *f*.  
**frighten**, *terrō*, *ūi*, *itum*, 2.  
**from**, *ā* (*āb*), *dē*, *prep.* with *abl.*

## GRIEVOUSLY.

**fruit**, *fructus*, *ūs*, *m*.  
**full**, *plenus*, *a*, *um*, *adj.*  
**function**, *mānus*, *eris*, *n*.  
**funeral**, *fūnus*, *eris*, *n*.  
**furnish** = *supply*, *præbēo*,  
*ūi*, *itum*, 2.

## G

**gain** = *get*, *obtain*, *pāro*,  
*avi*, *atum*, 1.  
**game**, *lūdus*, *i*, *m*.  
**garden**, *hortus*, *i*, *m*.  
**garment**, *vestis*, *is*, *f*.;  
*vestimentum*, *i*, *n*.  
**gate**, *porta*, *ae*, *f*.  
**gather**, *lēgo*, *lēgi*, *lectum*, 3.  
 — **together**, *contrāho*,  
*traxi*, *tractum*, 3.  
**Gaul**, *Gallia*, *ae*, *f*.  
**gaze**, *thēor*, *itus*, 2, *v. dep.*  
**general**, *imperator*, *ōris*, *m*.  
**get, gain**, *pāro*, *avi*, *atum*,  
 1; *adipiscor*, *eptus*, 3, *v. dep.*  
**get back**, *recupēro*, *avi*,  
*atum*, 1.  
**get together**, *compāro*, *avi*,  
*atum*, 1; *cōgo*, *cōegi*, *cōactum*,  
*gift*, *dōnum*, *i*, *n*. [*3*.]  
**girl**, *pūella*, *ae*, *f*. [*1*.]  
**give**, *dō*, *dēdi*, *dātum*, *dāre*,  
**glide**, *libor*, *lapsus*, 3, *v. dep.*  
**glory**, *glōria*, *ae*, *f*.  
**go**, *cō*, *ivi* or *ii*, *irē*, *itum*,  
 4, *v. irr.*  
**go in, out, &c.**, see *comp.*  
*of eo*, *p*. 83. [*3*.]  
**go to see**, *visō*, *visi*, *visum*,  
**God**, *Deus*, *i*, *m*.  
**goddess**, *dēa*, *ae*, *f*.  
**gods, of the**, *divinus*, *a*,  
*um*, *adj.*  
**gold**, *aurum*, *i*, *n*.  
**golden**, *aureus*, *a*, *um*, *adj.*  
**good**, *bōnus*, *prōbus*, *a*, *um*,  
*adj.*  
**good, evb.**, *bōnum*, *i*, *n*.  
**good, do, to**, *prōsum*, *p*. 31.  
**goods**, *bōna*; *ōrum*, *n*. *pl.* [*1*.]  
**govern**, *gubernō*, *avi*, *atum*,  
**grandfather**, *avus*, *i*, *m*.  
**grass**, *grāmen*, *inis*, *n*.  
**great**, *magnus*, *a*, *um*, *adj.*  
**great, how**, *quantus*, *a*,  
*um*, *rel. adj.*  
**greatly**, *magnopere*, *adv.*  
**Greece**, *Graecia*, *ae*, *f*.  
**Greek, Grecian**, *Graecus*,  
*a*, *um*, *adj.*  
**grief**, *dolor*, *ōris*, *m*.  
**grieves**, *it*, *pigēt*, *pīguit* &  
*pīgītum* est, *pīgēre*, 2, *v. im*  
*pers.*  
**grievously**, *grāviter*, *adv.*

## HOPE.

**ground**, *hūmus*, *i*, *f*.  
**guard, to**, *custodio*, *ivi*,  
*itum*, 4; *tūcor*, *itūs*, 2, *v. dep.*  
**guardian**, *custos*, *ōdis*, *m*.  
**guilt**, *scōlus*, *eris*, *n*.  
**guilty**, *noxius*, *a*, *um*, *adj.*

## H

**habit**, *consuetudo*, *inis*, *f*.  
**hails, it**, *grandinat*, *avit*,  
*v. imper.*  
**hand**, *mānus*, *ūs*, *f*.  
**hand down**, *trādo*, *prōdo*,  
*dīcō*, *ditum*, 3.  
**handle**, *tracto*, *avi*, *atum*, 1.  
**happen**, *fiō*, *factus* *sum*,  
*fieri*, *v. irr.*, *p*. 84.  
**happy**, *bēatus*, *a*, *um*, *adj.*  
**happily**, *bēatē*, *adv.*  
**harass**, *vexo*, *avi*, *atum*, 1.  
**harbour**, *portus*, *ūs*, *m*.  
**hard**, *dūrus*, *a*, *um*, *adj.*  
**hardship**, *lābor*, *ōris*, *m*.  
**hars**, *lēpus*, *ōris*, *m*.  
**hasten**, *contendo*, *di*, *sum*  
 & *tum*, 3.  
**hatred**, *odīum*, *ii*, *n*.  
**have**, *hābeo*, *ūi*, *itum*, 2.  
 — **rather, prefer**, *mālo*,  
*ūi*, *malle*, *irr. v.*, *p*. 77.  
**head**, *capit*, *itis*, *n*.  
 — **be at the**, *præsum*  
*fun*, with *dat.*, *p*. 31.  
**health**, *vālētudo*, *inis*, *f*.  
**health, be in**, *vālō*, *ūi*,  
*itum*, 2. [*3*.]  
**heap up**, *extrūo*, *xi*, *ctum*,  
**hear**, *audio*, *ivi*, *itum*, 4.  
**hearing**, *auditus*, *ūs*, *m*.  
**heart**, *cōr*, *cordis*, *n*.  
**heat**, *cālor*, *ōris*, *m*.  
**heaven**, *coelum*, *i*, *n*.  
**heavenly**, *coelestis*, *e*, *adj.*  
**heavily**, *grāviter*, *adv.*  
**heavy**, *grāvis*, *e*, *adj.* [*1*.]  
**help**, *adjuvo*, *jūvi*, *jūtum*,  
**helpless**, *iners*, *ertis*, *adj.*  
**high**, *altus*, *a*, *um*, *adj.*  
 — **very**, *præcaltus*, *a*,  
*um*, *adj.*  
**highest**, *summus*, *a*, *um*,  
*adj. sup.*  
**his, hers, gen. of is, ea**:  
 when referring to subject,  
*sūus*, *a*, *um*, *poss. pron.*  
**hold a levy**, *dēlectum*  
*hābeo*, *ūi*, *itum*, 2.  
**hold together**, *continēo*,  
*ūi*, *entum*, 2.  
**honesty**, *prōbitas*, *atis*, *f*.  
**honour**, *hōnor*, *ōris*, *m*.  
**hope, to**, *spēro*, *avi*, *atum*, 1.

HOPE.

**hope**, spē, ſi, *f.*  
**hoped for**, ſperatus, a, um, *adj.*  
**horn**, cornū, ūs, *n.*  
**horse**, ēquus, i, *m.*  
**horse-soldier**, ēquēs, itis, *m.*  
**hostage**, obſcūs, idis, *c.*  
**hour**, hōra, ac, *f.*  
**house**, ōmūs, ūs; *see* p. 22.  
**how great**, quantus, a, um, *rel. adj.*  
**how many**, quōt, *indecl. rel. adj.*  
**human**, hūmānus, a, um, *adj.*  
**hunger**, fāmēs, is, *f.*  
**hunt**, vēnor, ātus, i.  
**hurt, harm**, nōcēo, ūi, itum, 2, with *dat.*; obsum, with *dat.*, p. 31.  
**hurtful**, noxius, a, um, *adj.*  
**hurtful, to be**, obsum, with *dat.*, p. 31.  
**husbandman**, agrīcōla, ac, *m.*

I

**if**, ſi, *conj.*  
**if, as, quasi**, *conj.*  
**ignorance**, ignōritiā, ōnis, *f.*  
**ignorant of (be)**, ignoro, āvi, ātum, i.  
**ill, adj.**, mālūs, a, um, *adj.*  
**—, adv.**, mālē, *adv.*  
**illness**, morbus, i, *m.*  
**ill-will**, invidiā, ac, *f.*  
**ill-wishing**, mālēvōlus, a, um, *adj.*  
**image**, imāgo, inis, *f.*, ſimulācrum, i, *n.*  
**imitate**, imitor, ātus, i, *dep.*  
**immediately**, stātīm, *adv.*  
**immense**, ingens, tis, *adj.*  
**immortal**, immortalis, e, *adj.*  
**immortality**, immortalitās, ātis, *f.*  
**impair**, infringo, frēgi, fractum, 3.  
**impiety**, impious, nēſſus, *n. indecl.*  
**improve**, ōmendo, āvi, ātum, i.  
**imprudence**, imprudentiā, ac, *f.*  
**in, into**, In, *prep.* with *acc.* and *abl.*  
**indeed**, quidem, *conj.*  
**indolence**, ignāvia, ac; ſegnitās, ſi, *f.*  
**indolently**, ignāvē, *adv.*

PR. II. 1.

KIND.

**indulge**, indulgēo, ſi, tum, 2, with *dat.*  
**industrious**, industrius, a, um, *adj.*  
**infamous**, infāmis, e, *adj.*  
**infamy**, infāmia, ac, *f.*  
**infantry**, infēditātus, ūi, *m.*  
**inferior**, infērior, ius, *adj. comp.*  
**infinite**, infinitus, a, um, *adj.*  
**infirm**, debilis, e, *adj.*  
**inhabitant**, incolā, ac, *c.*  
**injure**, obsum, obſul or offul, obesse, with *dat.*, p. 31; nōcēo, ūi, itum, 2, with *dat.*  
**injurious**, noxius, a, um, *adj.*  
**innumerable**, innumērus, a, um, *adj.*  
**inquire**, rōgo, āvi, ātum, i; quaero, quāſi vi, quāſitum, 3.  
**insect**, beſtiōla, ac, *f.*  
**institute**, inſtituō, ūi, ātum, 3.  
**instrument**, inſtrūmentum, i, *n.*  
**integrity**, prōbitas, ātis, *f.*  
**intellect**, mens, tis, *f.*  
**intercept**, intercūdo, ſi, ſum, 3.  
**invent**, rēpēro, pēri, per-tum, 4; ſingo, ſinxi, ſictum, 3.  
**iron**, ferrum, i, *n.*  
**island**, inſula, ac, *f.*  
**Italy**, Itālia, ac, *f.*  
**its**, ſūus, a, um, *poſs. pron.*

J

**join**, iungo, xi, ctum, 3.  
**— (battle)**, proclūm com-mitto, miſi, miſſum, 3.  
**journey**, iter, itinēris, *n.*  
**joy**, gaudium, ii, *p.*  
**joyful**, laetus, a, um, *adj.*  
**judge**, iudex, icis, *m.*  
**—, to**, iudicō, āvi, ātum, i.  
**judgment**, iudiciū, ii, *n.*  
**just**, iuſtus, a, um, *adj.*  
**justly**, iuſtē, *adv.*

K

**keen**, ācer, cris, cre, *adj.*  
**keep off**, prōhibēo, ūi, itum, 2.  
**keep guard**, vigilo, āvi, ātum, i.  
**kill**, interficio, fēci, ſectum, 3.  
**kind**, bēnignus, a, um, *adj.*

LIE.

**kindly**, bēnignē, *adv.*  
**king**, rex, rēgis, *m.*  
**—, to be**, regno, āvi, ātum, i.  
**kingdom**, regnum, i, *n.*  
**knee**, gēnu, ūs, *m.*  
**know**, ſcio, ivi and ii, itum, 4.  
**know not**, nescio, ivi and ii, itum, 4.  
**knowledge**, ſcientia, prū-dentiā, ac, *f.*  
**knowledge, without**, clām, *prep.* with *acc.* and *abl.*  
**known**, nōtus, a, um, *adj.*

L

**labour**, labor, ōris, *gn.*  
**lake**, lacus, ūs, *m.*  
**lament over**, dēplōro, āvi, ātum, i.  
**land**, terra, ac, *f.*; āger, grī, *m.*  
**language**, lingua, ac, *f.*  
**large**, magnus, a, um, *adj.*  
**last day**, ſuprēmūs diēs, *n.*  
**last, at**, dūm, *adv.*  
**Latin**, Lātinus, a, um, *adj.*  
**law**, lex, lēgis, *f.*  
**lay waste**, vaſto, āvi, ātum, i.  
**lay siege to**, obſidēo, ēdi, ſeſſum, 2.  
**lead**, dūco, xi, ctum, 3.  
**— across**, tranſdūco, xi, ctum, 3.  
**lead out**, ēddūco, xi, ctum, 3.  
**leader**, dux, dūcis, *c.*  
**learn**, diſcō, didici, —, 3.  
**learn in addition**, ad-diſco, didici, 3.  
**learn = ascertain**, cognos-co, nōvi, nitum, 3.  
**learned**, doctus, a, um, *adj.*  
**leave**, relinquo, liqui, lic-tum, 3.  
**leg**, crūs, ūris, *n.*  
**legion**, lēgio, ōnis, *f.*  
**length**, longitūdo, inis, *f.*  
**lest**, nē, p. 97.  
**lest, and**, nēvē.  
**letter of the alphabet**, litēra, ac, *f.*  
**letter (an epistle)**, litērac, ārum, *f. pl.*; Epistōla, ac, *f.*  
**letters, literature**, litē-rae, ārum, *f. pl.*  
**levy**, dēlectus, ūs, *m.*  
**liar, lying**, mendax, ſcis, ſubs. and *adj.*  
**licitor**, lictor, ōris, *m.*  
**lie (on the ground)**, iācēo, ūi, —, 2.

## LIE.

lie (*to speak falsely*), mentior, itus, 4, v. *dep.*  
 lieutenant, lēgatus, i, m.  
 life, vita, ac, f.  
 light (*adj.*), lēvis, e, *adj.*  
 light (*subs.*), lux, lūcis, f.  
 light, it becomes, lūcescit, 3, *impers.* v., p. 87.  
 lightning, fulmen, inis, n.  
 like, similis, e, *adj.*  
 likely, vērissimilis, e, *adj.*  
 likeness, īmagō, inis, f.  
 limit, finis, m.  
 —, to, finio, īvi, itum, 4.  
 line of battle, acies, ei, f.  
 lion, lēo, ōnis, m.  
 little, parvus, a, um, *adj.*  
 live, vivo, vixi, victum, 3.  
 live on, vescor, with *abl.*, 3, v. *dep.*  
 live in exile, exilium āgo, *exi.* actum, 3.  
 Livy, Livius, ii, m.  
 load, ōnus, ēris, m.  
 lofty, celsus, a, um, *adj.*  
 long (*adj.*), longus, a, um, *adj.*  
 long (*adv.*), diū, *adv.* [*adj.*]  
 look at, specto, āvi, ātum, 1.  
 — upon or into, intueor, tuus and tūtus, 2, v. *dep.*  
 looks, vultus, ūs, m.  
 loosen, solvo, solvi, solūtor, dōminus, i, m. [tum, 3.  
 lot, sors, tris, f.  
 love, amo, āvi, ātum, 1;  
 diligo, lexi, lectum, 3.  
 love in return, rēdāmo, āvi, ātum, 1.  
 lovely, amābilis, e, *adj.*  
 low, hūmilis, e, *adj.*  
 lower, inferior, ius, *adj.* *comp.*  
 luckily, feliciter, *adv.*  
 lucky, felix, icis, *adj.*

## M

Macedonian, Mācedo, dōnis, m.  
 made, factus, affectus, a, um, *part.* and *adj.*  
 made of fire, igneus, a, um, *adj.*  
 madness, furor, ōris, m.  
 magistrate, magistrātus, ūs, m.  
 magnificent, magnificus, a, um, *adj.*  
 maiden, virgo, inis, f.  
 maintain, servo, āvi, ātum, 1.  
 make, fācio, feci, factum, 3  
 man, hōmo, inis, c.; vir, viri, m.

## NARROW.

manage, gēro, gessi, gestum, 3.  
 manifest, manifestus, a, um, *adj.*  
 maniple, manipulus, i, m.  
 manner, mos, mōris, m.  
 many, multus, a, um, *adj.*  
 many, how, quot, *indec.* *rel.* *adj.*  
 many, very, permulti, ae, a, *adj.*  
 marble, marmōr, ōris, n.  
 market-place, fōrum, i, n.  
 master, dōminus, i, m.; māgister, tri, m.  
 measure, to, mētor, mensus, 4, v. *dep.* [*v. dep.*]  
 meditate, mēditor, ātus, 1.  
 meet, to, obco, īvi and h, itum, 4.  
 mellow, mollis, e, *adj.*  
 membrane, membrāna, ac, f.  
 memorable, mēmōrābilis, e, *adj.*  
 memory, mēmōria, ae, f.  
 metal, mētallum, i, n. [1.  
 migrate, migro, āvi, ātum, mild, mitis, e, *adj.*  
 milk, lac, lactis, n.  
 mind, mens, ntis, f.  
 mindful, mēmōr, ōris, *adj.*  
 miserable, miser, ēra, e-rum, *adj.*  
 mistake, error, ōris, m.  
 —, make a, err, āvi, ātum, 1.  
 mistress, dōmīna, ae, f.  
 money, pecūniā, ae, f.  
 month, mensis, is, m.  
 monument, mōnumentum, moon, lūna, ae, f. [1, n.  
 more, plus, plūris, *neut.* *adj.*; in pl. plures, a.  
 mortal, mortālis, e, *adj.*  
 mother, māter, tris, f.  
 mound, agger, ēris, m.  
 mount, to, conscendo, di, sum, 3.  
 mountain, mons, ntis, m.  
 mouth, ōs, ōris, n.  
 move, mōveo, mōvi, mōtum, 2.  
 much, multus, a, um, *adj.*  
 multitude, multitudo, inis, f.  
 my (mine), meus, a, um, *poss. pron.*

## N

name, nōmen, inis, n.  
 narrow, angustus, a, um, *adj.*

## OLD.

native-land, patria, ae, f.  
 nature, nātūra, ae, f.  
 naval, nāvālis, e, *adj.*  
 near (*prep.*), propē, *adv.*  
 near (*adj.*), propinquus, a, um, *adj.*  
 necessary, nēcessārius, a, um, *adj.*  
 necessity, nēcessitas, ātis, f.  
 need, ōpus, *indec.* *subs.* with *abl.* and *adj.*  
 needful, nēcessārius, a, um, *adj.*  
 needle, ācus, ūs, f.  
 neither, neuter, tra, trum, *indef. pron.*  
 neither, nor, nēquē, nec, *conj.*  
 nest, nidus, i, m.  
 net, rēte, is, n.  
 never, nunquam, *adv.*  
 new, nōvus, a, um, *adj.*  
 next, proximus, a, um, *adj.* *sup.*  
 night, nox, noctis, f.  
 nightingale, luscīna, ae, f.  
 no, none, nullus, a, um, *indef. pron.*  
 noble, nobilis, e, *adj.*  
 nobody, no one, nēmō, inis, c.  
 not, nōn, haud, *adv.*  
 nothing, nihil, *indec.* *subs.*  
 nourish, nūtrio, īvi, itum, 4.  
 now, nunc, jam, *adv.*  
 number, nūmērus, i, m.  
 nurture, nūtrio, īvi, itum, 4.  
 O  
 oak, quercus, ūs, f.  
 oath, iurjūrandum, jūri-jūrandi, n.  
 obey, pāreo, ūi, itum, 2;  
 obēdo, īvi, itum, 4, with *dat.*  
 object, rēctus, āvi, ātum, 1.  
 obscure, obscurus, a, um, *adj.*  
 observe (*carefully*), contēptor, ātus, 1, v. *dep.*  
 obtain, pāro, āvi, ātum, 1;  
 adipiscor, adeptus, 3, v. *dep.*  
 obtain possession of, pōtor, itus, 4, v. *dep.*, with *abl.*  
 ocean, oēcānus, i, m.  
 often, saepe, *adv.*  
 —, very, saepusimē, *adv.*  
 oftentimes, saepēnūmērō, *adv.*  
 old, sēnex, sēnis (of persons only); vētus, ēris, *adj.*

OLD AGE.

old age, senectūs, ūtis, *f.*  
olden, antiquus, a, um, *adj.*  
one, unus, a, um, *adj.*  
one of the two, alter, a, um, *indef. pron.*  
only, solum, *adv.*  
onset, impētus, us, *m.*  
oppose, resisto, stitī, stitum, 3, with *dat.*; oppugno, āvi, atum, 1.  
oracle, oraculum, i, n.  
oration, oratio, ōnis, *f.*  
orator, orator, ōris, *m.*  
order, jubeo, jussi, jussum, 2.  
ornament, ornāmentum, i, n.; decus, ōnis, *n.*  
other, of two, alter, ā, um, *indef. pron.*  
overcome, supēro, āvi, atum, 1.  
overwhelm, opprimo, pressi, pressum, 3.  
owe, ought, debēo, ūi, itum, 2.  
owing, it is, per(te) stat.  
ox, bōs, bōvis, c.

P

pace, passus, ūs, *m.*  
pain, dolor, ōris, *m.*  
pains, to take, cūro, āvi, atum, 1.  
paint, pingo, nxi, ctum, 3.  
parent, pārens, entis, c.  
part, pars, tis, *f.*  
partner, socius, i, m.  
pass by, over, praetēro, ivi and ii, itum, 4. [*v. dep.*]  
pass away, labor, lapsus, 3.  
— through, transeo, ivi and ii, itum, 4.  
pass (come to), fio, factus, fieri, p. 84.  
passion, cupiditas, ūtis, *f.*  
past, praeteritus, a, um, *adj.*  
path, via, ae, *f.*  
patience, patientia, ae, *f.*  
patiently, patienter, *adv.*  
peace, pax, pacis, *f.*  
peacock, pavō, ōnis, *m.*  
pear, pirum, 1, n.  
pear-tree, pirus, i, *f.*  
pearl, margarita, ae, *f.*  
perceive, sentio, si, sum, 4.  
perfect, perfectus, a, um, *adj.*  
perish, pēro, intēro, ivi and ii, itum, 4.  
persuade, persuādēo, si sum, 2, with *dat.* [*adj.*]  
perverse, perversus, a, um

PREVENT.

philosopher, philosophus, i, m.  
pillage, diripio, ripui, reptum, 3.  
pitch a camp, castra pono, posui, positum, 3.  
pity, misereor, itus and rtus, 2, *v. dep.*; misēret, misēritum est, *v. impers.*, with place, locus, i, m. [*gen.*]  
—, to, colloco, āvi, atum, 1.  
plain, planities, ei, *f.*  
plan, consilium, ii, n.  
plant, planta, ae, *f.*  
play, ludō, si, sum, 3. [*adj.*]  
pleasant, jucundus, a, um, *adj.*  
pleasantly, jucundē, *adv.*  
please, placeo, ūi, itum, 2, with *dat.*  
pleases, it, placet, uit, *v. impers.*, p. 86.  
pleasing, grātus, a, um, *adj.*  
pleasure, voluptas, ūtis, *f.*  
plenty, copia, ae, *f.*  
plum, prunum, i, n.  
plum-tree, prunus, i, *f.*  
plunder (*subs.*), praedā, ae, *f.*  
—, to, diripio, ripui, reptum, 3.  
poem, carmen, inis, *n.*  
poet, poeta, ae, *m.*  
Pompey, Pompēus, ii, m.  
poor, pauper, ōris, *adj.*  
portrait, imago, inis, *f.*  
post, statio, ōnis, *f.*  
poverty, paupertas, ūtis, *f.*  
power, potentia, ae, *f.*; potestas, ūtis, *f.*  
power of, in the, pōtēs, prep. with acc.  
powerful, pōtens, tis, *adj.*  
praise (*subs.*), laus, dis, *f.*  
—, to, laudo, āvi, atum, 1.  
precious, cārus, a, um, *adj.*  
prefer, praefere, tūli, latum, p. 81; mālō, mālūi, malle, p. 77.  
prepare, pāro, āvi, atum, 1.  
prepared, parātus, a, um, *part. and adj.*  
presence of, in the, cōram, prep. with abl.  
present, praesens, tis, *adj.*  
—, to be, adsum, alui, adesse, p. 31.  
preserve, servo, conservo, āvi, atum, 1. [*sum.*, 3.  
press, prēmo, pressi, pressum upon, opprimo, pressi, pressum, 3.  
pretence, simulatio, ōnis, *f.*  
prevent, obsto, stitī, stitum, 1.

REASON.

probable, verisimilis, c, *adj.*  
prohibit, prohibeo, ūi, itum, 2.  
promise, promitto, misi, missum, 3; polliceor, itus, 2, *v. dep.*  
properly, probē, rectē, *adv.*  
prostrate, to, affligo, flui, hictum, 3.  
protect, tuor, itus and tatus, 2, *v. dep.*  
provide, providēo, vidi, visum, 2.  
provisions, comēatus, āum, m. pl.  
prudence, prūdētia, ae, *f.*  
prudent, prūdēns, tis, *adj.*  
public, publicus, a, um, *adj.*  
punish, pūnio, ivi, itum, 4.  
punishment, poena, ae, *f.*  
pupil, discipulus, i, m.  
pursuit, stādium, ii, n.  
put an end to, finio, ivi, itum, 4.  
put to death, interficio, feci, fectum, 3.  
put to flight, fūgo, āvi, atum, 1.

Q

quality, good, virtūs, ūtis, *f.*  
queen, rēgina, ae, *f.*  
quiet, tranquillus, a, um, *adj.*  
quit, excedo, cessi, cessum, 3.

R

race, gēnus, ōris, *n.*  
rainbow, arcus coelestis, *m.*  
rains, it, pluit, pluit or pluvit, pluere, 3, *v. impers.*  
raise (*forces*), compāro, āvi, atum, 1.  
rapacious, rapax, ācis, *adj.*  
rapid, rapidus, a, um, *adj.*  
rare, rārus, a, um, *adj.*  
rashness, temeritas, ātis, *f.*  
rather, have, mālō, ūi, malle, p. 77.  
read, lēgo, lēgi, lectum, 3.  
read aloud, rēcto, āvi, atum, 1.  
read through, perlēgo, lēgi, lectum, 3.  
ready, parātus, a, um, *part and adj.*  
reason, ratiō, ōnis, *f.*

## RECEIVE.

**receive**, accipio, cēpi, cep-  
tum, 3. [ātis, *f.*]  
**recklessness**, tēmēritas,  
**recover**, rēcipiēro, āvi,  
ātum, 1.  
**refresh**, recrēo, āvi, ātum, 1.  
**refuse**, recūsō, āvi, ātum, 1.  
**reign**, regno, āvi, ātum, 1.  
**reject**, aspernor, ātus, 1, v.  
*dep.*  
**rejoice**, gaudēo, gāvīsus  
sum, 2, p. 85  
**relate**, narro, āvi, ātum, 1.  
**remain**, mānēo, māngi,  
mansum, 2.  
**remain over**, sūpersum,  
fui, esse, p. 31.  
**remember**, rēmīniscor,  
—, 3, v. *dep.*  
**remembered to be**, rē-  
mōrābilis, e, *adj.*  
**render assistance**, auxi-  
lium fero, tūh, lātum, ferre,  
3, *irr. v.* [*adj.*]  
**renowned**, clārus, a, um,  
**repents**, it, poenitet, p. 86.  
**resist**, rēsisto, stiti, stitum,  
3, with *dat.*  
**resolve**, constitūo, ūi,  
ūtum, 3.  
**respect**, to, observo, āvi,  
ātum, 1.  
**rest, the**, cētēri, ērae, ēra,  
*adj. pl.* [2]  
**restrain**, cōrēro, ūi, ūtum,  
**retire**, cēdo, cōcēdo, cessi,  
cessum, 3.  
**return**, rēdo, p. 83; rē-  
verto, ti, sum; rē-rtor, sus, 3,  
v. *dep.*  
**reverence**, to, vērēro,  
ātus, 1, v. *dep.*  
**reward**, praeimium, ii, n.  
**Rhine**, Rhēnus, i, m.  
**Rhodes**, Rhōdus, i, *f.*  
**Rhone**, Rhōdānus, i, m.  
**rich**, dives, itis, *adj.*  
**riches**, divitiāe, ārum, *pl. f.*  
**ride**, to, vēhor, vectus, 3,  
v. *dep.*  
**right**, rectus, a, um, *adj.*  
**rightly**, prōbe, rectē, *adv.*  
**rise**, to, ōrīor, ortus, ōrīi, 4.  
**river**, flūvius, i, m.; flūmen,  
inis, n.  
**robber**, lātro, ōnis, m.  
**rock**, rūpes, is, *f.*  
**Roman**, Rōmānus, a, um,  
**Rome**, Rōma, ae, *f.* [*adj.*]  
**root**, radix, icis, *f.*  
**rose**, rōsa, ae, *f.*  
**rough**, rugged, asper, ēra,  
ērum, *adj.* [*acc.*]  
**round**, circum, *prep.* with

## SERVICEABLE.

**rule**, rēgo, rexi, rectum, 3.  
**run**, curro, cūcurri, cur-  
sum, 3.  
**rush together**, convolo,  
āvi, ātum, 1.

## S

**sacred**, sācer, ēra, crum, *adj.*  
**sacrifice**, to, immōlo, āvi,  
ātum, 1.  
**sad**, tristis, e, *adj.*  
**safe**, tātus, a, um, *adj.*  
**safety**, sālus, itis, *f.*  
**sagacious**, prūdēns, tis,  
*adj.*  
**sailor**, nauta, ae, m.  
**sake of**, for the, grātiā,  
causā, with *gen.*  
**Sallust**, Sallustius, ii, m.  
**same**, idem, eādem, idem,  
*adj. prom.*  
**sanguinary**, ātrox, ōcis,  
*adj.*  
**save**, servo, conservo, āvi,  
ātum, 1.  
**savour of**, sāpio, ūi, 3.  
**say**, dico, xi, ctum, 3.  
**scarcely**, vix, *adv.*  
**scent**, ōdor, ōris, m.  
**scholar**, discipulus, i, m.  
**school**, schōla, ae, *f.*  
**Scythian**, Scythā, ae, m.  
**sea**, mārē, is, n.  
—, of the, mārīnus, a,  
um, *adj.*  
**seat**, sēas, is, *f.*  
**second**, sēcundus, a, um;  
alter, a, um, *adj.*  
**secretly**, clam, *adv.*  
**see**, vidēo, vidi, visum, 2;  
cerno, crēvi, crētum, 3.  
**see, go to**, viso, visi, visum  
—, eeing, visus, ūs, m. [3]  
**seek**, quaero, quaesivi,  
quaesitum, 3.  
**seem**, vidēor, visus, 2, v. *dep.*  
**seize**, comprēhendo, di,  
sum, 3; rāpio, ūi, tum, 3.  
**seize on**, arripio, rīpui, rep-  
tum, 3.  
**seldom**, rāro, *adv.*  
**senate**, sēnātus, ūs, m.  
**send**, mitto, misi, mis-  
sum, 3. [*etc.*]  
**send on before**, praemitto,  
— together, committo,  
**sense**, sensus, ūs, m. [*etc.*]  
**separate**, sēpāro, āvi, ātum,  
1; divido, visi, visum, 3.  
**servant**, minister, tri, m  
**serviceable**, ūtilis, e, *adj.*  
—, to be, prōsum, p. 31.

## SOME OF

**set out**, prōfiscor, fec-  
tus, 3, v. *dep.*  
**set** (an *example*), praebēo,  
ūi, ūtum, 2.  
**severe**, sēvērus, a, um;  
grāvis, e, *adj.*  
**severely**, grāvītēr, *adv.*  
**shake**, quatō, quassum, 3  
**shames**, it, pūdet, p. 86.  
**share**, to, partiōr, itus, 1,  
v. *dep.*  
**sharp**, ācūtus, a, um, *adj.*  
**sharpen**, ācto, ūi, ūtum, 3  
**shield**, scūtum, i, n  
**shine**, fulgēo, mī, sum, 2.  
**ship**, nāvīs, is, *f.*  
**shore**, litus, ōris, n.  
**short**, brēvis, e, *adj.*  
**shortly**, mox, *adv.*  
**shout**, clamor, ōris, m. [1.  
—, to, clamō, āvi, ātum,  
**shut off**, intercēdo, si,  
**Sicily**, Siciliā, ae, *f.* [sum, 3.  
**sick**, aeger, gra, grum, *adj.*  
**side with**, adsum, p. 31  
**side**, on this, cis, citrā,  
*prep.* with *acc.*  
**siege**, obsido, ōnis, *f.*  
**sign**, signum, i, n  
**silence**, silentium, ii, n.  
**silent**, to be, tūcē, ūi,  
itum, 2.  
**silver**, argentum, i, n.  
**sing**, canto, āvi, ātum, 1;  
cāno, cēcini, cantum, 3.  
**sister**, sōrōr, ōris, *f.*  
**sit**, sēdeo, sēdi, seasum, 2  
**skilful**, skilled in, pēri-  
tus, a, um; sōlens, rtis, *adj.*  
**skin** (of animal), pellis, is, *f.*  
**slaughter**, caedes, is, *f.*;  
clādes, is, *f.*  
**slave**, servus, i, m.  
**slavery**, sērvitūs, ūtis, *f.*  
**slay**, interficō, feci, fectum;  
occido, cidi, cisum, 3.  
**sleep** (*subs.*), somnus, i, m.  
—, to, dormio, ivi and īi,  
itum, 4.  
**slender**, tēnūs, e, *adj.* [*f.*]  
**slothfulness**, segnitiās, ēi,  
**sluggish**, segnus, e; igna-  
vus, a, um, *adj.*  
**small**, parvus, a, um, *adj.*  
**smell**, ōdor, ōris, m.  
**snow**, nix, nivis, *f.*  
**snows**, it, ningit, p. 87.  
so, itā, tam, *adv.*  
**soft**, mollis, e, *adj.*  
**soften**, mollio, ivi, itum, 4  
**soldier**, miles, itis, c  
**some**, nonnullus, a, um, *adj.*  
**some one, some thing**,  
aliquis, aliquid, *indef. prom.*

## SOMETIME.

**sometime**, quondam, *adv.*  
**sometimes**, nonnunquam, *adv.*

**son**, fillius, ii, m.; voc. fili.  
**son-in-law**, gēner, ēri, m.  
**song**, carmen, inis, n.; can-  
 tus, ūs, m.

**soon**, mox, *adv.* [*conj.*]

**soon as**, sīmūl, sīmūlac.

**sorrow**, dōlor, ōris, m.

**soul**, ānīmus, i, m.

**sound**, sōnitus, ūs, m.

**sovereignty**, dōminātus, ūs, m.

**sow**, sēro, sēvi, sātum, 3.

**speak**, lōquor, lōcūtum 3.

*v. dep.*

— **to**, allōquor, ūtus, 3.

**speech**, ōrātio, ōnis, f.

**spend one's life**, **to**, actā-

tem āgere.

**spirited**, fērox, ōcis, *adj.*

**splendid**, splendidus, a, um, *adj.*

**spring**, vēr, vēris, n.

**sprout**, planta, ae, f.

**spur**, calcār, āris, n.

**spy out**, spēcūlor, ātus, 1,

*v. dep.*

**stag**, cervus, i, m.

**stand**, sto, stētī, stātum, 1.

**star**, stella, ae, f.

**state**, civitas, ātis, f.

**station**, stātio, ōnis, f.

**statue**, imāgo, inis, f.

**steep**, arduus, a, um, *adj.*

**stern**, atrox, ōcis, *adj.*

**stone**, lāpis, idis, m.

**stone of**, lāpidēus, a, um,

*adj.*

**storm**, tempestas, ātis, f.

— **take by**, expugno,

āvi, ātum, 1.

**story**, fabūla, ae, f.

**straight**, rectus, a, um, *adj.*

**strength**, vis, f., p. 22.

**strengthen**, firmo, āvi,

ātum, 1.

**strive**, nitor, nixus, 3, *v. dep.*

— **hard**, enitor, 3, *v. dep.*

**strong**, vāldus, a, um, *adj.*

— **make**, firmo, āvi,

ātum, 1.

**study**, stūdiūm, ii, n.

— **to**, stūdēo, ūl, —, 2,

*with dat.*

**successful**, fēlix, icis, *adj.*

**sudden**, subitū, a, um, *adj.*

**suddenly**, subitō, *adv.*

**suffer**, pātior, passus, 3, *v. dep.*

**sufficiently**, sātis, *adv.*

**summer**, aestas, ātis, f.

**sun**, sol, sōlis, m.

PR. L. I.

## TONGUE.

**sup**, coeno, āvi, and coe-  
 nātus sum, 1: *see* p. 85.

**supplies**, commēdās, ūm,

m. pl.

**surround**, cingo, xi, ctum, 3.

**survive**, supersum, p. 31.

**swear**, iuro, āvi, ātum, 1:

*see* p. 85.

**sweet**, dulcis, suāvis, *adj.*

**swell**, intumescō, tūmū, 3.

**swift**, celer, ēris, ēre, *adj.*

**sword**, glādius, i, m.

**Syracuse**, Syracūsae, ārum,

f. pl.

## T.

**table**, mensa, ae, f.

**take**, capio, cēpi, captum, 3.

— **by storm**, expugno,

āvi, ātum, 1.

**tall**, celsus, a, um, *adj.* [1.

**taste**, **to**, gusto, āvi, ātum,

**tax**, vectigal, ālis, n.

**teach**, docēo, ūl, ctum, 2.

**teacher**, māgister, tri, m.

**tell**, dico, xi, ctum, 3.

**tempest**, tempestas, ātis, f.

**temple**, templum, i, n.

**tender**, tēnēr, a, um, *adj.*

**tent**, tābernāculum, i, n.

**terrify**, terrēo, ūl, ctum, 2.

**territories**, fines, ūm, m.

**terror**, terror, ōris, m.

**that** (*pron.*), istē, illē, is,

pp. 34, 35.

**that** (*conj.*), ūt, p. 97.

— **not**, nē, quin, p. 97.

**their own**, *gen. pl.* of is, ēa,

id; when referring to subject,

sūus, a, up, *poss. pron.*

**then**, tūm, *adv.*

**then indeed**, tūm dēmum.

**there**, ibi, *adv.*

**thin**, tēnuis, e, *adj.*

**thing**, rēs, ēi, f.

**think**, pūto, cōgito, āvi,

ātum, 1.

**thither**, hē, *adv.*

**through**, pēr, *prep.* with acc.

**throw**, iacio, iēcī, iactum,

conicio, iēcī, iectum, 3.

**throw a bridge over a**

**river**, flūmen ponte iungo,

iunxi, nctum, 3. [*n.*]

**thunderbolt**, fulmen, inis,

**thunders**, it, tōnāt, p. 87.

**thus**, itā, *adv.*

**tiger**, tigris, is and idis, c.

**time**, tempus, ōris, n.

**timid**, tīmidus, a, um, *adj.*

**to**, ad, *prep.* with acc.

**too, too much**, nimis, *adv.*

**tongue**, lingua, ae, f.

## UPRIGHT.

**torture**, cruciātus, ūs, m.

**towards**, versus, adversus,

*prep.* with acc.

**tower**, turris, is, f.

**town**, oppidum, i, n. [4.

**train up**, erūdīo, ivi, itum,

**trained**, erūdītus, a, uni,

*part.* and *adj.*

**tree**, arbor, ōris, f.

**triumph**, triumpho, āvi,

ātum, 1.

**trouble**, **to**, mōvērō, mōvi,

mōtum, 3.

**trouble** (*subs.*), aerumna,

ae, f.

**troublesome**, mōlestus, a,

um, *adj.*

**Troy**, Trōja, ae, f.

**true**, verus, a, um, *adj.*

**trust**, fido, fīsus sum, p. 85

**try**, expōrior, rus, 4, *v. dep.*

**turn back**, rēvērto, ti, sum,

and tor, sus, 3, *v. dep.*

**tyrant**, tyrannus, i, m.

## U

**unable**, **to be**, nēqueo,

ivi and ii, itum, 4.

**unbecoming**, it is, dēdē-

cēt, p. 88.

**unbounded**, infinitus, a,

um, *adj.*

**unbreakfasted**, impran-

sus, a, um, *adj.*

**uncertain**, incertus, a, um,

*adj.*

**under**, sub, subter, *prep.*

with acc. and abl.

**undergo**, subēo, ivi and ii,

itum, 4.

**understand**, intelligo, lexī,

lectum, 3.

**undertake**, suscipio, cēpi,

ceptum, 3.

**undone**, infectus, a, um,

*adj.*

**unfriendly**, inimicus, i,

um, *adj.*

**unjust**, injustus, a, um, *adj.*

**unjustly**, injustē, *adv.*

**unlearned**, indoctus, a,

um, *adj.*

**unless**, nīsi, *conj.*

**unlike**, dissimilis, e, *adj.*

**unkind**, impēritus, a,

um, *adj.* [77.

**unwilling**, **to be**, nōlo, p

**upper**, supērior, ius, *adj.*

*comp.*

**upright**, prōbus, a, um,

*adj.*



## USE.

**use**, to, ūtor, ūsus, 3, *v. dep.* with *abl.*  
**useful**, ūtīlia, *e. adj.*  
**utmost**, ūtīmūs, a, um, *sup. adj.*

## V

**valley**, vallis, *is. f.*  
**valour**, virtūs, ūtus, *f.*  
**various**, vārius, a, um, *adj.*  
**vehemently**, vēhēmētēr, *adv.*  
**verse**, verus, ūs, *m.*  
**vex**, vexo, āvi, ātum, 1.  
**vexes**, it, piget, p. 86. [*f.*  
**victim**, hostia, victima, *ae.*  
**victory**, victōria, *ae. f.*  
**vigorous**, strēnūs, a, um, *adj.*  
**vigorously**, strēnūē, *adv.*  
**virtue**, virtūs, ūtis, *f.*  
**visit**, to, viso, si, sum, 3.  
**voice**, vox, vōcis, *f.*  
**vulture**, vultūr, ūris, *m.*

## W

**wage** (war), to, gēro, gessi, *gestum*, 3.  
**wake** (*intrans.*), vīgīlo, āvi, ātum, 1.  
**walk**, take a walk, ambulo, āvi, ātum, 1.  
**wall**, mūrus, i, *m.* [p. 31.  
**wanting**, to be, dēsum,  
**war**, bellum, i, *n.* [*adj.*  
**warlike**, bellīcōsus, a, um,  
**warm**, cāldus, a, um, *adj.*  
**warn**, mōnēo, ūi, itum, 2.  
**waste**, to lay, vasto, āvi, ātum, 1.  
**watch**, to, vīgīlo, āvi, ātum,  
**water**, āqua, *ae. f.*  
**—**, to fetch, āquor, ātus, 1, *v. dep.*  
**way**, in that, tā, *adv.*  
**—**, to be in the, obsum, p. 31. [*f.*  
**weakness**, infirmitas, ūtis,

## WINTER.

**wealthy**, ōpulentus, a, um,  
**weapon**, telum, i, *n.* [*adj.*  
**wearies**, it, taedet, p. 86.  
**weep**, flēo, ēvi, ātum, 2.  
**well**, bēnē, *adj.* [2.  
**—**, to be, vālo, ūi, itum,  
**wellwishing**, bēnēvōlus, a, um, *adj.*  
**west**, occidens, entis, *m.*  
**whale**, balaena, *ae. f.*  
**what**, quis, quae, quid and quod, interrog. and *indef. pron.*  
**what sort**, of, quālis, *e. rel. adj.*  
**when**, quando, *interr. adv.*; quum, *adv.* and *conj.*  
**whether**, utrum, *conj.*  
**which** of two, ūter, tra, trum, *adj. pron.*  
**while**, dum, *adv.*  
**whilst drinking**, inter bibendum.  
**white**, albus, a, um, *adj.*  
**whither**, quō, *rel. adv.*  
**who**, qui, quae, quod, *rel. pron.*; quis, quae, quid or quod, *inter. pron.*  
**whole**, tōtus, a, um, *adj.*  
**why**, cūr, quār  
**wicked**, impi, um  
*nēquam, indec. or*  
**wickedness**, scēlus, ēris, *n.*  
**wide**, lātus, a, um, *adj.*  
**widely**, lātē, *adv.*  
**wife**, uxor, ūris, *f.*; mūliēr, ūris, *f.*  
**wilful**, perversus, a, um, *adj.*  
**willing**, to be, vōlo, p. 77.  
**—**, to be more, mālo, p. 77.  
**win**, ādīpīcor, adeptus, 3, *v. dep.*; pāro, āvi, ātum, 1.  
**win upon**, blandior, itus, 4.  
**wind**, vētus, i, *m.* [*v. dep.*  
**wine**, vinum, i, *n.*  
**wing**, āla, *ae. f.*  
**winter**, hiems, ēmis, *f.*  
**—**, of, hibernus, a, um, *adj.*

## ZEALOUS.

**winter**, to, hīmo, āvi, ātum, 1.  
**winter quarters**, hiberna, ōrum, *n. pl.*  
**wisdom**, sāpientia, *ae. f.*  
**wise**, sāpiens, entis, *adj.*  
**wish**, voluntās, ātis, *f.*  
**wish**, to, opto, āvi, ātum, 1; vōlo, p. 77.  
**within**, intrā, *prep.* with *acc.*  
**woman**, femina, *ae. f.*; mūliēr, ēris, *f.* [*v. dep.*  
**wonder at**, mīror, ātus, 1.  
**wonderful**, mīrus, mirābilis, *e. adj.*  
**wood**, silva, *ae. f.*  
**work**, ōpus, ēris, *n.*  
**world**, mundus, i, *m.*  
**worship**, to, vērōr, ātus, 1, *v. dep.*  
**wound**, vulnus, ēris, *n.*  
**—**, to, vulnēro, āvi, ātum, 1.  
**wretched**, mīser, ērā, īrum, *adj.*  
**write**, to, scribo, scripsi, scriptum, 3.  
**writer**, scriptor, ūris, *m.*

## Y

**year**, annus, i, *m.*  
**yesterday**, hērī, *adv.*  
**yield**, cēdo, cessi, cessum, 3.  
**your**, tūus, a, um; vester, tra, trum, *poss. pron.*  
**youth**, iuventūs, tūtis, *f.*  
**—** (a young man or woman), iuvenis, is, *c.*

## Z

**zeal**, stūdium, īi, *n.*  
**zealous**, stūdiōsus, a, um, *adj.*  
**zealous**, to be, stūdeō, ūi, 2, with *dat.*

ALBEMARLE STREET, LONDON.  
June, 1876.

## MR. MURRAY'S LIST OF SCHOOL BOOKS.

### THE STUDENT'S MANUALS:

#### *A Series of Class-books for advanced Scholars.*

FORMING A CHAIN OF HISTORY FROM THE EARLIEST AGES  
DOWN TO MODERN TIMES.

"The 'STUDENT'S MANUALS,' edited for the most part by DR. WM. SMITH, possess several distinctive features which render them singularly valuable as educational works. While there is an utter absence of flippancy in them, there is thought in every page, which cannot fail to excite thought in those who study them, and we are glad of an opportunity of directing the attention of teachers to these admirable school-books."—*The Museum*.

#### THE STUDENT'S OLD TESTAMENT HISTORY.

FROM THE CREATION OF THE WORLD TO THE RETURN OF THE JEWS FROM CAPTIVITY. With an Introduction to the Books of the Old Testament. By PHILIP SMITH, B.A. With 40 Maps and Woodcuts. (630 pp.) Post 8vo. 7s. 6d.

#### THE STUDENT'S NEW TESTAMENT HISTORY.

With an Introduction, containing the connection of the Old and New Testaments. By PHILIP SMITH, B.A. With 30 Maps and Woodcuts. (680 pp.) Post 8vo. 7s. 6d.

#### THE STUDENT'S ANCIENT HISTORY OF

THE EAST. From the Earliest Times to the Conquests of Alexander the Great, including Egypt, Assyria, Babylonia, Media, Persia, Asia Minor, and Phœnicia. By PHILIP SMITH, B.A. With 70 Woodcuts. (608 pp.) Post 8vo. 7s. 6d.

#### THE STUDENT'S MANUAL OF ECCLESIASTICAL HISTORY.

A HISTORY OF THE CHRISTIAN CHURCH from the EARLIEST TIMES to the EVE OF THE PROTESTANT REFORMATION. By PHILIP SMITH, B.A. With Woodcuts. Post 8vo. 7s. 6d.

#### THE STUDENT'S HISTORY OF GREECE.

FROM THE EARLIEST TIMES TO THE ROMAN CONQUEST. With Chapters on the History of Literature and Art. By WM. SMITH, D.C.L. With 100 Woodcuts. (640 pp.) Post 8vo. 7s. 6d.

*\*\*\* Questions on the "Student's Greece." 12mo. 2s.*

#### THE STUDENT'S HISTORY OF ROME.

FROM THE EARLIEST TIMES TO THE ESTABLISHMENT OF THE EMPIRE. With Chapters on the History of Literature and Art. By DEAN LIDDELL. With 80 Woodcuts. (686 pp.) Post 8vo. 7s. 6d.

*Continued.*

## MURRAY'S STUDENT'S MANUALS

**THE STUDENT'S GIBBON; AN EPITOME OF THE HISTORY OF THE DECLINE AND FALL OF THE ROMAN EMPIRE** By EDWARD GIBBON Incorporating the researches of recent historians. With 200 Woodcuts (700 pp) Post 8vo 7s 6d

**THE STUDENT'S MANUAL OF ANCIENT GEOGRAPHY.** By REV W I BEVAN, M A With 150 Woodcuts (710 pp) Post 8vo 7s 6d

**THE STUDENT'S MANUAL OF MODERN GEOGRAPHY, MATHEMATICAL, PHYSICAL, AND DESCRIPTIVE** By REV W I BEVAN, M A With 120 Woodcuts (684 pp) Post 8vo 7s 6d

**THE STUDENT'S HISTORY OF EUROPE DURING THE MIDDLE AGES** By HENRY HALLAM, LL D (650 pp) Post 8vo 7s 6d

**THE STUDENT'S CONSTITUTIONAL HISTORY OF ENGLAND FROM THE ACCESSION OF HENRY VII TO THE DEATH OF GEORGE II** By HENRY HALLAM, LL D (680 pp) Post 8vo 7s 6d

**THE STUDENT'S HUME; A HISTORY OF ENGLAND, FROM THE EARLIEST TIMES TO THE REVOLUTION IN 1688** By DAVID HUME Incorporating the Criticisms and Researches of recent Historians and continued to 1842 With 70 Woodcuts (780 pp) Post 8vo 7s 6d

\* \* Questions on the "Student's Hume" 12mo 2s

**THE STUDENT'S HISTORY OF IRANCI** FROM THE EARLIEST TIME TO THE ESTABLISHMENT OF THE SECOND EMPIRE, 1852 With Notes and Illustrations on the Institutions of the Country By REV W H JELKVIS, M A With Woodcuts (724 pp) Post 8vo 7s 6d

**THE STUDENT'S MANUAL OF THE ENGLISH LANGUAGE** By GEORGE P MARSH (538 pp) Post 8vo 7s 6d

**THE STUDENT'S MANUAL OF ENGLISH LITERATURE** By I. B. SHAW, M A (510 pp) Post 8vo 7s 6d

**THE STUDENT'S SPECIMENS OF ENGLISH LITERATURE** Selected from the Great Writers By I. B. SHAW, M A (560 pp) Post 8vo 7s 6d

**THE STUDENT'S ELEMENTS OF GEOLOGY.** By SIR CHARLES LYELL, F R S With 600 Woodcuts (692 pp) Post 8vo 9s

**THE STUDENT'S MANUAL OF MORAL PHILOSOPHY** With Quotations and References By WILLIAM FLEMING, D D (440 pp) Post 8vo 7s 6d

**THE STUDENT'S BLACKSTONE. AN ABRIDGMENT OF THE ENTIRE COMMENTARIES** By R MALCOLM KERR, LL D (670 pp) Post 8vo 7s 6d









